European Aviation Safety Agency

COMMENT RESPONSE DOCUMENT (CRD) TO NOTICE OF PROPOSED AMENDMENT (NPA) 2009-02B

for an Agency Opinion on a Commission Regulation establishing the Implementing Rules for air operations of Community operators

and

draft Decision of the Executive Director of the European Aviation Safety Agency on Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material related to the Implementing Rules for air operations of Community operators

"Part-CAT"

CRD b.3 – Revised Rule text – version 2

Notice:

Version 2 contains the corrected rule text of
- CAT.POL.H.215
- CAT.POL.H.220
- CAT.POL.H.225
- CAT.POL.H.420 and the corresponding rule in AR.OPS.

Table of contents

Part-CAT | IR

Subpart A – General requirements

Section 1 – Aeroplanes and helicopters

CAT.GEN.AH.100 Crew responsibilities

(a) Crew members shall be responsible for the proper execution of their duties that are:

  (1) related to the safety of the aircraft and its occupants; and

  (2) specified in the instructions and procedures in the operations manual.

(b) Crew members shall:

  (1) report to the commander any fault, failure, malfunction or defect which they believe may affect the airworthiness or safe operation of the aircraft including emergency systems;

  (2) report to the commander any incident that endangered, or could have endangered, the safety of the operation;

  (3) comply with the relevant requirements of the operator's occurrence reporting schemes;

  (4) comply with all flight and duty time limitations and rest requirements applicable to their activities; and

  (5) when undertaking duties for more than one operator:

    (i) maintain their individual records regarding flight and duty times and rest periods as referred to in OR.OPS.FTL;

    (ii) provide each operator with the data that they need to schedule activities in accordance with the applicable FTL requirements.

(c) Crew members shall not perform duties on an aircraft:

  (1) when under the influence of psychoactive substances or alcohol or for other reasons referred to in 7.g. of Annex IV of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008;

  (2) until a reasonable time period has elapsed after deep water diving or following blood donation;

  (3) if applicable medical requirements are not fulfilled;

  (4) if they are in any doubt of being able to accomplish their assigned duties; or

  (5) if they know or suspect that they are suffering from fatigue taking into account the requirement in 7.f. of Annex IV of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 or feel otherwise unfit, to the extent that the flight may be endangered.

CAT.GEN.AH.105 Responsibilities of the commander

(a) The commander, in addition to complying with CAT.GEN.AH.100, shall:

(1) be responsible for the safety of all crew members, passengers and cargo on board, as soon as the commander arrives on board the aircraft, until the commander leaves the aircraft at the end of the flight;

(2) be responsible for the operation and safety of the aircraft:

(i) for aeroplanes, from the moment the aeroplane is first ready to move for the purpose of taxiing prior to take-off, until the moment it finally comes to rest at the end of the flight and the engine(s) used as primary propulsion units are shut down;

(ii) for helicopters, when the rotors are turning;

(3) have authority to give all commands and take any appropriate actions for the purpose of securing the safety of the aircraft and of persons and/or property carried therein in accordance with 7.c. of Annex IV of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008;

(4) have authority to disembark any person, or any part of the cargo, which may represent a potential hazard to the safety of the aircraft or its occupants;

(5) not allow a person to be carried in the aircraft who appears to be under the influence of alcohol or drugs to the extent that the safety of the aircraft or its occupants is likely to be endangered;

(6) have the right to refuse transportation of inadmissible passengers, deportees or persons in custody if their carriage increases the risk to the safety of the aircraft or its occupants;

(7) ensure that all passengers are briefed on the location of emergency exits and the location and use of relevant safety and emergency equipment;

(8) ensure that all operational procedures and checklists are complied with in accordance with the operations manual;

(9) not permit any crew member to perform any activity during critical phases of flight, except duties required for the safe operation of the aircraft;

(10) ensure that means installed on board for recording data of flight recorders:

(i) are not disabled or switched off during flight; and

(ii) in the event of an accident or an incident:

(A) are not intentionally erased;

(B) are deactivated immediately after the flight is completed;

(C) are reactivated only with the agreement of the investigating authority;

(11) decide on acceptance of the aircraft with unserviceabilities in accordance with the configuration deviation list (CDL) or the minimum equipment list (MEL); and

(12) ensure that the pre-flight inspection has been carried out in accordance with the requirements of Part-M;

(13) be satisfied that relevant emergency equipment remains easily accessible for immediate use.

(b) The commander, or the pilot to whom conduct of the flight has been delegated, shall, in an emergency situation that requires immediate decision and action, take any action he/she considers necessary under the circumstances in accordance with 7.d. of annex IV of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008. In such cases he/she may deviate from rules, operational procedures and methods in the interest of safety.

(c) Whenever an aircraft in flight has manoeuvred in response to an airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) resolution advisory (RA), the commander shall notify the air traffic service (ATS) unit concerned and submit an ACAS report to the competent authority.

(d) Bird hazards and strikes

(1) Whenever a potential bird hazard is observed, the commander shall immediately inform the ATS unit whenever a potential bird hazard is observed.

(2) Whenever an aircraft for which the commander is responsible suffers a bird strike that results in significant damage to the aircraft or the loss or malfunction of any essential service, the commander shall submit a written bird strike report after landing to the competent authority.

CAT.GEN.AH.110 Authority of the commander

An operator shall take all reasonable measures to ensure that all persons carried in the aircraft obey all lawful commands given by the commander for the purpose of securing the safety of the aircraft and of persons or property carried therein.

CAT.GEN.AH.115 Personnel or crew members other than cabin crew in the passenger compartment

The operator shall ensure that personnel or crew members, other than cabin crew members, carrying out their duties in the passenger compartment of an aircraft:

(a) are not confused by the passengers with the cabin crew members;

(b) do not occupy required cabin crew assigned stations; and

(c) do not impede the cabin crew members in their duties.

CAT.GEN.AH.120 Common Language

The operator shall ensure that all crew members can communicate in a common language.

CAT.GEN.AH.125 Authority to taxi an aeroplane

An aeroplane shall not be taxied on the movement area of an aerodrome by other than a flight crew member, unless the person at the controls:

(1) has been duly authorised by the operator or a designated agent;

(2) is trained to taxi the aircraft;

(3) is trained to use the radiotelephone;

(4) has received instruction in respect of aerodrome layout, routes, signs, marking, lights, air traffic control (ATC) signals and instructions, phraseology and procedures; and

(5) is able to conform to the operational standards required for safe aeroplane movement at the aerodrome.

CAT.GEN.AH.130 Rotor engagement - helicopters

A helicopter rotor shall only be turned under power for the purpose of flight with a qualified pilot at the controls.

CAT.GEN.AH.135 Admission to flight crew compartment

(a) The operator shall ensure that no person, other than a flight crew member assigned to a flight, is admitted to, or carried in, the flight crew compartment unless that person is:

 (1) an operating crew member;

 (2) a representative of the competent or inspecting authority, if required to be there for the performance of his/her official duties; or

 (3) permitted by and carried in accordance with instructions contained in the operations manual.

(b) The commander shall ensure that:

 (1) admission to the flight crew compartment does not cause distraction or interference with the operation of the flight; and

 (2) all persons carried in the flight crew compartment are made familiar with the relevant safety procedures.

(c) The commander shall make the final decision regarding the admission to the flight crew compartment.

CAT.GEN.AH.140 Portable electronic devices

The operator shall not permit any person to use a portable electronic device on board an aircraft that could adversely affect the performance of the aircraft's systems and equipment, and shall take all reasonable measures to prevent such use.

CAT.GEN.AH.145 Information on emergency and survival equipment carried

The operator shall at all times have available for immediate communication to rescue coordination centres (RCCs), lists containing information on the emergency and survival equipment carried on board of any of their aircraft.

CAT.GEN.AH.150 Ditching - aeroplanes

The operator shall not operate an aeroplane with a passenger seating configuration of more than 30 on overwater flights at a distance from land suitable for making an emergency landing, greater than 120 minutes at cruising speed, or 400 nautical miles, whichever is less, unless the aeroplane complies with the ditching requirements prescribed in the applicable airworthiness code.

CAT.GEN.AH.155 Carriage of weapons of war and munitions of war

(a) The operator shall not transport weapons of war or munitions of war by air unless an approval to do so has been granted by all States whose airspace is intended to be used for the flight and any likely diversion.

(b) If an approval has been granted, the operator shall ensure that weapons of war and munitions of war are:

(1) stowed in the aircraft in a place which is inaccessible to passengers during flight; and

(2) in the case of firearms, unloaded.

(c) The operator shall ensure that, before a flight begins, the commander is notified of the details and location on board the aircraft of any weapons of war and munitions of war intended to be carried.

CAT.GEN.AH.160 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition

(a) The operator shall take all reasonable measures to ensure that any sporting weapons intended to be carried by air are reported to him.

(b) The operator accepting the carriage of sporting weapons shall ensure that they are:

(1) stowed in the aircraft in a place which is inaccessible to passengers during flight; and

(2) in the case of firearms or other weapons that can contain ammunition, unloaded.

(c) Ammunition for sporting weapons may be carried in passengers' checked baggage, subject to certain limitations, in accordance with the Technical Instructions.

CAT.GEN.AH.161 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition - alleviations

Notwithstanding CAT.GEN.AH.160(b), for helicopters with a maximum certificated take-off mass (MCTOM) of 3 175 kg or less operated by day and over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks, a sporting weapon may be carried in a place which is accessible during flight, provided it is impracticable to stow it in an inaccessible stowage during flight, and the operator has established appropriate procedures.

CAT.GEN.AH.165 Method of carriage of persons

The operator shall take all measures to ensure that no person is in any part of an aircraft in flight which is not designed for the accommodation of persons unless temporary access has been granted by the commander:

(a) for the purpose of taking action necessary for the safety of the aircraft or of any person, animal or goods therein; or

(b) for a part of the aircraft in which cargo or supplies are carried, being a part which is designed to enable a person to have access thereto while the aircraft is in flight.

CAT.GEN.AH.170 Alcohol and drugs

The operator shall take all reasonable measures to ensure that no person enters or is in an aircraft when under the influence of alcohol or drugs to the extent that the safety of the aircraft or its occupants is likely to be endangered.

CAT.GEN.AH.175 Endangering safety

The operator shall take all reasonable measures to ensure that no person recklessly or negligently acts or omits to act so as to:

(a) endanger an aircraft or person therein;

(b) cause or permit an aircraft to endanger any person or property.

CAT.GEN.AH.180 Documents, manuals and information to be carried

(a) The following documents, manuals and information shall be carried on each flight, as originals or copies unless otherwise specified:

   (1) the aircraft flight manual, or equivalent document(s);

   (2) the original certificate of registration;

   (3) the original certificate of airworthiness;

   (4) the noise certificate, if applicable, including an English translation, where one has been provided by the authority responsible for issuing the noise certificate;

   (5) a certified true copy of the air operator certificate;

   (6) the operations specifications relevant to the aircraft type, issued with the air operator certificate;

   (7) the original aircraft radio licence, if applicable;

   (8) the third party liability insurance certificate(s);

   (9) the journey log, or equivalent, for the aircraft;

   (10) the aircraft technical log, in accordance with Part-M;

(11) details of the filed ATS flight plan, if applicable;

(12) current and suitable aeronautical charts for the route of the proposed flight and all routes along which it is reasonable to expect that the flight may be diverted;

(13) procedures and visual signals information for use by intercepting and intercepted aircraft;

(14) information concerning search and rescue services for the area of the intended flight, which shall be easily accessible in the flight crew compartment;

(15) the current parts of the operations manual which are relevant to the duties of the crew and be easily accessible to the crew;

(16) the MEL;

(17) appropriate notices to airmen (NOTAM) and aeronautical information service (AIS) briefing documentation;

(18) appropriate meteorological information;

(19) cargo and/or passenger manifests, if applicable;

(20) mass and balance documentation;

(21) the operational flight plan, if applicable;

(22) notification of special categories of passenger and special loads, if applicable; and

(23) any other documentation which may be pertinent to the flight or is required by the States concerned with the flight.

(b) Notwithstanding (a) above, for VFR day operations with other-than-complex motor-powered aircraft taking off and landing at the same aerodrome/operating site within 24 hours, or remaining within a local area specified in the operations manual, the following documents and information may be retained at the aerodrome/operating site, for other flights:

(1) noise certificate;

(2) aircraft radio licence;

(3) journey log, or equivalent;

(4) aircraft technical log;

(5) NOTAM/AIS briefing documentation;

(6) meteorological information;

(7) notification of special categories of passenger;

(8) mass and balance documentation.

(c) Notwithstanding (a) above, in case of loss or theft of documents specified in (a)(2) to (a)(4), (a)(7) or (a)(8), the operation may continue until the flight reaches its destination or a place where replacement documents can be provided.

CAT.GEN.AH.185 Information to be retained on the ground

(a) The operator shall ensure that at least for the duration of each flight or series of flights:

   (1) information relevant to the flight and appropriate for the type of operation is preserved on the ground;

   (2) the information is retained until it has been duplicated at the place at which it will be stored; or, if this is impracticable

   (3) the same information is carried in a fireproof container in the aircraft.

(b) The information referred to in (a) above includes:

   (1) a copy of the operational flight plan, where appropriate;

   (2) copies of the relevant part(s) of the aircraft technical log;

   (3) route-specific NOTAM documentation if specifically edited by the operator;

   (4) mass and balance documentation if required; and

   (5) special loads notification.

CAT.GEN.AH.190 Power to inspect

The commander shall, within a reasonable time of being requested to do so by a person authorised by an authority, provide to that person the documentation required to be carried on board.

CAT.GEN.AH.195 Preservation, production and use of flight recorder recordings - aeroplanes

(a) Following an accident or incident, which is subject to mandatory reporting, the operator of an aeroplane shall preserve the original recorded data for a period of 60 days unless otherwise directed by the investigating authority.

(b) The operator shall conduct operational checks and evaluations of flight data recorder (FDR) recordings, cockpit voice recorder (CVR) recordings and data-link recordings to ensure the continued serviceability of the recorders.

(c) The operator shall save the recordings for the period of operating time of the FDR as required by CAT.IDE.A.270, except that, for the purpose of testing and maintaining the FDR, up to one hour of the oldest recorded material at the time of testing may be erased.

(d) The operator shall keep and maintain up to date documentation which presents the necessary information to convert FDR raw data into parameters expressed in engineering units.

(e) The operator shall make available any flight recorder recording that has been preserved, if so determined by the competent authority.

(f) Without prejudice to national criminal law:

(1) CVR recordings shall not be used for purposes other than for the investigation of an accident or incident subject to mandatory reporting, except with the consent of all crew members concerned.

(2) FDR recordings shall not be used for purposes other than for the investigation of an accident or incident subject to mandatory reporting, except when such records are:

(i) used by the operator for airworthiness or maintenance purposes only; or

(ii) de-identified; or

(iii) disclosed under secure procedures.

(3) Data link recordings shall not be used for purposes other than for the investigation of an accident or incident which is subject to mandatory reporting, except when such records are:

(i) de-identified; or

(ii) disclosed under secure procedures.

CAT.GEN.AH.200 Transport of dangerous goods

(a) Unless otherwise permitted by this Part, the transport of dangerous goods by air shall be conducted in accordance with Annex 18 to the Chicago Convention as last amended and amplified by the Technical Instructions for the Safe Transport of Dangerous Goods by Air (ICAO Doc 9284-AN/905), including its attachments, supplements and any other addenda.

(b) Dangerous goods shall only be transported by the operator approved in accordance with SPA.DG, except when:

(1) they are not subject to the Technical Instructions in accordance with Part 1 of those Instructions; or

(2) they are carried by passengers or crew members, or are in baggage, in accordance with Part 8 of the Technical Instructions.

(c) An operator shall establish procedures to ensure that all reasonable measures are taken to prevent dangerous goods from being carried on board inadvertently.

(d) The operator shall provide personnel with the necessary information enabling them to carry out their responsibilities, as required by the Technical Instructions.

(e) The operator shall, in accordance with the Technical Instructions, report without delay to the competent authority and the appropriate authority of the State of occurrence in the event of:

(1) any dangerous goods accidents or incidents;

(2) the finding of undeclared or misdeclared dangerous goods discovered in cargo or mail; or

(3) the finding of dangerous goods carried by passengers or crew, or in their baggage, when not in accordance with Part 8 of the Technical Instructions.

(f) The operator shall ensure that passengers are provided with information about dangerous goods as required by the Technical Instructions.

(g) The operator shall ensure that notices giving information about the transport of dangerous goods are provided at acceptance points for cargo as required by the Technical Instructions.

Subpart B – Operating procedures

Section 1 – Aeroplanes and helicopters

CAT.OP.AH.100 Use of air traffic services

(a) The operator shall ensure that:

(1) air traffic services (ATS) appropriate to the airspace and the applicable rules of the air are used for all flights whenever available;

(2) in-flight operational instructions involving a change to the flight plan, when practicable, are coordinated with the appropriate ATS unit before transmission to an aircraft.

(b) Notwithstanding (a), the use of ATS is not required unless mandated by air space requirements for:

(1) visual flight rules (VFR) day operations of other-than-complex motor-powered aeroplanes;

(2) helicopters with a maximum certificated take-off mass (MCTOM) of 3 175 kg or less operated by day and over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks; or

(3) local helicopter operations,

provided that search and rescue service arrangements can be maintained.

CAT.OP.AH.105 Use of aerodromes and operating sites

(a) The operator shall only use aerodromes that are adequate for the type(s) of aircraft and operation(s) concerned.

(b) The operator may also use operating sites that are adequate for the type(s) of aircraft and operation(s) concerned for

(1) other-than-complex motor-powered aeroplanes; and

(2) helicopters.

CAT.OP.AH.106 Use of isolated aerodromes - aeroplanes

(a) Using an isolated aerodrome as destination aerodrome with aeroplanes requires the prior approval of the competent authority.

(b) An isolated aerodrome is one for which the alternate and final fuel reserve required to the nearest adequate destination alternate aerodrome is more than:

(1) for aeroplanes with reciprocating engines, fuel to fly for 45 minutes plus 15 % of the flight time planned to be spent at cruising level or two hours, whichever is less; or

(2) for aeroplanes with turbine engines, fuel to fly for two hours at normal cruise consumption above the destination aerodrome, including final reserve fuel.

CAT.OP.AH.110 Aerodrome operating minima

(a) The operator shall establish aerodrome operating minima for each departure, destination or alternate aerodrome planned to be used. These minima shall not be lower than those established for such aerodromes by the State in which the aerodrome is located, except when specifically approved by that State. Any increment specified by the competent authority shall be added to the minima.

(b) The use of head-up displays (HUD), head-up display landing systems (HUDLS) or enhanced vision systems (EVS) may allow operations with lower visibilities than the established aerodrome operating minima if approved in accordance with SPA.LVO.

(c) When establishing aerodrome operating minima, the operator shall take the following into account:

(1) the type, performance and handling characteristics of the aircraft;

(2) the composition, competence and experience of the flight crew;

(3) the dimensions and characteristics of the runways / final approach and take-off areas (FATOs) that may be selected for use;

(4) the adequacy and performance of the available visual and non-visual ground aids;

(5) the equipment available on the aircraft for the purpose of navigation and/or control of the flight path during the take-off, the approach, the flare, the landing, rollout and the missed approach;

(6) for the determination of obstacle clearance, the obstacles in the approach, missed approach and the climb-out areas necessary for the execution of contingency procedures;

(7) the obstacle clearance altitude/height for the instrument approach procedures;

(8) the means to determine and report meteorological conditions; and

(9) the flight technique to be used during the final approach.

(d) The operator shall specify the method of determining aerodrome operating minima in the operations manual.

(e) The minima for a specific approach and landing procedure shall only be used if all the following conditions are met:

(1) the ground equipment shown on the chart required for the intended procedure is operative;

(2) the aircraft systems required for the type of approach are operative;

(3) the required aircraft performance criteria are met; and

(4) the crew is appropriately qualified.

CAT.OP.AH.115 Approach flight technique - aeroplanes

(a) All approaches shall be flown as stabilised approaches unless otherwise approved by the competent authority for a particular approach to a particular runway.

(b) Non-precision approaches

(1) The continuous descent final approach (CDFA) technique shall be used for all non-precision approaches.

(2) Notwithstanding (1) above, another approach flight technique may be used for a particular approach / runway combination if approved by the competent authority. In such cases, the applicable minimum runway visual range (RVR)

(i) shall be increased by 200 m for Category A and B aeroplanes and by 400 m for Category C and D aeroplanes; or

(ii) for aerodromes where there is a public interest to maintain current operations and the CDFA technique cannot be applied, shall be established and regularly reviewed by the competent authority taking into account the operator’s experience, training programme and flight crew qualification.

CAT.OP.AH.120 Airborne radar approaches (ARAs) for overwater operations - helicopters

(a) An ARA shall only be undertaken if:

(1) the radar provides course guidance to ensure obstacle clearance; and

(2) either:

(i) the minimum descent height (MDH) is determined from a radio altimeter; or

(ii) the minimum descent altitude (MDA) plus an adequate margin is applied.

(b) ARAs to rigs or vessels under way shall only be conducted in multi-crew operations.

(c) The decision range shall provide adequate obstacle clearance in the missed approach from any destination for which an ARA is planned.

(d) The approach shall only be continued beyond decision range or below MDA/H when visual reference with the destination has been established.

(e) For single-pilot operations, appropriate increments shall be added to the MDA/H and decision range.

CAT.OP.AH.125 Instrument departure and approach procedures

(a) The operator shall ensure that instrument departure and approach procedures established by the State in which the aerodrome is located are used.

(b) Notwithstanding (a) above, the commander may accept an air traffic control (ATC) clearance to deviate from a published departure or arrival route, provided obstacle clearance criteria are observed and full account is taken of the operating conditions.

In any case, the final approach shall be flown visually or in accordance with the established instrument approach procedures.

(c) Notwithstanding (a) above, the operator may use procedures other than those referred to in (a) provided they have been approved by the State in which the aerodrome is located and are specified in the operations manual.

CAT.OP.AH.130 Noise abatement procedures

(a) Aeroplanes

Except for VFR operations of other-than-complex motor-powered aeroplanes, the operator shall establish appropriate operating departure and arrival/approach procedures for each aeroplane type taking into account the need to minimise the effect of aircraft noise.

The procedures shall:

(1) ensure that safety has priority over noise abatement; and

(2) be simple and safe to operate with no significant increase in crew workload during critical phases of flight.

(b) Helicopters

The operator shall ensure that take-off and landing procedures take into account the need to minimise the effect of helicopter noise.

CAT.OP.AH.135 Routes and areas of operation - general

(a) The operator shall ensure that operations are only conducted along routes, or within areas, for which:

(1) ground facilities and services, including meteorological services, adequate for the planned operation are provided;

(2) the performance of the aircraft is adequate to comply with minimum flight altitude requirements;

(3) the equipment of the aircraft meets the minimum requirements for the planned operation; and

(4) appropriate maps and charts are available.

(b) The operator shall ensure that operations are conducted in accordance with any restriction on the routes or the areas of operation specified by the competent authority.

(c) (a)(1) above shall not apply to VFR day operations of other-than-complex motor-powered aircraft on flights that depart from and arrive at the same aerodrome or operating site.

CAT.OP.AH.136 Routes and areas of operation - single-engine aeroplanes

The operator shall ensure that operations of single-engine aeroplanes are only conducted along routes, or within areas, where surfaces are available which permit a safe forced landing to be executed.

CAT.OP.AH.137 Routes and areas of operation - helicopters

The operator shall ensure that:

(a) for helicopters operated in performance class 3, surfaces are available which permit a safe forced landing to be executed, except when the helicopter has an approval to operate in accordance with CAT.POL.H.420;

(b) for helicopters operated in performance class 3 and conducting ‘coastal transit’ operations, the operations manual contains procedures to ensure that the width of the coastal corridor, and the equipment carried, is consistent with the conditions prevailing at the time.

CAT.OP.AH.140 Maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome for two-engined aeroplanes without an ETOPS approval

(a) Unless approved by the competent authority in accordance with SPA.ETOPS, the operator shall not operate a two-engined aeroplane over a route that contains a point further from an adequate aerodrome, under standard conditions in still air, than:

(1) for performance class A aeroplanes with either:

(i) a maximum passenger seating configuration of 20 or more; or

(ii) a maximum take-off mass of 45 360 kg or more,

the distance flown in 60 minutes at the one-engine-inoperative (OEI) cruising speed determined in accordance with (b) below;

(2) for performance class A aeroplanes with:

(i) a maximum passenger seating configuration of 19 or less; and

(ii) a maximum take-off mass less than 45 360 kg,

the distance flown in 120 minutes or, subject to approval by the competent authority, up to 180 minutes for turbo-jet aeroplanes, at the OEI cruise speed determined in accordance with (b) below;

(3) for performance class B or C aeroplanes:

(i) the distance flown in 120 minutes at the OEI cruise speed determined in accordance with (b) below; or

(ii) 300 NM, whichever is less.

(b) The operator shall determine a speed for the calculation of the maximum distance to an adequate aerodrome for each two-engined aeroplane type or variant operated, not exceeding V_{MO} (maximum operating speed) based upon the true airspeed that the aeroplane can maintain with one engine inoperative.

(c) The operator shall include the following data, specific to each type or variant, in the operations manual:

(1) the determined OEI cruising speed; and

(2) the determined maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome.

(d) To obtain the approval referred to in (a)(2) above, the operator shall provide evidence that:

(1) the aeroplane / engine combination holds an extended range operations with two-engined aeroplanes (ETOPS) type design and reliability approval for the intended operation;

(2) a set of conditions has been implemented to ensure that the aeroplane and its engines are maintained to meet the necessary reliability criteria; and

(3) the flight crew and all other operations personnel involved are trained and suitably qualified to conduct the intended operation.

(e) An aerodrome shall be considered adequate if, at the expected time of use, the aerodrome is available and equipped with necessary ancillary services such as air traffic services (ATS), sufficient lighting, communications, weather reporting, navigation aids and emergency services.

CAT.OP.AH.145 Establishment of minimum flight altitudes

(a) The operator shall establish for all route segments to be flown:

(1) minimum flight altitudes that provide the required terrain clearance, taking into account the requirements of CAT.POL; and

(2) a method to determine those altitudes.

(b) The method for establishing minimum flight altitudes shall be approved by the competent authority.

(c) Where the minimum flight altitudes established by the operator and a State overflown differ, the higher values shall apply.

CAT.OP.AH.150 Fuel policy

(a) The operator shall establish a fuel policy for the purpose of flight planning and in-flight replanning to ensure that every flight carries sufficient fuel for the planned operation and reserves to cover deviations from the planned operation. The fuel policy and any change to it require prior approval of the competent authority.

(b) The operator shall ensure that the planning of flights is based upon at least:

(1) procedures contained in the operations manual and data derived from:

(i) data provided by the aircraft manufacturer; or

(ii) current aircraft-specific data derived from a fuel consumption monitoring system;

(2) the operating conditions under which the flight is to be conducted including:

(i) aircraft fuel consumption data;

(ii) anticipated masses;

(iii) expected meteorological conditions; and

(iv) air navigation services provider(s) procedures and restrictions.

(c) The operator shall ensure that the pre-flight calculation of usable fuel required for a flight includes:

(1) taxi fuel;

(2) trip fuel;

(3) reserve fuel consisting of:

(i) contingency fuel;

(ii) alternate fuel, if a destination alternate aerodrome is required;

(iii) final reserve fuel; and

(iv) additional fuel, if required by the type of operation; and

(4) extra fuel if required by the commander.

(d) The operator shall ensure that in-flight replanning procedures for calculating usable fuel required when a flight has to proceed along a route or to a destination aerodrome other than originally planned includes:

(1) trip fuel for the remainder of the flight; and

(2) reserve fuel consisting of:

(i) contingency fuel; and

(ii) alternate fuel, if a destination alternate aerodrome is required; and

(iii) final reserve fuel; and

(iv) additional fuel, if required by the type of operation; and

(3) extra fuel if required by the commander.

CAT.OP.AH.151 Fuel policy - alleviations

Notwithstanding CAT.OP.AH.150, (b) to (d),

(a) for operations of performance class B aeroplanes:

(1) for flights that depart from and arrive at the same aerodrome or operating site, the operator shall specify the minimum fuel contents at which a flight shall end. This minimum final reserve fuel shall not be less than the amount needed to fly for a period of 45 minutes.

(2) for other flights, the operator shall ensure that the pre-flight calculation of usable fuel required for a flight includes:

(i) taxi fuel, if significant;

(ii) trip fuel;

(iii) reserve fuel, consisting of:

(A) contingency fuel that is not less than 5 % of the planned trip fuel or, in the event of in-flight replanning, 5 % of the trip fuel for the remainder of the flight; and

(B) final reserve fuel to fly for an additional period of 45 minutes for reciprocating engines or 30 minutes for turbine engines;

(iv) alternate fuel to reach the destination alternate aerodrome via the destination, if a destination alternate aerodrome is required; and

(v) extra fuel, if specified by the commander.

(b) for helicopters with a maximum certificated take-off mass (MCTOM) of 3 175 kg or less, by day and over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks or local helicopter operations, the fuel policy shall ensure that, on completion of the flight, or series of flights the final reserve fuel is not less than an amount sufficient for:

(1) 30 minutes flying time at normal cruising; or

(2) 20 minutes flying time at normal cruising when operating within an area providing continuous and suitable precautionary landing sites.

CAT.OP.AH.155 Carriage of special categories of passengers (SCPs)

(a) Special categories of passengers (SCPs) requiring special assistance, conditions or devices shall be carried under conditions that ensure the safety of the aircraft and its occupants according to procedures established by the operator.

(b) SCPs shall not be allocated, nor occupy, seats that permit direct access to emergency exits or where their presence could:

(1) impede the crew in their duties;

(2) obstruct access to emergency equipment; or

(3) impede the emergency evacuation of the aircraft.

(c) The commander shall be notified in advance when SCPs are to be carried on board.

CAT.OP.AH.160 Stowage of baggage and cargo

The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that:

(a) only hand baggage that can be adequately and securely stowed is taken into the passenger cabin; and

(b) all baggage and cargo on board, which might cause injury or damage, or obstruct aisles and exits if displaced, is stowed so as to prevent movement.

CAT.OP.AH.165 Passenger seating

The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that passengers are seated where, in the event that an emergency evacuation is required, they may best assist and not hinder evacuation from the aircraft.

CAT.OP.AH.170 Passenger briefing

The operator shall ensure that:

(a) passengers are given briefings and demonstrations relating to safety in a form that facilitates their application in the event of an emergency; and

(b) passengers are provided with a safety briefing card on which picture type instructions indicate the operation of emergency equipment and exits likely to be used by passengers.

CAT.OP.AH.175 Flight preparation

(a) An operational flight plan shall be completed for each intended flight based on considerations of aircraft performance, other operating limitations and relevant expected conditions on the route to be followed and at the aerodromes/operating sites concerned.

(b) The flight shall not be commenced unless the commander is satisfied that:

(1) all items stipulated in 2.a.3 of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 can be complied with;

(2) the aircraft is not operated contrary to the provision of the configuration deviation list (CDL);

(3) the parts of the operations manual that are required for the conduct of the flight are available;

(4) the documents, additional information and forms required to be available by CAT.GEN.180 are on board;

(5) current maps, charts and associated documentation or equivalent data are available to cover the intended operation of the aircraft including any diversion that may reasonably be expected;

(6) ground facilities and services required for the planned flight are available and adequate;

(7) the provisions specified in the operations manual in respect of fuel, oil, oxygen, minimum safe altitudes, aerodrome operating minima, and availability of alternate aerodromes, where required, can be complied with for the planned flight; and

(8) any additional operational limitation can be complied with.

(c) Notwithstanding (a) above, an operational flight plan is not required for:

(1) VFR operations of other-than-complex motor-powered aircraft taking off and landing at the same aerodrome or operating site within 24 hours; or

(2) helicopters with a maximum certificated take-off mass (MCTOM) of 3 175 kg or less, by day and over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks in a local area.

CAT.OP.AH.180 Selection of aerodromes - aeroplanes

(a) Where it is not possible to use the departure aerodrome as a take-off alternate aerodrome due to meteorological or performance reasons, the operator shall select another adequate take-off alternate aerodrome, which is no further from the departure aerodrome than:

(1) for two-engined aeroplanes:

(i) one hour flight time at an OEI cruising speed according to the aircraft flight manual (AFM) in still air standard conditions based on the actual take-off mass; or

(ii) the ETOPS diversion time approved in accordance with SPA.ETOPS, subject to any minimum equipment list (MEL) restriction, up to a maximum of two hours, at the OEI cruising speed according to the AFM in still air standard conditions based on the actual take-off mass;

(2) for three and four-engined aeroplanes, two hours flight time at the OEI cruising speed according to the AFM in still air standard conditions based on the actual take-off mass.

If the AFM does not contain an OEI cruising speed, the speed to be used for calculation shall be that which is achieved with the remaining engine(s) set at maximum continuous power.

(b) The operator shall select at least one destination alternate aerodrome for each instrument flight rules (IFR) flight unless the destination aerodrome is an isolated aerodrome or:

(1) the duration of the planned flight from take-off to landing or, in the event of in-flight replanning in accordance with CAT.OP.AH.150(d), the remaining flying time to destination does not exceed six hours; and

(2) two separate runways are available and usable at the destination aerodrome and the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts for the destination aerodrome indicate that, for the period from one hour before until one hour after the expected time of arrival at the destination aerodrome, the ceiling will be at least 2 000 ft or circling height +500 ft, whichever is greater, and the ground visibility will be at least 5 km.

(c) The operator shall select two destination alternate aerodromes when:

(1) the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts for the destination aerodrome indicate that during a period commencing one hour before and ending one hour after the estimated time of arrival, the weather conditions will be below the applicable planning minima; or

(2) no meteorological information is available.

(d) The operator shall specify any required alternate aerodrome(s) in the operational flight plan.

CAT.OP.AH.181 Selection of aerodromes and operating sites - helicopters

(a) For flights under instrument meteorological conditions (IMC), the commander shall select a take-off alternate aerodrome within one hour flight time at normal cruising speed if it would not be possible to return to the site of departure due to meteorological reasons.

(b) For IFR flights or when flying VFR and navigating by means other than by reference to visual landmarks, the commander shall specify at least one destination alternate aerodrome in the operational flight plan unless:

(1) the destination is a coastal aerodrome and the helicopter is routing from offshore;

(2) for a flight to any other land destination, the duration of the flight and the meteorological conditions prevailing are such that, at the estimated time of arrival at the site of intended landing, an approach and landing may be made under visual meteorological conditions (VMC); or

(3) the site of intended landing is isolated and no alternate is available; in this case, a point of no return (PNR) shall be determined.

(c) The operator shall select two destination alternate aerodromes when:

(1) the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts for the destination aerodrome indicate that during a period commencing one hour before and ending one hour after the estimated time of arrival the weather conditions will be below the applicable planning minima; or

(2) no meteorological information is available for the destination aerodrome.

(d) Off-shore destination alternate aerodromes may be selected subject to the following:

(1) an off-shore destination alternate aerodrome shall be used only after a PNR. Prior to PNR, on-shore alternate aerodromes shall be used;

(2) OEI landing capability shall be attainable at the alternate aerodrome;

(3) to the extent possible, deck availability shall be guaranteed. The dimensions, configuration and obstacle clearance of individual helidecks or other sites shall be assessed in order to establish operational suitability for use as an alternate aerodrome by each helicopter type proposed to be used;

(4) weather minima shall be established taking accuracy and reliability of meteorological information into account;

(5) the MEL shall contain specific provisions for this type of operation; and

(6) an off-shore alternate aerodrome shall not be selected unless the operator has established a procedure in the operations manual.

(e) The operator shall specify any required alternate aerodrome(s) in the operational flight plan.

CAT.OP.AH.185 Planning minima for IFR flights - aeroplanes

(a) Planning minima for a take-off alternate aerodrome

The operator shall only select an aerodrome as a take-off alternate aerodrome when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that, during a period commencing one hour before and ending one hour after the estimated time of arrival at the aerodrome, the weather conditions will be at or above the applicable landing minima specified in accordance with CAT.OP.AH.110. The ceiling shall be taken into account when the only approach operations available are non-precision approaches (NPA) and/or circling operations. Any limitation related to OEI operations shall be taken into account.

(b) Planning minima for a destination aerodrome other than an isolated destination aerodrome

The operator shall only select the destination aerodrome when:

(1) the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that, during a period commencing one hour before and ending one hour after the estimated time of arrival at the aerodrome, the weather conditions will be at or above the applicable planning minima as follows:

(i) RVR/visibility (VIS) specified in accordance with CAT.OP.AH.110; and

(ii) for an NPA or a circling operation, the ceiling at or above MDH;

or

(2) two destination alternate aerodromes are selected.

(c) Planning minima for a destination alternate aerodrome, isolated aerodrome, fuel en-route alternate (fuel ERA) aerodrome, en-route alternate aerodrome.

The operator shall only select an aerodrome for one of these purposes when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that, during a period commencing one hour before and ending one hour after the estimated time of arrival at the aerodrome, the weather conditions will be at or above the planning minima in Table 1.

Table 1: Planning minima
Destination alternate aerodrome, isolated destination aerodrome, fuel ERA and en-route alternate aerodrome

Type of approach	**Planning minima**
CAT II and III	CAT I RVR
CATI	NPA RVR/VIS Ceiling shall be at or above MDH

Type of approach	Planning minima
NPA	NPA RVR/VIS + 1 000 m Ceiling shall be at or above MDH + 200 ft
Circling	Circling

CAT.OP.AH.186 Planning minima for IFR flights - helicopters

(a) Planning minima for take-off alternate aerodrome(s)

The operator shall only select an aerodrome or landing site as a take-off alternate aerodrome when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that, during a period commencing one hour before and ending one hour after the estimated time of arrival at the take-off alternate aerodrome, the weather conditions will be at or above the applicable landing minima specified in accordance with CAT.OP.AH.110. The ceiling shall be taken into account when the only approach operations available are NPA operations. Any limitation related to OEI operations shall be taken into account.

(b) Planning minima for destination aerodrome and destination alternate aerodrome(s)

The operator shall only select the destination and/or destination alternate aerodrome(s) when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that, during a period commencing one hour before and ending one hour after the estimated time of arrival at the aerodrome/operating site, the weather conditions will be at or above the applicable planning minima as follows:

(1) except as provided in CAT.OP.AH.181(d), planning minima for a destination aerodrome shall be:

(i) RVR/VIS specified in accordance with CAT.OP.AH.110; and

(ii) for NPA operations, the ceiling at or above MDH;

(2) planning minima for destination alternate aerodrome(s) are as shown in Table 1.

Table 1: Planning minima destination alternate aerodrome

Type of approach	Planning minima
CAT II and III	CAT I RVR
CAT I	CAT I + 200 ft / 400 m visibility
NPA	NPA RVR/VIS + 400 m Ceiling shall be at or above MDH + 200ft

CAT.OP.AH.190 Submission of ATS flight plan

(a) If an ATS flight plan is not submitted because it is not required by the rules of the air, adequate information shall be deposited in order to permit alerting services to be activated if required.

(b) When operating from a site where it is impossible to submit an ATS flight plan, the ATS flight plan shall be transmitted as soon as possible after take-off by the commander or the operator.

CAT.OP.AH.195 Refuelling/defuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking

(a) An aircraft shall not be refuelled/defuelled with Avgas or wide-cut type fuel or a mixture of these types of fuel, when passengers are embarking, on board or disembarking.

(b) For all other types of fuel, necessary precautions shall be taken and the aircraft shall be properly manned by qualified personnel ready to initiate and direct an evacuation of the aircraft by the most practical and expeditious means available.

CAT.OP.AH.200 Refuelling/defuelling with wide-cut fuel

Refuelling/defuelling with wide-cut fuel shall only be conducted if the operator has established appropriate procedures taking into account the high risk of using wide-cut fuel types.

CAT.OP.AH.205 Push back and towing - aeroplanes

Push back and towing procedures specified by the operator shall be conducted in accordance with established aviation standards and procedures.

CAT.OP.AH.210 Crew members at stations

(a) Flight crew members

(1) During take-off and landing each flight crew member required to be on duty in the flight crew compartment shall be at the assigned station.

(2) During all other phases of flight each flight crew member required to be on duty in the flight crew compartment shall remain at the assigned station unless absence is necessary for the performance of duties in connection with the operation or for physiological needs, provided at least one suitably qualified pilot remains at the controls of the aircraft at all times.

(3) During all phases of flight each flight crew member required to be on duty in the flight crew compartment shall remain alert. If a lack of alertness is encountered, appropriate countermeasures shall be used. If unexpected fatigue is experienced, a controlled rest procedure, organised by the commander, maybe used if workload permits. Controlled rest taken in this way shall not be considered to be part of a rest period for purposes of

calculating flight time limitations nor used to justify any extension of the duty period.

(b) Cabin crew members

During critical phases of flight, each cabin crew member shall be seated at the assigned station and shall not perform any activities other than those required for the safe operation of the aircraft.

CAT.OP.AH.215 Use of headset - aeroplanes

(a) Each flight crew member required to be on duty in the flight crew compartment shall wear a headset with boom microphone or equivalent. The headset shall be used as the primary device for voice communications with ATS:

(1) when on the ground:

(i) when receiving the ATC departure clearance via voice communication; and

(ii) when engines are running;

(2) when in flight:

(i) below transition altitude; or

(ii) 10 000 ft, whichever is higher; and

(3) whenever deemed necessary by the commander.

(b) In the conditions of (a) above, the boom microphone or equivalent shall be in a position that permits its use for two-way radio communications.

CAT.OP.AH.216 Use of headset - helicopters

Each flight crew member required to be on duty on the flight crew compartment shall wear a headset with boom microphone, or equivalent, and use it as the primary device to communicate with ATS.

CAT.OP.AH.220 Assisting means for emergency evacuation

The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that before taxiing, take-off and landing, and when safe and practicable to do so, all means of assistance for emergency evacuation that deploy automatically are armed.

CAT.OP.AH.225 Seats, safety belts and harnesses

(a) Crew members

(1) During take-off and landing, and whenever decided by the commander in the interest of safety, each crew member shall be properly secured by all safety belts and harnesses provided.

(2) During other phases of the flight, each flight crew member in the flight crew compartment shall keep the assigned station safety harness fastened while at his/her station.

(b) Passengers

(1) Before take-off and landing, and during taxiing, and whenever deemed necessary in the interest of safety, the commander shall be satisfied that each passenger on board occupies a seat or berth with his/her safety belt or harness properly secured.

(2) The operator shall make provisions for multiple occupancy of aircraft seats which is only allowed on specified seats. The commander shall be satisfied that multiple occupancy does not occur other than by one adult and one infant who is properly secured by a supplementary loop belt or other restraint device.

CAT.OP.AH.230 Securing of passenger cabin and galley(s)

(a) The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that before taxiing, take-off and landing all exits and escape paths are unobstructed.

(b) The commander shall be satisfied that before take-off and landing, and whenever deemed necessary in the interest of safety, all equipment and baggage is properly secured.

CAT.OP.AH.235 Life-jackets - helicopters

The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that, when operating a helicopter over water in performance class 3, account is taken of the duration of the flight and conditions to be encountered when deciding if life-jackets are to be worn by all occupants.

CAT.OP.AH.240 Smoking on board

The commander shall not allow smoking on board:

(a) whenever considered necessary in the interest of safety;

(b) during fuelling and defuelling of the aircraft;

(b) while the aircraft is on the ground unless the operator has determined procedures to mitigate the risks during ground operations;

(d) outside designated smoking areas, in the aisle(s) and lavatory(ies);

(e) in cargo compartments and/or other areas where cargo is carried that is not stored in flame-resistant containers or covered by flame-resistant canvas; and

(f) in those areas of the cabin where oxygen is being supplied.

CAT.OP.AH.245 Meteorological conditions

(a) On IFR flights the commander shall only:

(1) commence take-off; or

(2) continue beyond the point from which a revised flight plan applies in the event of in-flight replanning,

when information is available indicating that the expected weather conditions, at the time of arrival, at the destination and/or required alternate aerodrome(s) are at or above the planning minima.

(b) On IFR flights, the commander shall only continue towards the planned destination aerodrome when the latest information available indicates that, at the expected time of arrival, the weather conditions at the destination, or at least one destination alternate aerodrome, are at or above the applicable aerodrome operating minima.

(c) On IFR flight with aeroplanes, the commander shall only continue beyond:

(1) the decision point when using the reduced contingency fuel (RCF) procedure; or

(2) the pre-determined point when using the pre-determined point (PDP) procedure,

when information is available indicating that the expected weather conditions, at the time of arrival, at the destination and/or required alternate aerodrome(s) are at or above the applicable aerodrome operating minima.

(d) On VFR flights, the commander shall only commence take-off when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the meteorological conditions along the part of the route to be flown under VFR will, at the appropriate time, be at or above the VFR limits.

(e) On VFR flights overwater with helicopters, the commander shall only commence take-off when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the cloud ceiling will be above 600 ft by day or 1 200 ft by night.

(f) Notwithstanding (e), when flying between helidecks located in class G airspace where the overwater sector is less than 10 NM, VFR flights may be conducted when the limits are at, or better than, the following:

Table 1: Minima for flying between helidecks located in class G airspace

	Day		**Night**	
	Height *	**Visibility**	**Height ***	**Visibility**
Single pilot	300 ft	3 km	500 ft	5 km
Two pilots	300 ft	2 km **	500 ft	5 km ***

*: The cloud base shall be such as to allow flight at the specified height, below and clear of cloud

**: Helicopters may be operated in flight visibility down to 800 m provided the destination or an intermediate structure are continuously visible.

***: Helicopters may be operated in flight visibility down to 1 500 m provided the destination or an intermediate structure are continuously visible.

(g) Flight with helicopters to a helideck or elevated aerodrome shall only be operated when the mean wind speed at the helideck or elevated aerodrome is reported to be less than 60 knots (kt).

CAT.OP.AH.250 Ice and other contaminants – ground procedures

(a) The operator shall establish procedures to be followed when ground de-icing and anti-icing and related inspections of the aircraft are necessary to allow the safe operation of the aircraft.

(b) The commander shall not commence take-off unless the aircraft is clear of any deposit that might adversely affect the performance or controllability of the aircraft, except as permitted in the AFM.

CAT.OP.AH.255 Ice and other contaminants – flight procedures

(a) The operator shall establish procedures for flights in expected or actual icing conditions.

(b) The commander shall not commence a flight nor intentionally fly into expected or actual icing conditions unless the aircraft is certified and equipped to cope with such conditions.

CAT.OP.AH.260 Fuel and oil supply

The commander shall only commence a flight or continue in the event of in-flight replanning, when satisfied that the aircraft carries at least the planned amount of usable fuel and oil to complete the flight safely, taking into account the expected operating conditions.

CAT.OP.AH.265 Take-off conditions

Before commencing take-off, the commander shall be satisfied that:

(a) according to the information available to him/her, the weather at the aerodrome/operating site and the condition of the runway/FATO intended to be used should not prevent a safe take-off and departure;

(b) the RVR/VIS in the take-off direction of the aircraft is equal to or better than the applicable minimum.

CAT.OP.AH.270 Minimum flight altitudes

The commander or the pilot to whom conduct of the flight has been delegated shall not fly below specified minimum altitudes except when:

(a) necessary for take-off or landing; or

(b) descending in accordance with procedures approved by the competent authority.

CAT.OP.AH.275 Simulated abnormal situations in flight

The operator shall ensure that abnormal or emergency procedures or circumstances that would require such procedures and IMC are not simulated during commercial air transportation operations.

CAT.OP.AH.280 In-flight fuel management - aeroplanes

The operator shall establish a procedure to ensure that in-flight fuel checks and fuel management are carried out according to the following criteria.

(a) In-flight fuel checks

(1) The commander shall ensure that fuel checks are carried out in-flight at regular intervals. The usable remaining fuel shall be recorded and evaluated to:

(i) compare actual consumption with planned consumption;

(ii) check that the usable remaining fuel is sufficient to complete the flight, in accordance with (b); and

(iii) determine the expected usable fuel remaining on arrival at the destination aerodrome.

(2) The relevant fuel data shall be recorded.

(b) In-flight fuel management

(1) The flight shall be conducted so that the expected usable fuel remaining on arrival at the destination aerodrome is not less than:

(i) the required alternate fuel plus final reserve fuel, or

(ii) the final reserve fuel if no alternate aerodrome is required.

(2) If an in-flight fuel check shows that the expected usable fuel remaining on arrival at the destination aerodrome is less than:

(i) the required alternate fuel plus final reserve fuel, the commander shall take into account the traffic and the operational conditions prevailing at the destination aerodrome, at the destination alternate aerodrome and at any other adequate aerodrome, in deciding whether to proceed to the destination aerodrome or to divert so as to perform a safe landing with not less than final reserve fuel; or

(ii) the final reserve fuel if no alternate aerodrome is required, the commander shall take appropriate action and proceed to an adequate aerodrome so as to perform a safe landing with not less than final reserve fuel.

(3) The commander shall declare an emergency when the calculated usable fuel on landing, at the nearest adequate aerodrome where a safe landing can be performed, is less than final reserve fuel.

(4) Additional conditions for specific procedures

(i) On a flight using the RCF procedure, to proceed to the destination 1 aerodrome, the commander shall ensure that the usable fuel remaining at the decision point is at least the total of:

(A) trip fuel from the decision point to the destination 1 aerodrome;

(B) contingency fuel equal to 5 % of trip fuel from the decision point to the destination 1 aerodrome;

(C) destination 1 aerodrome alternate fuel, if a destination 1 alternate aerodrome is required; and

(D) final reserve fuel.

(ii) On a flight using the PDP procedure to proceed to the destination aerodrome, the commander shall ensure that the usable fuel remaining at the PDP is at least the total of:

(A) trip fuel from the PDP to the destination aerodrome;

(B) contingency fuel from the PDP to the destination aerodrome; and

(C) additional fuel.

CAT.OP.AH.281 In-flight fuel management - helicopters

(a) The operator shall establish a procedure to ensure that in-flight fuel checks and fuel management are carried out.

(b) The commander shall ensure that the amount of usable fuel remaining in flight is not less than the fuel required to proceed to an aerodrome/operating site where a safe landing can be made, with final reserve fuel remaining.

(c) The commander shall declare an emergency when the actual usable fuel on board is less than final reserve fuel.

CAT.OP.AH.285 Use of supplemental oxygen

The commander shall ensure that flight crew members engaged in performing duties essential to the safe operation of an aircraft in flight use supplemental oxygen continuously whenever the cabin altitude exceeds 10 000 ft for a period of more than 30 minutes and whenever the cabin altitude exceeds 13 000 ft.

CAT.OP.AH.290 Ground proximity detection

When undue proximity to the ground is detected by a flight crew member or by a ground proximity warning system, the pilot flying shall take corrective action immediately to establish safe flight conditions.

CAT.OP.AH.295 Use of airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS II)

(a) The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that when ACAS II is installed and serviceable, it shall be used during flight in a mode that enables resolution advisories (RA) to be produced for the flight crew when undue proximity to another aircraft is detected, unless inhibition of RA mode using traffic advisory (TA) only or equivalent is called for by an abnormal procedure or due to performance limiting conditions.

(b) When an RA is produced by ACAS II:

(1) the pilot flying shall immediately conform to the indications of the RA, even if this conflicts with an ATC instruction, unless doing so would jeopardise the safety of the aircraft;

(2) as soon as permitted by flight crew workload, notify the appropriate ATC unit of any RA that requires a deviation from the current ATC instruction or clearance; and

(3) when the conflict is resolved, the aircraft shall:

(i) be promptly returned to the terms of the acknowledged ATC instruction or clearance and ATC notified of the manoeuvre; or

(ii) comply with any amended ATC clearance or instruction issued.

CAT.OP.AH.300 Approach and landing conditions

Before commencing an approach to land, the commander shall be satisfied that, according to the information available to him/her, the weather at the aerodrome and the condition of the runway intended to be used should not prevent a safe approach, landing or missed approach, having regard to the performance information contained in the operations manual.

CAT.OP.AH.305 Commencement and continuation of approach

(a) The commander or the pilot to whom conduct of the flight has been delegated may commence an instrument approach regardless of the reported RVR.

(b) If the reported RVR is less than the applicable minimum the approach shall not be continued:

(1) below 1 000 ft above the aerodrome; or

(2) into the final approach segment in the case where the DH/MDH is more than 1 000 ft above the aerodrome.

(c) Where RVR is not available, RVR values may be derived by converting the reported visibility.

(d) If, after passing 1 000 ft above the aerodrome, the reported RVR/VIS falls below the applicable minimum, the approach may be continued to DA/H or MDA/H.

(e) The approach may be continued below DA/H or MDA/H and the landing may be completed provided that the visual reference adequate for the type of approach operation and for the intended runway is established at the DA/H or MDA/H and is maintained.

(f) The touchdown zone RVR shall always be controlling. If reported and relevant, the midpoint and stopend RVR shall also be controlling. The minimum RVR value for the midpoint shall be 125 m or the RVR required for the touchdown zone if less, and 75 m for the stopend. For aircraft equipped with a rollout guidance or control system, the minimum RVR value for the midpoint shall be 75 m.

CAT.OP.AH.310 Operating procedures – threshold crossing height - aeroplanes

The operator shall establish operational procedures designed to ensure that an aeroplane conducting precision approaches crosses the threshold of the runway by a safe margin, with the aeroplane in the landing configuration and attitude.

CAT.OP.AH.315 Flight hours reporting - helicopters

The operator shall make available to the competent authority the hours flown for each helicopter operated during the previous calendar year.

CAT.OP.AH.320 Aeroplane categories

(a) The criteria taken into consideration for the classification of aeroplanes by categories shall be the indicated airspeed at threshold (V_{AT}) which is equal to the stalling speed (V_{SO}) multiplied by 1.3 or 1 g stall speed (V_{S1G}) multiplied by 1.23 in the landing configuration at the maximum certified landing mass. If both V_{SO} and V_{S1G} are available, the higher resulting V_{AT} shall be used.

(b) The aeroplane categories corresponding to V_{AT} values are specified in the Table below:

Table 1: Aeroplane categories corresponding to V_{AT} values

Aeroplane category	V_{AT}
A	Less than 91 kt
B	From 91 to 120 kt
C	From 121 to 140 kt
D	From 141 to 165 kt
E	From 166 to 210 kt

(c) The landing configuration which is to be taken into consideration shall be specified in the operations manual.

(d) The operator may apply a lower landing mass for determining the V_{AT} if approved by the competent authority. Such a lower landing mass shall be a permanent value, independent of the changing conditions of day-to-day operations.

Subpart C - Aircraft performance and operating limitations

Section 1 - Aeroplanes

Chapter 1 - General requirements

CAT.POL.A.100 Performance classes

(a) The aeroplane shall be operated in accordance with the applicable performance class requirements.

(b) Where full compliance with the applicable requirements of this Section cannot be shown due to specific design characteristics, the operator shall apply approved performance standards that ensure a level of safety equivalent to that of the appropriate chapter.

CAT.POL.A.105 General

(a) The mass of the aeroplane:

(1) at the start of the take-off; or,

(2) in the event of in-flight re-planning, at the point from which the revised operational flight plan applies,

shall not be greater than the mass at which the requirements of the appropriate chapter can be complied with for the flight to be undertaken. Allowance may be made for expected reductions in mass as the flight proceeds and for fuel jettisoning.

(b) The approved performance data contained in the aircraft flight manual (AFM) shall be used to determine compliance with the requirements of the appropriate chapter, supplemented as necessary with other data as prescribed in the relevant chapter. The operator shall specify other data in the operations manual. When applying the factors prescribed in the appropriate chapter, account may be taken of any operational factors already incorporated in the AFM performance data to avoid double application of factors.

(c) Due account shall be taken of aeroplane configuration, environmental conditions and the operation of systems which have an adverse effect on performance.

(d) For performance purposes, a damp runway, other than a grass runway, may be considered to be dry.

(e) The operator shall take account of charting accuracy when assessing the take-off requirements of the applicable chapters.

Chapter 2 - Performance class A

CAT.POL.A.200 General

(a) The approved performance data in the AFM shall be supplemented as necessary with other data if the approved performance data in the AFM is insufficient in respect of items such as:

(1) accounting for reasonably expected adverse operating conditions such as take-off and landing on contaminated runways; and

(2) consideration of engine failure in all flight phases.

(b) For wet and contaminated runways, performance data determined in accordance with applicable standards on certification of large aeroplanes or equivalent shall be used.

(c) The use of other data referred to in (a) and equivalent requirements referred to in (b) shall be specified in the operations manual.

CAT.POL.A.205 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum take-off mass specified in the AFM for the pressure altitude and the ambient temperature at the aerodrome at which the take-off is to be made.

(b) The following requirements shall be met when determining the maximum permitted take-off mass:

(1) the accelerate-stop distance shall not exceed the accelerate-stop distance available (ASDA);

(2) the take-off distance shall not exceed the take-off distance available, with a clearway distance not exceeding half of the take-off run available (TORA);

(3) the take-off run shall not exceed the TORA;

(4) a single value of V_1 shall be used for the rejected and continued take-off; and

(5) on a wet or contaminated runway, the take-off mass shall not exceed that permitted for a take-off on a dry runway under the same conditions.

(c) When showing compliance with (b), the following shall be taken into account:

(1) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(2) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome;

(3) the runway surface condition and the type of runway surface;

(4) the runway slope in the direction of take-off;

(5) not more than 50 % of the reported head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the reported tailwind component; and

(6) the loss, if any, of runway length due to alignment of the aeroplane prior to take-off.

CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance

(a) The net take-off flight path shall be determined in such a way that the aeroplane clears all obstacles by a vertical distance of at least 35 ft or by a horizontal distance of at least 90 m plus 0.125 x D, where D is the horizontal distance the aeroplane has travelled from the end of the take-off distance available (TODA) or the end of the take-off distance if a turn is scheduled before the end of the TODA. For aeroplanes with a wingspan of less than 60 m, a horizontal obstacle clearance of half the aeroplane wingspan plus 60 m, plus 0.125 x D may be used.

(b) When showing compliance with (a) above:

(1) The following items shall be taken into account:

(i) the mass of the aeroplane at the commencement of the take-off run;

(ii) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(iii) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome; and

(iv) not more than 50 % of the reported head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the reported tailwind component.

(2) Track changes shall not be allowed up to the point at which the net take-off flight path has achieved a height equal to one half the wingspan but not less than 50 ft above the elevation of the end of the TORA. Thereafter, up to a height of 400 ft it is assumed that the aeroplane is banked by no more than 15°. Above 400 ft height bank angles greater than 15°, but not more than 25° may be scheduled.

(3) Any part of the net take-off flight path in which the aeroplane is banked by more than 15° shall clear all obstacles within the horizontal distances specified in (a), (b)(6) and (b)(7) by a vertical distance of at least 50 ft.

(4) Operations which apply increased bank angles of not more than 20° between 200 ft and 400 ft, or not more than 30° above 400 ft shall be carried out in accordance with CAT.POL.A.240.

(5) Adequate allowance shall be made for the effect of bank angle on operating speeds and flight path including the distance increments resulting from increased operating speeds.

(6) For cases where the intended flight path does not require track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles which have a lateral distance greater than:

(i) 300 m, if the pilot is able to maintain the required navigational accuracy through the obstacle accountability area; or

(ii) 600 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(7) For cases where the intended flight path requires track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles which have a lateral distance greater than:

(i) 600 m, if the pilot is able to maintain the required navigational accuracy through the obstacle accountability area; or

(ii) 900 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(8) In the event of an engine failure during take-off, the aeroplane shall be able to clear all obstacles along the flight path by an adequate margin until the aeroplane is in a position to comply with CAT.POL.A.215. The operator shall establish contingency procedures for such an event.

CAT.POL.A.215 En-route – one-engine-inoperative (OEI)

(a) The OEI en-route net flight path data shown in the AFM, appropriate to the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, shall allow demonstration of compliance with (b) or (c) at all points along the route. The net flight path shall have a positive gradient at 1 500 ft above the aerodrome where the landing is assumed to be made after engine failure. In meteorological conditions requiring the operation of ice protection systems, the effect of their use on the net flight path shall be taken into account.

(b) The gradient of the net flight path shall be positive at least 1 000 ft above all terrain and obstructions along the route within 9.3 km (5 NM) on either side of the intended track.

(c) The net flight path shall permit the aeroplane to continue flight from the cruising altitude to an aerodrome where a landing can be made in accordance with CAT.POL.A.225 or CAT.POL.A.230, as appropriate. The net flight path shall clear vertically, by at least 2 000 ft, all terrain and obstructions along the route within 9.3 km (5 NM) on either side of the intended track in accordance with the following:

(1) the engine is assumed to fail at the most critical point along the route;

(2) account is taken of the effects of winds on the flight path;

(3) fuel jettisoning is permitted to an extent consistent with reaching the aerodrome with the required fuel reserves, if a safe procedure is used; and

(4) the aerodrome where the aeroplane is assumed to land after engine failure shall meet the following criteria:

(i) the performance requirements at the expected landing mass are met; and

(ii) weather reports and/or forecasts and field condition reports indicate that a safe landing can be accomplished at the estimated time of landing.

(d) The operator shall increase the width margins of (b) and (c) above to 18.5 km (10 NM) if the navigational accuracy does not meet at least required navigation performance 5 (RNP5).

CAT.POL.A.220 En-route – aeroplanes with three or more engines, two engines inoperative

(a) At no point along the intended track shall an aeroplane having three or more engines be more than 90 minutes, at the all-engines long range cruising speed at standard temperature in still air, away from an aerodrome at which the performance requirements applicable at the expected landing mass are met, unless it complies with (b) to (f) below.

(b) The two-engines-inoperative en-route net flight path data shall allow the aeroplane to continue the flight, in the expected meteorological conditions, from the point where two engines are assumed to fail simultaneously, to an aerodrome at which it is possible to land and come to a complete stop when using the prescribed procedure for a landing with two engines inoperative. The net flight path shall clear vertically, by at least 2 000 ft, all terrain and obstructions along the route within 9.3 km (5 NM) on either side of the intended track. At altitudes and in meteorological conditions requiring ice protection systems to be operable, the effect of their use on the net flight path data shall be taken into account. If the navigational accuracy does not meet at least RNP5, the operator shall increase the width margin given above to 18.5 km (10 NM).

(c) The two engines shall be assumed to fail at the most critical point of that portion of the route where the aeroplane is more than 90 minutes, at the all-engines long range cruising speed at standard temperature in still air, away from an aerodrome at which the performance requirements applicable at the expected landing mass are met.

(d) The net flight path shall have a positive gradient at 1 500 ft above the aerodrome where the landing is assumed to be made after the failure of two engines.

(e) Fuel jettisoning shall be permitted to an extent consistent with reaching the aerodrome with the required fuel reserves, if a safe procedure is used.

(f) The expected mass of the aeroplane at the point where the two engines are assumed to fail shall not be less than that which would include sufficient fuel to proceed to an aerodrome where the landing is assumed to be made, and to arrive there at least 1 500 ft directly over the landing area and thereafter to fly level for 15 minutes.

CAT.POL.A.225 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

(a) The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105 (a) shall not exceed the maximum landing mass specified for the altitude and the ambient temperature expected for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and alternate aerodrome.

(b) For instrument approaches with a missed approach climb gradient greater than 2.5 %, the operator shall verify that the expected landing mass of the aeroplane allows for a missed approach with a climb gradient equal to or greater than the applicable missed approach gradient in the OEI missed approach configuration and at the associated speed.

(c) For instrument approaches with decision heights below 200 ft, the operator shall verify that the expected landing mass of the aeroplane allows a missed approach gradient of climb, with the critical engine failed and with the speed and configuration used for a missed approach of at least 2.5 %, or the published gradient, whichever is greater.

CAT.POL.A.230 Landing – dry runways

(a) The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105 (a) for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and at any alternate aerodrome shall allow a full stop landing from 50 ft above the threshold:

(1) for turbo-jet powered aeroplanes, within 60 % of the landing distance available (LDA); and

(2) for turbo-propeller powered aeroplanes, within 70 % of the LDA.

(b) For steep approach operations, the operator shall use the landing distance data factored in accordance with (a) above, based on a screen height of less than 60 ft, but not less than 35 ft, and shall comply with CAT.POL.A.245.

(c) For short landing operations, the operator shall use the landing distance data factored in accordance with (a) above and shall comply with CAT.POL.A.250.

(d) For determining the landing mass, the operator shall take the following into account:

(1) the altitude at the aerodrome;

(2) not more than 50 % of the head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the tailwind component; and

(3) the runway slope in the direction of landing if greater than +/-2 %.

(e) For dispatching the aeroplane it shall be assumed that:

(1) the aeroplane will land on the most favourable runway, in still air; and

(2) the aeroplane will land on the runway most likely to be assigned, considering the probable wind speed and direction and the ground handling characteristics of the aeroplane, and other conditions such as landing aids and terrain.

(f) If the operator is unable to comply with (e)(1) above for a destination aerodrome having a single runway where a landing depends upon a specified wind component, the aeroplane may be dispatched if two alternate aerodromes are designated which permit full compliance with (a) to (e). Before commencing an approach to land at the destination aerodrome, the commander shall check if a landing can be made in full compliance with CAT.POL.A.225 and (a) to (d) above.

(g) If the operator is unable to comply with (e)(2) above for the destination aerodrome, the aeroplane shall be only dispatched if an alternate aerodrome is designated which allows full compliance with (a) to (e) above.

CAT.POL.A.235 Landing – wet and contaminated runways

(a) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be wet, the LDA shall be at least 115 % of the required landing distance, determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.230.

(b) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be contaminated, the LDA shall be at least the landing distance determined in accordance with (a) above, or at least 115 % of the landing distance determined in accordance with approved contaminated landing distance data or equivalent, whichever is greater. The operator shall specify in the operations manual if equivalent landing distance data are to be applied.

(c) A landing distance on a wet runway shorter than that required by (a) above, but not less than that required by CAT.POL.A.230(a), may be used if the AFM includes specific additional information about landing distances on wet runways.

(d) A landing distance on a specially prepared contaminated runway shorter than that required by (b) above, but not less than that required by CAT.POL.A.230 (a), may be used if the AFM includes specific additional information about landing distances on contaminated runways.

(e) For (b), (c) and (d) above, the criteria of CAT.POL.A.230 shall be applied accordingly, except that CAT.POL.A.230(a) shall not be applied to (b) above.

CAT.POL.A.240 Approval of operations with increased bank angles

(a) Operations with increased bank angles require prior approval from the competent authority.

(b) To obtain the approval, the operator shall provide evidence that the following conditions are met:

   (1) the AFM contains approved data for the required increase of operating speed and data to allow the construction of the flight path considering the increased bank angles and speeds;

   (2) visual guidance is available for navigation accuracy;

   (3) weather minima and wind limitations are specified for each runway; and

   (4) the flight crew has obtained adequate knowledge of the route to be flown and of the procedures to be used in accordance with OR.OPS.FC.

CAT.POL.A.245 Approval of steep approach operations

(a) Steep approach operations using glideslope angles of 4.5° or more and with screen heights of less than 60 ft, but not less than 35 ft, require prior approval from the competent authority.

(b) To obtain the approval, the operator shall provide evidence that the following conditions are met:

(1) the AFM states the maximum approved glideslope angle, any other limitations, normal, abnormal or emergency procedures for the steep approach as well as amendments to the field length data when using steep approach criteria;

(2) for each aerodrome at which steep approach operations are to be conducted:

(i) a suitable glide path reference system comprising at least a visual glide path indicating system shall be available; and

(ii) weather minima shall be specified; and

(iii) the following items shall be taken into consideration:

(A) the obstacle situation;

(B) the type of glide path reference and runway guidance;

(C) the minimum visual reference to be required at decision height (DH) and minimum descent altitude (MDA);

(D) available airborne equipment;

(E) pilot qualification and special aerodrome familiarisation;

(F) AFM limitations and procedures; and

(G) missed approach criteria.

CAT.POL.A.250 Approval of short landing operations

(a) Short landing operations require prior approval from the competent authority.

(b) To obtain the approval, the operator shall provide evidence that the following conditions are met:

(1) the distance used for the calculation of the permitted landing mass may consist of the usable length of the declared safe area plus the declared LDA;

(2) the State of the aerodrome has determined a public interest and operational necessity for the operation, either due to the remoteness of the aerodrome or to physical limitations relating to extending the runway;

(3) the vertical distance between the path of the pilot's eye and the path of the lowest part of the wheels, with the aeroplane established on the normal glide path, does not exceed 3 m;

(4) RVR/VIS minimum shall not be less than 1 500 m and wind limitations are specified in the operations manual;

(5) minimum pilot experience, training and special aerodrome familiarisation requirements are specified and met;

(6) the crossing height over the beginning of the usable length of the declared safe area is 50 ft;

(7) the use of the declared safe area is approved by the State of the aerodrome;

(8) the usable length of the declared safe area does not exceed 90 m;

(9) the width of the declared safe area is not less than twice the runway width or twice the wing span, whichever is greater, centred on the extended runway centre line;

(10) the declared safe area is clear of obstructions or depressions which would endanger an aeroplane undershooting the runway and no mobile object is permitted on the declared safe area while the runway is being used for short landing operations;

(11) the slope of the declared safe area does not exceed 5 % upward nor 2 % downward in the direction of landing; and

(12) additional conditions, if specified by the competent authority, taking into account aeroplane type characteristics, orographic characteristics in the approach area, available approach aids and missed approach/balked landing considerations.

Chapter 3 - Performance class B

CAT.POL.A.300 General

(a) The operator shall not operate a single-engine aeroplane:

(1) at night; or

(2) in instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) except under special VFR.

(b) The operator shall treat two-engined aeroplanes which do not meet the climb requirements of CAT.POL.A.340 as single-engine aeroplanes.

CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum take-off mass specified in the AFM for the pressure altitude and the ambient temperature at the aerodrome at which the take-off is to be made.

(b) The unfactored take-off distance, specified in the AFM, shall not exceed:

(1) when multiplied by a factor of 1.25, the take-off run available (TORA); or

(2) when stop way and/or clearway is available, the following:

(i) the TORA;

(ii) when multiplied by a factor of 1.15, the take-off distance available (TODA); or

(iii) when multiplied by a factor of 1.3, the ASDA.

(c) When showing compliance with (b) above, the following shall be taken into account:

(1) the mass of the aeroplane at the commencement of the take-off run;

(2) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(3) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome;

(4) the runway surface condition and the type of runway surface;

(5) the runway slope in the direction of take-off; and

(6) not more than 50 % of the reported head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the reported tail-wind component.

CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes

(a) The take-off flight path of aeroplanes with two or more engines shall be determined in such a way that the aeroplane clears all obstacles by a vertical distance of at least 50 ft, or by a horizontal distance of at least 90 m plus 0.125 x D, where D is the horizontal distance travelled by the aeroplane from the end of the TODA or the end of the take-off distance if a turn is scheduled before the end of the TODA except as provided in (b) and (c) below. For aeroplanes with a wingspan of less than 60 m, a horizontal obstacle clearance of half the aeroplane wingspan plus 60 m, plus 0.125 x D may be used. It shall be assumed that:

(1) the take-off flight path begins at a height of 50 ft above the surface at the end of the take-off distance required by CAT.POL.A.305(b) and ends at a height of 1 500 ft above the surface;

(2) the aeroplane is not banked before the aeroplane has reached a height of 50 ft above the surface, and thereafter the angle of bank does not exceed 15°;

(3) failure of the critical engine occurs at the point on the all engine take-off flight path where visual reference for the purpose of avoiding obstacles is expected to be lost;

(4) the gradient of the take-off flight path from 50 ft to the assumed engine failure height is equal to the average all-engines gradient during climb and transition to the en-route configuration, multiplied by a factor of 0.77; and

(5) the gradient of the take-off flight path from the height reached in accordance with (a)(4) above to the end of the take-off flight path is equal to the OEI en-route climb gradient shown in the AFM.

(b) For cases where the intended flight path does not require track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles which have a lateral distance greater than:

(1) 300 m, if the flight is conducted under conditions allowing visual course guidance navigation, or if navigational aids are available enabling the pilot to maintain the intended flight path with the same accuracy; or

(2) 600 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(c) For cases where the intended flight path requires track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles which have a lateral distance greater than:

(1) 600 m, for flights under conditions allowing visual course guidance navigation; or

(2) 900 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(d) When showing compliance with (a) to (c) above, the following shall be taken into account:

(1) the mass of the aeroplane at the commencement of the take-off run;

(2) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(3) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome; and

(4) not more than 50 % of the reported head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the reported tail-wind component.

CAT.POL.A.315 En-route – multi-engined aeroplanes

(a) The aeroplane, in the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, and in the event of the failure of one engine, with the remaining engines operating within the maximum continuous power conditions specified, shall be capable of continuing flight at or above the relevant minimum altitudes for safe flight stated in the operations manual to a point 1 000 ft above an aerodrome at which the performance requirements can be met.

(b) It shall be assumed that, at the point of engine failure:

(1) the aeroplane is not flying at an altitude exceeding that at which the rate of climb equals 300 ft per minute with all engines operating within the maximum continuous power conditions specified; and

(2) the en-route gradient with OEI shall be the gross gradient of descent or climb, as appropriate, respectively increased by a gradient of 0.5 %, or decreased by a gradient of 0.5 %.

CAT.POL.A.320 En-route – single-engined aeroplanes

(a) In the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, and in the event of engine failure, the aeroplane shall be capable of reaching a place at which a safe forced landing can be made.

(b) It shall be assumed that, at the point of engine failure:

(1) the aeroplane is not flying at an altitude exceeding that at which the rate of climb equals 300 ft per minute, with the engine operating within the maximum continuous power conditions specified; and

(2) the en-route gradient is the gross gradient of descent increased by a gradient of 0.5 %.

CAT.POL.A.325 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105(a) shall not exceed the maximum landing mass specified for the altitude and the ambient temperature expected at the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and alternate aerodrome.

CAT.POL.A.330 Landing – dry runways

(a) The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105(a) for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and at any alternate aerodrome shall allow a full stop landing from 50 ft above the threshold within 70 % of the landing distance available (LDA) taking into account:

(1) the altitude at the aerodrome;

(2) not more than 50 % of the head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the tail-wind component;

(3) the runway surface condition and the type of runway surface; and

(4) the runway slope in the direction of landing.

(b) For steep approach operations, the operator shall use landing distance data factored in accordance with (a) above based on a screen height of less than 60 ft, but not less than 35 ft, and comply with CAT.POL.A.345.

(c) For short landing operations, the operator shall use landing distance data factored in accordance with (a) above and comply with CAT.POL.A.350.

(d) For dispatching the aeroplane in accordance with (a) to (c) above, it shall be assumed that:

(1) the aeroplane will land on the most favourable runway, in still air; and

(2) the aeroplane will land on the runway most likely to be assigned considering the probable wind speed and direction and the ground handling characteristics of the aeroplane, and other conditions such as landing aids and terrain.

(e) If the operator is unable to comply with (d)(2) above for the destination aerodrome, the aeroplane shall only be dispatched if an alternate aerodrome is designated which permits full compliance with (a) to (d) above.

CAT.POL.A.335 Landing – wet and contaminated runways

(a) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be wet, the LDA shall be equal to or exceed the required landing distance, determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.330, multiplied by a factor of 1.15.

(b) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be contaminated, the landing distance shall not exceed the LDA. The operator shall specify in the operations manual the landing distance data to be applied.

(c) A landing distance on a wet runway shorter than that required by (a) above, but not less than that required by CAT.POL.A.330(a), may be used if the AFM includes specific additional information about landing distances on wet runways.

CAT.POL.A.340 General

The operator of a two-engined aeroplane shall fulfil the following take-off and landing climb standards.

(a) Take-off climb

(1) All engines operating

(i) The steady gradient of climb after take-off shall be at least 4 % with:

(A) take-off power on each engine;

(B) the landing gear extended except that if the landing gear can be retracted in not more than 7 seconds, it may be assumed to be retracted;

(C) the wing flaps in the take-off position(s); and

(D) a climb speed not less than the greater of 1.1 V_{MC} (minimum control speed on or near ground) and 1.2 V_{S1} (stall speed or minimum steady flight speed in the landing configuration).

(2) OEI

(i) The steady gradient of climb at an altitude of 400 ft above the take-off surface shall be measurably positive with:

(A) the critical engine inoperative and its propeller in the minimum drag position;

(B) the remaining engine at take-off power;

(C) the landing gear retracted;

(D) the wing flaps in the take-off position(s); and

(E) a climb speed equal to that achieved at 50 ft.

(ii) The steady gradient of climb shall be not less than 0.75 % at an altitude of 1 500 ft above the take-off surface with:

(A) the critical engine inoperative and its propeller in the minimum drag position;

(B) the remaining engine at not more than maximum continuous power;

(C) the landing gear retracted;

(D) the wing flaps retracted; and

(E) a climb speed not less than 1.2 V_{S1}.

(b) Landing climb

(1) All engines operating

(i) The steady gradient of climb shall be at least 2.5 % with:

(A) not more than the power or thrust that is available 8 seconds after initiation of movement of the power controls from the minimum flight idle position;

(B) the landing gear extended;

(C) the wing flaps in the landing position; and

(D) a climb speed equal to V_{REF} (reference landing speed).

(2) OEI

(i) The steady gradient of climb shall be not less than 0.75 % at an altitude of 1 500 ft above the landing surface with:

(A) the critical engine inoperative and its propeller in the minimum drag position;

(B) the remaining engine at not more than maximum continuous power;

(C) the landing gear retracted;

(D) the wing flaps retracted; and

(E) a climb speed not less than 1.2 V_{S1}.

CAT.POL.A.345 Approval of steep approach operations

(a) Steep approach operations using glideslope angles of 4.5° or more and with screen heights of less than 60 ft, but not less than 35 ft, require prior approval of the competent authority.

(b) To obtain the approval, the operator shall provide evidence that the following conditions are met:

(1) the AFM states the maximum approved glideslope angle, any other limitations, normal, abnormal or emergency procedures for the steep approach as well as amendments to the field length data when using steep approach criteria; and

(2) for each aerodrome at which steep approach operations are to be conducted:

(i) a suitable glide path reference system, comprising at least a visual glide path indicating system, is available;

(ii) weather minima are specified; and

(iii) the following items are taken into consideration:

(A) the obstacle situation;

(B) the type of glide path reference and runway guidance;

(C) the minimum visual reference to be required at DH and MDA;

(D) available airborne equipment;

(E) pilot qualification and special aerodrome familiarisation;

(F) AFM limitations and procedures; and

(G) missed approach criteria.

CAT.POL.A.350 Approval of short landing operations

(a) Short landing operations require prior approval in of the competent authority.

(b) To obtain the approval, the operator shall provide evidence that the following conditions are met:

(1) the distance used for the calculation of the permitted landing mass may consist of the usable length of the declared safe area plus the declared LDA;

(2) the use of the declared safe area is approved by the State of the aerodrome;

(3) the declared safe area is clear of obstructions or depressions which would endanger an aeroplane undershooting the runway and no mobile object is

permitted on the declared safe area while the runway is being used for short landing operations;

(4) the slope of the declared safe area does not exceed 5 % upward nor 2 % downward slope in the direction of landing;

(5) the usable length of the declared safe area does not exceed 90 m;

(6) the width of the declared safe area is not less than twice the runway width, centred on the extended runway centreline;

(7) the crossing height over the beginning of the usable length of the declared safe area is not less than 50 ft;

(8) weather minima are specified for each runway to be used and are not less than the greater of VFR or NPA minima;

(9) pilot experience, training and special aerodrome familiarisation requirements are specified and met;

(10) additional conditions, if specified by the competent authority, taking into account the aeroplane type characteristics, orographic characteristics in the approach area, available approach aids and missed approach/balked landing considerations.

Chapter 4 – Performance class C

CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum take-off mass specified in the AFM for the pressure altitude and the ambient temperature at the aerodrome at which the take-off is to be made.

(b) For aeroplanes which have take-off field length data contained in their AFM that does not include engine failure accountability, the distance from the start of the take-off roll required by the aeroplane to reach a height of 50 ft above the surface with all engines operating within the maximum take-off power conditions specified, when multiplied by a factor of either:

(1) 1.33 for aeroplanes having two engines;

(2) 1.25 for aeroplanes having three engines; or

(3) 1.18 for aeroplanes having four engines,

shall not exceed the take-off run available (TORA) at the aerodrome at which the take-off is to be made.

(c) For aeroplanes which have take-off field length data contained in their AFM which accounts for engine failure, the following requirements shall be met in accordance with the specifications in the AFM:

(1) the accelerate-stop distance shall not exceed the ASDA;

(2) the take-off distance shall not exceed the take-off distance available (TODA), with a clearway distance not exceeding half of the TORA;

(3) the take-off run shall not exceed the TORA;

(4) a single value of V_1 for the rejected and continued take-off shall be used; and

(5) on a wet or contaminated runway the take-off mass shall not exceed that permitted for a take-off on a dry runway under the same conditions.

(d) The following shall be taken into account:

(1) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(2) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome;

(3) the runway surface condition and the type of runway surface;

(4) the runway slope in the direction of take-off;

(5) not more that 50 % of the reported head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the reported tail-wind component; and

(6) the loss, if any, of runway length due to alignment of the aeroplane prior to take-off.

CAT.POL.A.405 Take-off obstacle clearance

(a) The take-off flight path with OEI shall be determined such that the aeroplane clears all obstacles by a vertical distance of at least 50 ft plus 0.01 x D, or by a horizontal distance of at least 90 m plus 0.125 x D, where D is the horizontal distance the aeroplane has travelled from the end of the TODA. For aeroplanes with a wingspan of less than 60 m, a horizontal obstacle clearance of half the aeroplane wingspan plus 60 m, plus 0.125 x D may be used.

(b) The take-off flight path shall begin at a height of 50 ft above the surface at the end of the take-off distance required by CAT.POL.A.405 (b) or (c), as applicable, and end at a height of 1 500 ft above the surface.

(c) When showing compliance with (a) above, the following shall be taken into account:

(1) the mass of the aeroplane at the commencement of the take-off run;

(2) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(3) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome; and

(4) not more than 50 % of the reported head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the reported tail-wind component.

(d) Track changes shall not be allowed up to that point of the take-off flight path where a height of 50 ft above the surface has been achieved. Thereafter, up to a height of 400 ft it is assumed that the aeroplane is banked by no more than 15°. Above 400 ft height bank angles greater than 15°, but not more than 25°, may be scheduled. Adequate allowance shall be made for the effect of bank angle on operating speeds and flight path including the distance increments resulting from increased operating speeds.

(e) For cases which do not require track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles which have a lateral distance greater than:

(1) 300 m, if the pilot is able to maintain the required navigational accuracy through the obstacle accountability area; or

(2) 600 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(f) For cases which do require track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles which have a lateral distance greater than:

(1) 600 m, if the pilot is able to maintain the required navigational accuracy through the obstacle accountability area; or

(2) 900 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(g) The operator shall establish contingency procedures to provide a safe route, avoiding obstacles and to enable the aeroplane to either comply with the en-route requirements of CAT.POL.A.415, or land at either the aerodrome of departure or at a take-off alternate aerodrome.

CAT.POL.A.410 En-route – all engines operating

(a) In the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, at any point on its route or on any planned diversion there from, the aeroplane shall be capable of a rate of climb of at least 300 ft per minute with all engines operating within the maximum continuous power conditions specified at:

(1) the minimum altitudes for safe flight on each stage of the route to be flown, or of any planned diversion therefrom, specified in or calculated from the information contained in, the operations manual relating to the aeroplane; and

(2) the minimum altitudes necessary for compliance with the conditions prescribed in CAT.POL.A.415 and 420, as appropriate.

CAT.POL.A.415 En-route – OEI

(a) In the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, in the event of any one engine becoming inoperative at any point on its route or on any planned diversion therefrom and with the other engine(s) operating within the maximum continuous power conditions specified, the aeroplane shall be capable of continuing the flight from the cruising altitude to an aerodrome where a landing can be made in accordance with CAT.POL.A.430 or CAT.POL.A.435, as appropriate, clearing obstacles within 9.3 km (5 NM) either side of the intended track by a vertical interval of at least:

(1) 1 000 ft, when the rate of climb is zero or greater; or

(2) 2 000 ft, when the rate of climb is less than zero.

(b) The flight path shall have a positive slope at an altitude of 450 m (1 500 ft) above the aerodrome where the landing is assumed to be made after the failure of one engine.

(c) The available rate of climb of the aeroplane shall be taken to be 150 ft per minute less than the gross rate of climb specified.

(d) The width margins of (a) above shall be increased to 18.5 km (10 NM) if the navigational accuracy does not meet at least RNP5.

(e) Fuel jettisoning is permitted to an extent consistent with reaching the aerodrome with the required fuel reserves, if a safe procedure is used.

CAT.POL.A.420 En-route – aeroplanes with three or more engines, two engines inoperative

(a) At no point along the intended track shall an aeroplane having three or more engines be more than 90 minutes, at the all-engines long range cruising speed at standard temperature in still air, away from an aerodrome at which the performance requirements applicable at the expected landing mass are met, unless it complies with (b) to (e) below.

(b) The two-engines-inoperative flight path shall permit the aeroplane to continue the flight, in the expected meteorological conditions, clearing all obstacles within

9.3 km (5 NM) either side of the intended track by a vertical interval of at least 2 000 ft, to an aerodrome at which the performance requirements applicable at the expected landing mass are met.

(c) The two engines are assumed to fail at the most critical point of that portion of the route where the aeroplane is more than 90 minutes, at the all-engines long range cruising speed at standard temperature in still air, away from an aerodrome at which the performance requirements applicable at the expected landing mass are met.

(d) The expected mass of the aeroplane at the point where the two engines are assumed to fail shall not be less than that which would include sufficient fuel to proceed to an aerodrome where the landing is assumed to be made, and to arrive there at an altitude of a least 450 m (1 500 ft) directly over the landing area and thereafter to fly level for 15 minutes.

(e) The available rate of climb of the aeroplane shall be taken to be 150 ft per minute less than that specified.

(f) The width margins of (b) above shall be increased to 18.5 km (10 NM) if the navigational accuracy does not meet at least RNP5.

(g) Fuel jettisoning is permitted to an extent consistent with reaching the aerodrome with the required fuel reserves, if a safe procedure is used.

CAT.POL.A.425 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105 (a) shall not exceed the maximum landing mass specified in the AFM for the altitude and, if accounted for in the AFM, the ambient temperature expected for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and alternate aerodrome.

CAT.POL.A.430 Landing – dry runways

(a) The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105(a) for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and any alternate aerodrome shall allow a full stop landing from 50 ft above the threshold within 70 % of the landing distance available (LDA) taking into account:

(1) the altitude at the aerodrome;

(2) not more than 50 % of the head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the tail-wind component;

(3) the type of runway surface; and

(4) the slope of the runway in the direction of landing.

(b) For dispatching the aeroplane it shall be assumed that:

(1) the aeroplane will land on the most favourable runway in still air; and

(2) the aeroplane will land on the runway most likely to be assigned considering the probable wind speed and direction and the ground handling

characteristics of the aeroplane, and other conditions such as landing aids and terrain.

(c) If the operator is unable to comply with (b)(2) above for the destination aerodrome, the aeroplane shall only be dispatched if an alternate aerodrome is designated which permits full compliance with (a) and (b) above.

CAT.POL.A.435 Landing – wet and contaminated runways

(a) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be wet, the LDA shall be equal to or exceed the required landing distance, determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.430, multiplied by a factor of 1.15.

(b) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be contaminated, the landing distance shall not exceed the LDA. The operator shall specify in the operations manual the landing distance data to be applied.

Section 2 - Helicopters

Chapter 1 - General requirements

CAT.POL.H.100 Applicability

(a) The operator shall ensure that helicopters are operated in accordance with the applicable performance class requirements.

(b) Helicopters shall be operated in performance class 1:

(1) when operated to/from aerodromes/operating sites located in a congested hostile environment, except when operated to/from a public interest site (PIS) in accordance with CAT.POL.H.225; or

(2) when having a maximum passenger seating configuration (MPSC) of more than 19, except when operated to/from a helideck in performance class 2 under an approval in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305.

(c) Unless otherwise prescribed by (b), helicopters which have an MPSC of 19 or less but more than nine shall be operated in performance class 1 or 2.

(d) Unless otherwise prescribed by (b), helicopters which have an MPSC of nine or less shall be operated in performance class 1, 2 or 3.

CAT.POL.H.105 General

(a) The mass of the helicopter:

(1) at the start of the take-off; or

(2) in the event of in-flight re-planning, at the point from which the revised operational flight plan applies,

shall not be greater than the mass at which the applicable requirements of this Section can be complied with for the flight to be undertaken, taking into account expected reductions in mass as the flight proceeds and such fuel jettisoning as is provided for in the relevant requirement.

(b) The approved performance data contained in the aircraft flight manual (AFM) shall be used to determine compliance with the requirements of this Section, supplemented as necessary with other data as prescribed in the relevant requirement. The operator shall specify such other data in the operations manual. When applying the factors prescribed in this Section, account may be taken of any operational factors already incorporated in the AFM performance data to avoid double application of factors.

(c) When showing compliance with the requirements of this Section, account shall be taken of the following parameters:

(1) mass of the helicopter;

(2) the helicopter configuration;

(3) the environmental conditions, in particular:

(i) pressure-altitude, and temperature;

(ii) wind:

(A) except as provided in (C) below, for take-off, take-off flight path and landing requirements, accountability for wind shall be no more than 50 % of any reported steady head wind component of 5 kt or more;

(B) where take-off and landing with a tail-wind component is permitted in the AFM, and in all cases for the take-off flight path, not less than 150 % of any reported tail-wind component shall be taken into account;

(C) where precise wind measuring equipment enables accurate measurement of wind velocity over the point of take-off and landing, wind components in excess of 50 % may be established by the operator, provided that the operator demonstrates to the competent authority that the proximity to the final approach and take-off area (FATO) and accuracy enhancements of the wind measuring equipment provide an equivalent level of safety;

(4) the operating techniques; and

(5) the operation of any systems which have an adverse effect on performance.

CAT.POL.H.110 Obstacle accountability

(a) For the purpose of obstacle clearance requirements, an obstacle located beyond the FATO, in the take-off flight path, or the missed approach flight path shall be considered if its lateral distance from the nearest point on the surface below the intended flight path is not further than the following:

(1) For VFR operations, half of the minimum FATO width, or the equivalent term used in the AFM, or, when no width is defined, 0.75 x D plus 0.25 x D (where D is the largest dimension of the helicopter when the rotors are turning), or 3 m, whichever is greater, plus:

(i) 0.10 x distance DR for VFR day operations; or

(ii) 0.15 x distance DR for VFR night operations.

(2) For IFR operations 1.5 x D or 30 m, whichever is greater, plus:

(i) 0.10 x distance DR, for IFR operations with accurate course guidance;

(ii) 0.15 x distance DR, for IFR operations with standard course guidance; or

(iii) 0.30 x distance DR for IFR operations without course guidance,

when considering the missed approach flight path, the divergence of the obstacle accountability area only applies after the end of the take-off distance available.

(3) For operations with initial take-off conducted visually and converted to IFR/instrument meteorological conditions IMC at a transition point, the criteria required in (1) apply up to the transition point, and the criteria required in (2) apply after the transition point. The transition point cannot be located before the end of the take-off distance required for helicopters (TODRH) operating in performance class 1 or before the defined point after take-off (DPATO) for helicopters operating in performance class 2.

(b) For take-off using a back-up or a lateral transition procedure, for the purpose of obstacle clearance requirements, an obstacle located in the back-up or lateral transition area shall be considered if its lateral distance from the nearest point on the surface below the intended flight path is not further than half of the minimum FATO width, or the equivalent term used in the AFM; or, when no width is defined 0.75 x D, plus 0.25 x D or 3 m, whichever is greater, plus 0.10 x for VFR day, or 0.15 x for VFR night, the distance travelled from the back of the FATO.

(c) Obstacles may be disregarded if they are situated beyond:

(1) 7 x rotor radius (R) for day operations, if it is assured that navigational accuracy can be achieved by reference to suitable visual cues during the climb;

(2) 10 X R for night operations, if it is assured that navigational accuracy can be achieved by reference to suitable visual cues during the climb;

(3) 300 m if navigational accuracy can be achieved by appropriate navigation aids; or

(4) 900 m in all other cases.

Chapter 2 – Performance class 1

CAT.POL.H.200 General

Helicopters operated in performance class 1 shall be certified in Category A or equivalent.

CAT.POL.H.205 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum take-off mass specified in the AFM, or approved by the competent authority for the procedure to be used.

(b) The take-off mass shall be such that:

(1) it is possible to reject the take-off and land on the FATO in case of the critical engine failure being recognised at or before the take-off decision point (TDP);

(2) the rejected take-off distance required (RTODRH) does not exceed the rejected take-off distance available (RTODAH); and

(3) the TODRH does not exceed the take-off distance available (TODAH).

(4) Notwithstanding (b)(3) the TODRH may exceed the TODAH if the helicopter, with the critical engine failure recognised at TDP can, when continuing the take-off, clear all obstacles to the end of the TODRH by a vertical margin of not less than 10.7 m (35 ft).

(c) When showing compliance with sub-paragraph (a) and (b), account shall be taken of the appropriate parameters of CAT.POL.H.105(c) at the aerodrome/operating site of departure.

(d) That part of the take-off up to and including TDP shall be conducted in sight of the surface such that a rejected take-off can be carried out.

(e) For take-off using a backup or lateral transition procedure, with the critical engine failure recognition at or before the TDP, all obstacles in the back-up or lateral transition area shall be cleared by an adequate margin.

CAT.POL.H.210 Take-off Flight Path

(a) From the end of the TODRH with the critical engine failure recognised at the TDP:

(1) The take-off mass shall be such that the take-off flight path provides a vertical clearance of not less than 10.7 m (35 ft) for VFR operations, and 10.7 m (35 ft) + 0.01 x distance DR for IFR operations, above all obstacles located in the climb path. Only obstacles as specified in CAT.POL.H.110 have to be considered.

(2) Where a change of direction of more than 15° is made, adequate allowance shall be made for the effect of bank angle on the ability to comply with the obstacle clearance requirements. This turn is not to be initiated before reaching a height of 61 m (200 ft) above the take-off surface unless part of an approved procedure in the aircraft flight manual (AFM).

(b) When showing compliance with (a) above, account shall be taken of the appropriate parameters of CAT.POL.H.105(c) at the aerodrome/operating site of departure.

CAT.POL.H.215 En-route – critical engine inoperative

(a) The mass of the helicopter and flight path at all points along the route, with the critical engine inoperative and the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, shall permit compliance with (1), (2) or (3) below:

(1) When it is intended that the flight will be conducted at any time out of sight of the surface, the mass of the helicopter permits a rate of climb of at least 50 ft/minute with the critical engine inoperative at an altitude of at least 300 m (1 000 ft) or 600 m (2 000 ft) in areas of mountainous terrain, above all terrain and obstacles along the route within 9.3 km (5 NM) on either side of the intended track.

(2) When it is intended that the flight will be conducted without the surface in sight, the flight path permits the helicopter to continue flight from the cruising altitude to a height of 300 m (1 000 ft) above a landing site where a landing can be made in accordance with CAT.POL.H.210. The flight path clears vertically, by at least 300 m (1 000 ft) or 600 m (2 000 ft) in areas of

mountainous terrain, all terrain and obstacles along the route within 9.3 km (5 NM) on either side of the intended track. Driftdown techniques may be used.

(3) When it is intended that the flight will be conducted in visual meteorological conditions (VMC) with the surface in sight, the flight path permits the helicopter to continue flight from the cruising altitude to a height of 300 m (1 000 ft) above a landing site where a landing can be made in accordance with CAT.POL.H.210, without flying at any time below the appropriate minimum flight altitude, obstacles within 900 m on either side of the route need to be considered.

(b) When showing compliance with paragraph (a)(2) or (a)(3):

(1) the critical engine is assumed to fail at the most critical point along the route;

(2) account is taken of the effects of winds on the flight path;

(3) fuel jettisoning is planned to take place only to an extent consistent with reaching the aerodrome/operating site with the required fuel reserves and using a safe procedure; and

(4) fuel jettisoning is not planned below 1 000 ft above terrain.

(c) The width margins of (a)(1) and (a)(2) shall be increased to 18.5 km (10 NM) if the navigational accuracy cannot be met for 95 % of the total flying time.

CAT.POL.H.220 Landing

(a) The landing mass of the helicopter at the estimated time of landing shall not exceed the maximum mass specified in the AFM for the procedure to be used.

(b) In the event of the critical engine failure being recognised at any point at or before the landing decision point (LDP), it is possible either to land and stop within the FATO, or to perform a balked landing and clear all obstacles in the flight path by a vertical margin of 10.7 m (35 ft). Only obstacles as specified in CAT.POL.H.110 have to be considered;

(c) In the event of the critical engine failure being recognised at any point at or after the LDP, it is possible to:

(1) clear all obstacles in the approach path; and

(2) land and stop within the FATO.

(d) When showing compliance with (a), (b) and (c) above, account shall be taken of the appropriate parameters of CAT.POL.H.105(c) for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome/operating site, or any alternate if required.

(e) That part of the landing from the LDP to touchdown, shall be conducted in sight of the surface.

CAT.POL.H.225 Helicopter operations to/from a public interest site

(a) For multi-turbine powered helicopters, with a MPSC of six or less, operating to/from public interest sites (PIS), which were established as aerodrome/operating sites before 1 July 2002 and located in a congested hostile environment, prior approval shall be obtained from the competent authority and the authority of the State in which it is intended to conduct such operations.

(b) Where the size of the PIS, or its obstacle environment, does not allow the helicopter to be operated in performance class 1, the approval referred to in (a) to conduct operations in performance class 2 without complying with CAT.POL.H.310(a)(2) or CAT.POL.H.325(a)(2), can be obtained, provided that:

(1) the operator complies with CAT.POL.H.305(b)(2) and (b)(3); and

(2) the helicopter mass does not exceed the maximum mass specified in the AFM for a climb gradient of 8% in still air at the appropriate take-off safety speed (V_{TOSS}) with the critical engine inoperative and the remaining engines operating at an appropriate power rating.

(c) Site-specific procedures shall be established in the operations manual to minimise the period during which there would be danger to helicopter occupants and persons on the surface in the event of an engine failure during take-off and landing at a PIS.

(d) The operations manual shall contain for each PIS: a diagram, or annotated photograph, showing the main aspects, the dimensions, the non-conformance with performance class 1, the main risks, and the contingency plan should an incident occur.

Chapter 3 – Performance class 2

CAT.POL.H.300 General

Helicopters operated in performance class 2 shall be certificated in Category A or equivalent.

CAT.POL.H.305 Operations without an assured safe forced landing capability

(a) Operations without an assured safe forced landing capability during the take-off and landing phases shall only be conducted if the operator has been granted the relevant approval by the competent authority.

(b) To obtain and maintain such approval the operator shall:

(1) Conduct a risk assessment, specifying:

(i) the type of helicopter; and

(ii) the type of operations.

(2) Implement the following set of conditions:

(i) attain and maintain the helicopter/engine modification standard defined by the manufacturer;

(ii) conduct the preventive maintenance actions recommended by the helicopter or engine manufacturer;

(iii) include take-off and landing procedures in the operations manual, where they do not already exist in the AFM;

(iv) specify training for flight crew; and

(v) provide a system for reporting to the manufacturer loss of power, engine shutdown or engine failure events.

(3) Implement a usage monitoring system.

CAT.POL.H.310 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum mass specified for a rate of climb of 150 ft/min at 300 m (1 000 ft) above the level of the aerodrome/operating site with the critical engine inoperative and the remaining engine(s) operating at an appropriate power rating.

(b) For operations other than those specified in CAT.POL.H.305, the take-off shall be conducted such that a safe forced landing can be executed until the point where safe continuation of the flight is possible.

(c) For operations in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305 in addition to the requirements of (a):

(1) the take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum mass specified in the AFM for an all engines operative out of ground effect (AEO OGE) hover in still air with all engines operating at an appropriate power rating; or

(2) for operations from a helideck:

(i) with a helicopter that has a maximum passenger seating configuration (MPSC) of more than 19; or

(ii) any helicopter operated from a helideck located in a hostile environment,

the take-off mass shall take into account: the procedure; deck-edge miss, and drop down appropriate to the height of the helideck - with the critical engine(s) inoperative and the remaining engines operating at an appropriate power rating.

(d) When showing compliance with (a), (b) and (c) above, account shall be taken of the appropriate parameters of CAT.POL.H.105(c) at the point of departure.

(e) That part of the take-off before the requirement of CAT.POL.H.315 is met shall be conducted in sight of the surface.

CAT.POL.H.315 Take-off flight path

From the defined point after take-off (DPATO) or, as an alternative, no later than 200 ft above the take-off surface, with the critical engine inoperative the requirements of CAT.POL.H.210(a)(1), (a)(2) and (b) shall be complied with.

CAT.POL.H.320 En-route - critical engine inoperative

The requirement of CAT.POL.H.215 shall be complied with.

CAT.POL.H.325 Landing

(a) The landing mass at the estimated time of landing shall not exceed the maximum mass specified for a rate of climb of 150 ft/min at 300 m (1 000 ft) above the level of the aerodrome/operating site with the critical engine inoperative and the remaining engine(s) operating at an appropriate power rating.

(b) If the critical engine fails at any point in the approach path:

(1) a balked landing can be carried out meeting the requirement of CAT.POL.H.315; or

(2) for operations other than those specified in CAT.POL.H.305 the helicopter can perform a safe-forced-landing.

(c) For operations in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305 in addition to the requirements of (a):

(1) the landing mass shall not exceed the maximum mass specified in the AFM for an all engines operative out of ground effect (AEO OGE) hover in still air with all engines operating at an appropriate power rating; or

(2) for operations to a helideck:

(i) with a helicopter that has an MPSC of more than 19; or

(ii) any helicopter operated to a helideck located in a hostile environment,

the landing mass shall take into account the procedure, and drop down appropriate to the height of the helideck - with the critical engine inoperative and the remaining engine(s) operating at an appropriate power rating.

(d) When showing compliance with (a), (b) and (c) above, account shall be taken of the appropriate parameters of CAT.POL.H.105 (c) at the destination aerodrome or any alternate, if required.

(e) That part of the landing after which the requirement of (b)(1) cannot be met shall be conducted in sight of the surface.

Chapter 4 – Performance class 3

CAT.POL.H.400 General

(a) Helicopters operated in performance class 3 shall be certified in either Category A, B or equivalent.

(b) Operations shall only be conducted in a non-hostile environment, except:

(1) when operating in accordance with CAT.POL.H.420; or

(2) for the take-off and landing phase, when operating in accordance with (c).

(c) Provided the operator has been granted a relevant approval by the competent authority in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305, operations may be conducted to/from an aerodrome/operating site located outside a congested hostile environment, without an assured safe forced landing capability:

 (1) during take-off, before reaching V_y (speed for best rate of climb) or 200 ft above the take-off surface; or

 (2) during landing, below 200 ft above the landing surface.

(d) Operations shall not be conducted:

 (1) out of sight of the surface;

 (2) at night;

 (3) when the ceiling is less than 600 ft; or

 (4) when the visibility is less than 800 m.

CAT.POL.H.405 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum take-off mass specified for a hover in ground effect with all engines operating at take-off power. If conditions are such that a hover in ground effect is not likely to be established, the take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum take-off mass specified for a hover out of ground effect with all engines operating at take-off power.

(b) Except as provided in CAT.POL.H.400(b), in the event of an engine failure, the helicopter shall be able to perform a safe forced landing.

CAT.POL.H.410 En-route

(a) The helicopter shall be able, with all engines operating within the maximum continuous power conditions, to continue along its intended route or to a planned diversion without flying at any point below the appropriate minimum flight altitude.

(b) Except as provided in CAT.POL.H.420, in the event of an engine failure, the helicopter shall be able to perform a safe forced landing.

CAT.POL.H.415 Landing

(a) The landing mass of the helicopter at the estimated time of landing shall not exceed the maximum landing mass specified for a hover in ground effect, with all engines operating at take-off power. If conditions are such that a hover in ground effect is not likely to be established, the landing mass shall not exceed the maximum landing mass specified for a hover out of ground effect with all engines operating at take-off power.

(b) Except as provided in CAT.POL.H.400(b), in the event of an engine failure, the helicopter shall be able to perform a safe forced landing.

CAT.POL.H.420 Helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area

(a) Turbine-powered helicopters with a MPSC of 6 or less shall only be operated over a non-congested hostile environment without a safe forced landing capability, if:

(1) conducted in mountainous or remote areas specified by the responsible authority for that area; and

(2) the operation is not conducted under a HEMS approval; and

(3) the operator has substantiated that helicopter limitations, or other justifiable considerations, preclude the use of the appropriate performance criteria; and

(4) the operator has demonstrated compliance with CAT.POL.H.305(b) and holds an approval from the competent authority and, if different, the authority of the State in which such operations are conducted.

(b) Such approval will exempt from compliance with:

(1) CAT.POL.H.410(b); and

(2) the provision for carriage of supplemental oxygen equipment for non-pressurised helicopter operations above 10 000 ft, provided the cabin altitude does not exceed 10 000 ft for a period in excess of 30 minutes and never exceeds 13 000 ft pressure altitude.

AR.OPS.xxx Approval of helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area

(a) The Member State shall specify those mountainous and remote areas where helicopter operations may be conducted without an assured safe forced landing capability, as described in CAT.POL.H.420.

(b) Before issuing the approval referred to in CAT.POL.H.420 the competent authority and, if different, the authority of the State in which such operations will be conducted shall have considered the operator’s technical and economic justification for the operation.

Section 5 - Mass and balance

Chapter 1 – Motor-powered aircraft

CAT.POL.MAB.100 Mass and balance, loading

(a) During any phase of operation, the loading, mass and centre of gravity of the aircraft shall comply with the limitations specified in the aircraft flight manual, or the operations manual if more restrictive.

(b) The operator shall establish the mass and the centre of gravity of any aircraft by actual weighing prior to initial entry into service and thereafter at intervals of 4 years if individual aircraft masses are used or9 years if fleet masses are used. The accumulated effects of modifications and repairs on the mass and balance shall be accounted for and properly documented. Aircraft shall be reweighed if the effect of modifications on the mass and balance is not accurately known.

(c) The weighing shall be accomplished by the manufacturer of the aircraft or by an approved maintenance organisation.

(d) The operator shall determine the mass of all operating items and crew members included in the aircraft dry operating mass by weighing or by using standard masses. The influence of their position on the aircraft centre of gravity shall be determined.

(e) The operator shall establish the mass of the traffic load, including any ballast, by actual weighing or by determining the mass of the traffic load in accordance with standard passenger and baggage masses.

(f) In addition to standard masses for passengers and checked baggage, the operator can use standard masses for other load items, if it demonstrates to the competent authority that these items have the same weight or their weight is within specified tolerances.

(g) An operator shall determine the mass of the fuel load by using the actual density or, if not known, the density calculated in accordance with a method specified in the operations manual.

(h) The operator shall ensure that the loading of

(1) its aircraft is performed under the supervision of qualified personnel; and

(2) traffic load is consistent with the data used for the calculation of the aircraft mass and balance.

(i) The operator shall comply with additional structural limits such as the floor strength limitations, the maximum load per running metre, the maximum mass per cargo compartment and the maximum seating limit. For helicopters, in addition, the operator shall take account of in-flight changes in loading.

(j) The operator shall specify, in the operations manual, the principles and methods involved in the loading and in the mass and balance system that meet the requirements above. This system shall cover all types of intended operations.

CAT.POL.MAB.105 Mass and balance data and documentation

(a) The operator shall establish mass and balance data and produce mass and balance documentation prior to each flight specifying the load and its distribution. The mass and balance documentation shall enable the commander to determine that the load and its distribution is such that the mass and balance limits of the aircraft are not exceeded. The mass and balance documentation shall contain the following information:

(1) Aircraft registration and type;

(2) Flight identification number and date;

(3) Name of the commander;

(4) Name of the person who prepared the document;

(5) Dry operating mass and the corresponding centre of gravity (CG) of the aircraft;

(i) For Performance Class B aeroplanes and for helicopters, the CG position may not need to be on the mass and balance documentation, if, for example, the load distribution is in accordance with a pre-calculated balance table or if it can be shown that for the planned operations a correct balance can be ensured, whatever the real load is.

(6) Mass of the fuel at take-off and the mass of trip fuel;

(7) Mass of consumables other than fuel, if applicable;

(8) Load components including passengers, baggage, freight and ballast;

(9) Take-off Mass, Landing Mass and Zero Fuel Mass;

(10) Applicable aircraft CG positions; and

(12) The limiting mass and CG values.

The information above shall be available in flight planning documents or mass and balance systems. Where mass and balance data and documentation is generated by a computerised mass and balance system, the operator shall verify the integrity of the output data.

(b) The operator shall specify procedures for last minute changes to the load to ensure that:

(1) Any last minute change after the completion of the mass and balance documentation is brought to the attention of the commander and entered in the flight planning documents containing the mass and balance documentation;

(2) The maximum last minute change allowed in passenger numbers or hold load is specified.

(3) New mass and balance documentation is prepared if this maximum number is exceeded.

(c) The operator shall obtain approval of the competent authority if it wishes to use an onboard integrated mass and balance computer system or a stand-alone computerised mass and balance system as a primary source for dispatch. The operator shall demonstrate the accuracy and reliability of that system.

Subpart D – Instrument, data, equipment

Section 1 – Aeroplanes

CAT.IDE.A.100 Instruments and equipment – general

(a) Equipment and instruments required by this Part shall be approved in accordance with Part-21, with exception of the following:

(1) spare fuses;

(2) electric torches;

(3) an accurate time piece;

(4) chart holder;

(5) first-aid kits;

(6) emergency medical kit;

(7) megaphones;

(8) survival and signalling equipment;

(9) sea anchors and equipment for mooring; and

(10) child restraint devices.

(b) Instruments and equipment not required by this Part that do not need to be approved in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003, but are carried on a flight, shall comply with the following:

(1) the information provided by these instruments, equipment or accessories shall not be used by the flight crew to comply with Annex I to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 or CAT.IDE.A.330, CAT.IDE.A.335, CAT.IDE.A.340 and CAT.IDE.A.34; and

(2) the instruments and equipment shall not affect the airworthiness of the aeroplane, even in the case of failures or malfunction.

(c) If equipment is to be used by one flight crew member at his/her station during flight, it must be readily operable from that station. When a single item of equipment is required to be operated by more than one flight crew member it must be installed so that the equipment is readily operable from any station at which the equipment is required to be operated.

(d) Those instruments that are used by any flight crew member shall be so arranged as to permit the flight crew member to see the indications readily from his/her station, with the minimum practicable deviation from the position and line of vision that he/she normally assumes when looking forward along the flight path.

(e) All required emergency equipment shall be easily accessible for immediate use.

CAT.IDE.A.105 Minimum equipment for flight

(a) A flight shall not be commenced when any of the aeroplane's instruments, items of equipment or functions required by this Part are inoperative, unless:

(1) the aeroplane is operated in accordance with the operator's minimum equipment list (MEL); or

(2) the aeroplane is approved by the competent authority to be operated within the constraints of the master minimum equipment list (MMEL).

CAT.IDE.A.110 Spare electrical fuses

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with spare electrical fuses, of the ratings required for complete circuit protection, for replacement of those fuses that can be replaced in flight.

(b) The number of spare fuses that are required to be carried shall be the higher of:

(1) 10 % of the number of fuses of each rating; or

(2) three fuses for each rating.

CAT.IDE.A.115 Operating lights

(a) Aeroplanes operated by day shall be equipped with:

(1) an anti-collision light system;

(2) lighting supplied from the aeroplane's electrical system to provide adequate illumination for all instruments and equipment essential to the safe operation of the aeroplane;

(3) lighting supplied from the aeroplane's electrical system to provide illumination in all passenger compartments; and

(4) an electric torch for each required crew member readily accessible to crew members when seated at their designated stations.

(b) Aeroplanes operated by night shall in addition be equipped with:

(1) navigation/position lights;

(2) two landing lights or a single light having two separately energised filaments; and

(3) lights to conform with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea if the aircraft is amphibious.

CAT.IDE.A.120 Equipment to clear windshield

Aeroplanes with a maximum certificated take-off mass (MCTOM) of more than 5 700 kg shall be equipped at each pilot station with a means to maintain clear a portion of the windshield during precipitation.

CAT.IDE.A.125 Day VFR operations – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

Aeroplanes operated by day under visual flight rules (VFR) shall be equipped with the following equipment, available at the pilot's station:

(a) a means of measuring and displaying:

  (1) magnetic direction;

  (2) time in hours, minutes, and seconds;

  (3) pressure altitude;

  (4) indicated airspeed;

  (5) vertical speed;

  (6) turn and slip;

  (7) attitude; and

  (8) direction;

(b) a means of displaying:

  (1) outside air temperature;

  (2) Mach number whenever speed limitations are expressed in terms of Mach number; and

  (3) when power is not adequately supplied to the required flight instruments.

(c) Whenever two pilots are required for the operation, an additional separate means of displaying the following shall be available for the second pilot:

  (1) pressure altitude;

  (2) indicated airspeed,

  (3) vertical speed;

  (4) turn and slip;

  (5) attitude; and

  (6) direction.

(d) A means for preventing malfunction of the airspeed indicating systems due to condensation or icing shall be available for:

  (1) aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or a maximum passenger seating configuration (MPSC) of more than nine; and

  (2) aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 April 1999.

(e) Single engine aeroplanes, first issued with an individual C of A before 22 May 1995, are exempted from the requirements of subparagraphs (a)(6),(a)(7),(a)(8) and (b)(1) by the competent authority if the compliance would require retrofitting.

CAT.IDE.A.130 IFR or night operations – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

Aeroplanes operated under VFR at night or under instrument flight rules (IFR) shall be equipped with the following equipment, available at the pilot's station:

(a) a means of measuring and displaying:

(1) magnetic direction;

(2) time in hours, minutes and seconds;

(3) indicated airspeed;

(4) vertical speed;

(5) turn and slip, or in the case of aeroplanes equipped with a standby means of measuring and displaying attitude, slip;

(6) attitude; and

(7) stabilised direction;

(b) two means of measuring and displaying pressure altitude;

(c) a means of displaying:

(1) outside air temperature;

(2) Mach number whenever speed limitations are expressed in terms of Mach number; and

(3) when power is not adequately supplied to the required flight instruments;

(d) a means for preventing malfunction of the airspeed indicating systems required in (a)(3) and (h)(2)due to condensation or icing;

(e) a means of indicating and annunciating to the flight crew the failure of the means required in (d) above for aeroplanes:

(1) issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 April 1998; or

(2) issued with an individual C of A before 1 April 1998 with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg, and with an MPSC of more than nine;

(f) except for propeller-driven aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less, two independent static pressure systems;

(g) one static pressure system and one alternate source of static pressure for propeller-driven aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less;

(h) whenever two pilots are required for the operation, a separate means of displaying for the second pilot:

(1) pressure altitude,

(2) indicated airspeed,

(3) vertical speed;

(4) turn and slip;

   (5) attitude; and

   (6) stabilised direction;

(i) a standby means of measuring and displaying attitude for aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or an MPSC of more than nine that:

   (1) is powered continuously during normal operation and, after a total failure of the normal electrical generating system is powered from a source independent from the normal electrical generating system;

   (2) provides reliable operation for a minimum of 30 minutes after total failure of the normal electrical generating system, taking into account other loads on the emergency power supply and operational procedures;

   (3) operates independently of any other attitude indicating system;

   (4) is operative automatically after total failure of the normal electrical generating system;

   (5) is appropriately illuminated during all phases of operation, except for aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less, already registered in a Member State on 1 April 1995 and equipped with a standby attitude indicator in the left-hand instrument panel;

   (6) it must be clearly evident to the flight crew when the standby attitude indicator is being operated by emergency power; and

   (7) where the standby attitude indicator has its own dedicated power supply there shall be an associated indication, either on the instrument or on the instrument panel, when this supply is in use.

(j) a chart holder in an easily readable position that can be illuminated for night operations.

CAT.IDE.A.135 Additional equipment for single pilot operation under IFR

Aeroplanes operated under IFR with a single pilot shall be equipped with an autopilot with at least altitude hold and heading mode.

CAT.IDE.A.140 Altitude alerting system

(a) Except in the case of aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or less and with an MPSC of more than nine and first issued with an individual C of A before 1 April 1972, aeroplanes shall be equipped with an altitude alerting system capable of alerting the flight crew when approaching, or deviating from, a pre-selected altitude, in the case of:

   (1) turbine-powered aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or having an MPSC of more than nine seats; or

   (2) aeroplanes powered by turbo-jet engines.

CAT.IDE.A.150 Terrain awareness warning System (TAWS)

(a) Turbine-powered aeroplanes having an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or an MPSC of more than nine shall be equipped with a TAWS that meets the requirements for Class A equipment as specified in the applicable European technical standards order (ETSO) issued by the Agency.

(b) Reciprocating-engine-powered aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or an MPSC of more than nine shall be equipped with a TAWS that meets the requirement for Class B equipment as specified in the applicable ETSO issued by the Agency.

CAT.IDE.A.155 Airborne Collision Avoidance System (ACAS)

TURBINE-POWERED AEROPLANES WITH A MAXIMUM CERTIFIED TAKE-OFF MASS OF MORE THAN 5 700 KG OR A MAXIMUM PASSENGER SEATING CONFIGURATION OF MORE THAN 19 SHALL BE EQUIPPED WITH ACAS II.CAT.IDE.A.160 AIRBORNE WEATHER DETECTING EQUIPMENT

The following shall be equipped with airborne weather detecting equipment when operated at night or in instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) in areas where thunderstorms or other potentially hazardous weather conditions, regarded as detectable with airborne weather detecting equipment, may be expected to exist along the route:

(a) pressurised aeroplanes,

(b) non-pressurised aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg; and

(c) non-pressurised aeroplanes with an MPSC of more than nine.

CAT.IDE.A.165 Additional equipment for operations in icing conditions at night

(a) Aeroplanes operated in expected or actual icing conditions at night shall be equipped with a means to illuminate or detect the formation of ice.

(b) The means to illuminate the formation of ice shall not cause glare or reflection that would handicap crew members in the performance of their duties.

CAT.IDE.A.170 Flight crew interphone system

Aeroplanes operated by more than one flight crew member shall be equipped with a flight crew interphone system, including headsets and microphones for use by all flight crew members.

CAT.IDE.A.175 Crew member interphone system

Aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than15 000 kg, or with an MPSC of more than 19 shall be equipped with a crew member interphone system except for aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A before 1 April 1965 and already registered in a Member State on 1April 1995.

CAT.IDE.A.180 Public address system

Aeroplanes with an MPSC of more than 19 shall be equipped with a public address system.

CAT.IDE.A.185 Cockpit voice recorder

(a) The following aeroplanes shall be equipped with a cockpit voice recorder (CVR):

(1) aeroplanes with an MCTOM more than 5 700 kg; and

(2) multi-engined turbine-powered aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less, and with an MPSC of more than nine and first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 January 1990.

(b) The CVR shall be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least:

(1) the preceding 2hours in the case of aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) when the individual C of A has been issued on or after 1 April 1998;

(2) the preceding 30 minutes for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) when the individual C of A has been issued before 1 April 1998; or

(3) the preceding 30 minutes, in the case of aeroplanes referred to in (a)(2).

(c) The CVR shall record with reference to a timescale:

(1) voice communications transmitted from or received on the flight crew compartment per radio;

(2) flight crew members' voice communications using the interphone system and the public address system, if installed;

(3) the aural environment of the flight crew compartment, including, where practicable, without interruption, the audio signals received from each crew microphone; and

(4) voice or audio signals identifying navigation or approach aids introduced into a headset or speaker.

(d) The CVR shall automatically start to record prior to the aeroplane being capable of moving under its own power and shall stop automatically after the aeroplane is incapable of moving under its own power.

(e) Depending on the availability of electrical power, the CVR shall start to record as early as possible during the cockpit checks, prior to the flight until the cockpit checks immediately following engine shutdown at the end of the flight, in the case of:

(1) aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1), in the case of individual C of A issued after 1 April 1998; or

(2) aeroplanes referred to in (a)(2).

(f) The CVR shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorders

(a) The following aeroplanes shall be equipped with a flight data recorder (FDR) that uses a digital method of recording and storing data and for which a method of readily retrieving that data from the storage medium is available:

(1) aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 June 1990;

(2) turbine-engined aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg first issued with an individual C of A before 1 June 1990; and

(3) multi-engined turbine-powered aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less, and with an MPSC of more than nine, and first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 April 1998.

(b) The FDR shall record:

(1) time, altitude, airspeed, normal acceleration and heading and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 25 hours for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(2) with an MCTOM of less than 27 000;

(2) the parameters required to determine accurately the aeroplane flight path, speed, attitude, engine power and configuration of lift and drag devices and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 25 hours, for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) with an MCTOM of under 27 000 kg and first issued with an individual C of A before 1 January 2016;

(3) the parameters required to determine accurately the aeroplane flight path, speed, attitude, engine power, configuration and operation and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 25 hours, for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) and (a)(2) with an MCTOM of over 27 000 kg; and first issued with an individual C of A before 1 January 2016;

(4) the parameters required to determine accurately the aeroplane flight path, speed, attitude, engine power and configuration of lift and drag devices and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 10 hours, in the case of aeroplanes referred to in (a)(3) and first issued with an individual C of A before 1 January 2016; or

(5) the parameters required to determine accurately the aeroplane flight path, speed, attitude, engine power, configuration and operation and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 25 hours, for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) and (a)(3) and first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 January 2016.

(c) Data shall be obtained from aeroplane sources that enable accurate correlation with information displayed to the flight crew.

(d) The FDR shall automatically start to record the data prior to the aeroplane being capable of moving under its own power and shall stop automatically after the aeroplane is incapable of moving under its own power.

(e) The FDR shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

CAT.IDE.A.195 Data link recording

(a) Aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A on or after 8 April 2014 that have the capability to operate data link communications and are required to be equipped with a CVR, shall record on a recorder, where applicable:

   (1) data link communication messages related to air traffic services communications to and from the aeroplane;

   (2) information that enables correlation to any associated records related to data link communications and stored separately from the aeroplane; and

   (3) information on the time and priority of data link communications messages, taking into account the system's architecture.

(b) The recorder shall use a digital method of recording and storing data and information and a method for retrieving that data. The recording method shall be such as to allow the data to match the data recorded on the ground.

(c) The recorder shall be capable of retaining data recorded for at least the same duration as set out for CVRs in CAT.IDE.A.185.

(d) The recorder shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

(e) The recorder shall start to record automatically prior to the aeroplane moving under its own power and shall continue to record until the termination of the flight when the aeroplane is no longer capable of moving under its own power.

(f) Depending on the availability of electrical power, the recorder shall start to record as early as possible during the cockpit checks prior to engine start at the beginning of the flight until the cockpit checks immediately following engine shutdown at the end of the flight.

CAT.IDE.A.200 Combination Recorder

Compliance with CVR and FDR requirements may be achieved by:

   (1) one flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder in the case of aeroplanes required to be equipped with a CVR or an FDR;

   (2) one flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder in the case of aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less and required to be equipped with a CVR and an FDR; or

   (3) two flight data and cockpit voice combination recorders in the case of aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg and required to be equipped with a CVR and an FDR.

CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, harnesses and child restraint devices

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with:

   (1) a seat or berth for each person on board older than 24 months;

   (2) seats for cabin crew members;

   (3) either:

(i) a seat belt on each passenger seat and restraining belts for each berth; or

(ii) a seat belt with upper torso restraint system on each passenger seat in the case of aeroplanes with an MCTOM less than 5 700 kg and with an MPSC of less than nine after 8 April 2015;

(4) a child restraint device for each person on board younger than 24 months;

(5) a safety harness incorporating a device that will automatically restrain the occupant's torso in the event of rapid deceleration:

(i) on each flight crew seat and for any seat alongside a pilot's seat;

(ii) on each observer's seat located in the cockpit; and

(6) a safety harness on the seats for the minimum required cabin crew.

(b) Safety harnesses shall:

(1) include two shoulder straps and a seat belt which may be used independently; and

(2) have a single point release.

CAT.IDE.A.210 Fasten seat belt and no smoking signs

Aeroplanes in which all passenger seats are not visible from the flight crew seat(s) shall be equipped with a means of indicating to all passengers and cabin crew when seat belts shall be fastened and when smoking is not allowed.

CAT.IDE.A.215 Internal doors and curtains

(a) aeroplanes shall be equipped with:

(1) in the case of aeroplanes with an MPSC of more than 19, a door between the passenger compartment and the flight crew compartment, with a placard indicating "crew only" and a locking means to prevent passengers from opening it without the permission of a member of the flight crew;

(2) a readily accessible means for opening each door that separates a passenger compartment from another compartment that has emergency exits;

(3) a means for securing in open position any doorway or curtain separating the passenger cabin from other areas that need to be accessed to reach any required emergency exit from any passenger seat;

(4) a placard on each internal door or adjacent to a curtain that is the means of access to a passenger emergency exit, to indicate that it must be secured open during take-off and landing; and

(5) a means for any member of the crew to unlock any door that is normally accessible to passengers and that can be locked by passengers.

CAT.IDE.A.220 First-aid kit

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with first-aid kits, in accordance with Table 1.

Table 1: Number of first-aid kits required

Number of passenger seats installed	Number of first-aid kits required
0 - 100	1
101-200	2
201-300	3
301 - 400	4
401-500	5
501 or more	6

(b) First-aid kits shall be:

(1) readily accessible for use;

(2) carried in a way that prevents unauthorised access; and

(3) kept up-to-date.

CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit

(a) Aeroplanes with an MPSC of more than 30 shall be equipped with an emergency medical kit when any point on the planned route is more than 60 minutes' flying time at normal cruising speed from an aerodrome at which qualified medical assistance could be expected to be available.

(b) The commander shall ensure that drugs are only administered by appropriately qualified persons.

(c) The emergency medical kit referred to in (a) above shall be:

(1) dust and moisture proof;

(2) carried in a way that prevents unauthorised access; and

(3) kept up-to-date.

CAT.IDE.A.230 First-aid oxygen

(a) Pressurised aeroplanes operated at pressure altitudes above 25 000 ft, in the case of operations for which a cabin crew member is required, shall be equipped with a supply of undiluted oxygen for passengers who, for physiological reasons, might require oxygen following a cabin depressurisation.

(b) The oxygen supply referred to in (a) above shall be calculated using an average flow rate of at least 3 litres standard temperature pressure dry (STPD)/minute/person. This oxygen supply shall be sufficient for the remainder of the flight after cabin depressurisation when the cabin altitude exceeds 8 000 ft but does not exceed 15 000 ft, for at least 2 % of the passengers carried, but in no case for less than one person.

(c) There shall be a sufficient number of dispensing units, but in no case less than two, with a means for cabin crew to use the supply.

(d) The first-aid oxygen equipment shall be capable of generating a mass flow to each user of at least 4litres per minute, STPD.

CAT.IDE.A.235 Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes

(a) Pressurised aeroplanes operated at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft shall be equipped with supplemental oxygen equipment, capable of storing and dispensing the oxygen supplies in accordance with Table 1.

(b) Pressurised aeroplanes operated at pressure altitudes above 25 000 ft shall be equipped with:

  (1) quick donning types of masks for flight crew members;

  (2) sufficient spare outlets and masks, or portable oxygen units with masks distributed evenly throughout the cabin, to ensure immediate availability of oxygen for use by each required cabin crew member;

  (3) an oxygen dispensing unit connected to oxygen supply terminals immediately available to each cabin crew member, additional crew member and occupants of passenger seats, wherever seated; and

  (4) a device to provide a warning indication to the flight crew of any loss of pressurisation.

(c) In the case of pressurised aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A after 8 November 1998 and operated at pressure altitudes above 25 000 ft, or operated at pressure altitudes at, or below 25 000 ft under conditions that would not allow them to descend safely to 13 000 ft within 4 minutes, the individual oxygen dispensing units referred to in (b)(3) above shall be automatically deployable.

(d) The total number of dispensing units and outlets referred to in (b)(3) and (c) above shall exceed the number of seats by at least 10 %. The extra units shall be evenly distributed throughout the cabin.

(e) Notwithstanding (a), the oxygen supply requirements for cabin crew member(s), additional crew member(s) and passenger(s), in the case of aeroplanes not certificated to fly at altitudes above 25 000 ft, may be reduced to the entire flight time between 10 000 ft and 13 000 ft cabin pressure altitudes for all required cabin crew members and for at least 10 % of the passengers if, at all points along the route to be flown, the aeroplane is able to descend safely within 4 minutes to a cabin pressure altitude of 13 000 ft.

(f) The required minimum supply in Table 1, row 1 item (b)(1) and row 2, shall cover the quantity of oxygen necessary for a constant rate of descent from the aeroplane’s maximum certificated operating altitude to 10 000 ft in 10 minutes and followed by 20 minutes at 10 000 ft.

(g) The required minimum supply in Table 1,row 1 item 1(b)(2), shall cover the quantity of oxygen necessary for a constant rate of descent from the aeroplane’s maximum certificated operating altitude to 10 000 ft in 10 minutes followed by 110 minutes at 10 000 ft.

(h) The required minimum supply in Table 1, row 3, shall cover the quantity of oxygen necessary for a constant rate of descent from the aeroplane’s maximum certified operating altitude to 15 000 ft in 10 minutes.

Table 1: Oxygen minimum requirements for pressurised aeroplanes

Supply for:	**Duration and cabin pressure altitude**
1. Occupants of flight crew compartment seats on flight crew compartment duty	(a) The entire flight time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 13 000 ft. (b) The remainder of the flight time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 10 000 ft but does not exceed 13 000 ft, after the initial 30 minutes at these altitudes, but in no case less than: (1) 30 minutes’ supply for aeroplanes certificated to fly at altitudes not exceeding 25 000 ft; and (2) 2 hours’ supply for aeroplanes certificated to fly at altitudes of more than 25 000 ft.
2. Required cabin crew members	(a) The entire flight time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 13 000 ft, but not less than 30 minutes’ supply. (b) The remainder of the flight time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 10 000 ft but does not exceed 13 000 ft, after the initial 30 minutes at these altitudes.
3. 100 % of passengers *	The entire flight time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 15 000 ft, but in no case less than 10 minutes’ supply.
4. 30 % of passengers *	The entire flight time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 14 000 ft but does not exceed 15 000 ft.
5. 10 % of passengers *	The remainder of the flight time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 10 000 ft but does not exceed 14 000 ft, after the initial 30 minutes at these altitudes.

* Passenger numbers in Table 1 refer to passengers actually carried on board, including persons younger than 24 months.

CAT.IDE.A.240 Supplemental oxygen – non-pressurised aeroplanes

(a) Non-pressurised aeroplanes operated at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft shall be equipped with supplemental oxygen equipment, capable of storing and dispensing the oxygen supplies in accordance with Table 1

Table 1: Oxygen minimum requirements for non-pressurised aeroplanes

Supply for:	**Duration and cabin pressure altitude**
1. Occupants of flight crew compartment seats on flight crew compartment duty and crew members assisting flight crew in their duties	The entire flight time at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft.
2. Required cabin crew members	The entire flight time at pressure altitudes above 13 000ft and for any period exceeding 30 minutes at pressure altitudes between above 10 000 ft and but not exceeding 13 000 ft.
3. Additional crew members and 100 % of passengers *	The entire flight time at pressure altitudes above 13 000ft.
4. 10 % of passengers *	The entire flight time after 30 minutes at pressure altitudes greater than 10 000 ft but not exceeding 13 000ft.

(b) Passenger numbers in Table 1 refer to passengers actually carried on board, including persons younger than 24 months.

CAT.IDE.A.245 Crew protective breathing equipment

(a) Pressurised aeroplanes or unpressurised aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or having an MPSC of more than 19 seats shall be equipped with protective breathing equipment (PBE) to protect the eyes, nose and mouth and to provide for a period of at least 15 minutes:

(1) oxygen for each flight crew member on duty in the flight crew compartment;

(2) breathing gas for each required cabin crew member, adjacent to their duty station; and

(3) breathing gas from a portable PBE for one member of the flight crew, adjacent to their duty station, in the case of aeroplanes operated with a flight crew of more than one and no cabin crew member.

(b) A PBE intended for flight crew use shall be installed in the flight crew compartment and be accessible for immediate use by each required flight crew member at their assigned duty station.

(c) A PBE intended for cabin crew use shall be installed adjacent to each required cabin crew member duty station.

(d) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with an additional portable PBE installed adjacent to the hand fire extinguisher referred to in CAT.IDE.A.250, or adjacent to the entrance of the cargo compartment, in case the hand fire extinguisher installed inside a cargo compartment.

(e) A PBE while in use shall not prevent the use of the means of communication referred to inCAT.IDE.A.170, CAT.IDE.A.175, CAT.IDE.A.270 and CAT.IDE.A.330.

CAT.IDE.A.250 Hand fire extinguishers

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with at least one hand fire extinguisher in the flight crew compartment.

(b) At least one hand fire extinguisher shall be located in, or readily accessible for use in, each galley not located on the main passenger deck.

(c) At least one hand fire extinguisher shall be available for use in each class A or class B cargo or baggage compartment and in each class E cargo compartment that is accessible to crew members in flight;

(d) The type and quantity of extinguishing agent for the required fire extinguishers shall be suitable for the type of fire likely to occur in the compartment where the extinguisher is intended to be used and to minimise the hazard of toxic gas concentration in compartments occupied by persons.

(e) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with at least a number of hand fire extinguishers in accordance with Table 1, conveniently located to provide adequate availability for use in each passenger.

Table 1: Number of hand fire extinguishers

Maximum passenger seating configuration	Number of extinguishers
7 -30	1
31 -60	2
61 -200	3
201 -300	4
301 -400	5
401 -500	6
501 -600	7
601 or more	8

CAT.IDE.A.255 Crash axe and crowbar

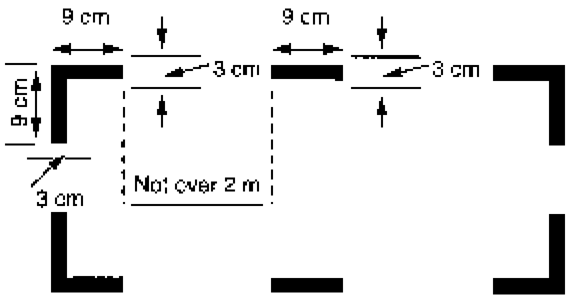
(a) Aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 5 700 kg, or with an MPSC of more than nine shall be equipped with at least one crash axe or crowbar located in the flight crew compartment.

(b) In the case of aeroplanes with an MPSC of more than 200, an additional crash axe or crowbar shall be installed in or near the rearmost galley area.

CAT.IDE.A.260 Marking of break-in points

If areas of the aeroplane's fuselage suitable for break-in by rescue crews in an emergency are marked, such areas shall be marked as shown in Figure 1.

Figure 1: Marking of break-in points



CAT.IDE.A.265 Means for emergency evacuation

(a) Aeroplanes with passenger emergency exit sill heights of more than 1.83 metres (6 ft) above the ground shall be equipped at each of those exits with a means to enable passengers and crew to reach the ground safely in an emergency.

(b) Notwithstanding (a) above, such means are not required at overwing exits if the designated place on the aeroplane structure at which the escape route terminates is less than 1.83 metres (6 ft) from the ground with the aeroplane on the ground, the landing gear extended, and the flaps in the take off or landing position, whichever flap position is higher from the ground.

(c) Aeroplanes required to have a separate emergency exit for the flight crew for which the lowest point of the emergency exit is more than 1.83 metres (6 ft) above the ground shall have a means to assist all flight crew members in descending to reach the ground safely in an emergency.

(d) The heights referred to in (a) and (c) above shall be measured:

(1) with the landing gear extended; and

(2) after the collapse of, or failure to extend of, one or more legs of the landing gear, in the case of aeroplanes with a type certificate issued after 31 March 2000.

CAT.IDE.A.270 Megaphones

Aeroplanes with an MPSC of more than 60 and carrying at least one passenger shall be equipped with portable battery-powered megaphones readily accessible for use by crew members during an emergency evacuation, in accordance with Table 1.

Table 1:Number of megaphones

Maximum passenger seating configuration	**Number of Megaphones**
61 to 99	1
100 or more	2
more than one passenger deck, in all cases when more than 60	1

CAT.IDE.A.275 Emergency lighting and marking

(a) Aeroplanes with an MPSC of more than nine shall be equipped with an emergency lighting system having an independent power supply to facilitate the evacuation of the aeroplane.

(b) In the case of aeroplanes with an MPSC of more than 19, the emergency lighting system, referred to in (a) above, shall include:

(1) sources of general cabin illumination;

(2) internal lighting in floor level emergency exit areas;

(3) illuminated emergency exit marking and locating signs;

(4) in the case of aeroplanes for which the application for the type certificate or equivalent was filed before 1 May 1972, when operated by night, exterior emergency lighting at all overwing exits, and at exits where descent assist means are required;

(5) in the case of aeroplanes for which the application for the type certificate or equivalent was filed after30April 1972, when operated by night, exterior emergency lighting at all passenger emergency exits; and

(6) in the case of aeroplanes for which the type certificate was first issued on or after 31 December 1957, floor proximity emergency escape path marking system(s) in the passenger compartments.

(c) In the case of aeroplanes with an MPSC of 19 or less and type certified on the basis of the Agency's airworthiness codes, the emergency lighting system, referred to in (a) above, shall include the equipment referred to in (b)(1), to (3) above.

(d) In the case of aeroplanes with an MPSC of 19 or less that are not certified on the basis of the Agency’s airworthiness codes, the emergency lighting system, referred to in (a) above, shall include the equipment referred to in (b)(1).

(e) Aeroplanes with an MPSC of nine or less, operated by night, shall be equipped with a source of general cabin illumination to facilitate the evacuation of the aeroplane

CAT.IDE.A.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

(a) Aeroplanes with an MPSC of more than 19 shall be equipped with at least:

(1) two ELTs, one of which shall be automatic, in the case of aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A after 1 July 2008; or

(2) one automatic ELT or two ELTs of any type, in the case of aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A on or before 1 July 2008.

(b) Aeroplanes with an MPSC of 19 or less shall be equipped with at least:

(1) one automatic ELT, in the case of aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A after 1 July 2008; or

(2) one ELT of any type, in the case of aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A on or before 1 July 2008.

(c) An ELT shall be capable of transmitting simultaneously on 121.5 MHz and 406 MHz.

CAT.IDE.A.285 Flight over water

(a) Land aeroplanes operated over water at a distance of more than 50 NM from the shore or taking off or landing at an aerodrome where the take-off or approach path is so disposed over water that there would be a likelihood of a ditching, and seaplanes operated overwater, shall be equipped with a life-jacket for each person on board or equivalent flotation device for each person on board younger than 24 months, stowed in a position that is readily accessible from the seat or berth of the person for whose use it is provided.

(b) Each life-jacket or equivalent individual flotation device shall be equipped with a means of electric illumination for the purpose of facilitating the location of persons.

(c) Seaplanes operated over water shall be equipped with:

(1) a sea anchor and other equipment necessary to facilitate mooring, anchoring or manoeuvring the aircraft on water, appropriate to its size, weight and handling characteristics; and

(2) equipment for making the sound signals as prescribed in the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, where applicable.

(d) Aeroplanes operated over water at a distance away from land suitable for making an emergency landing, greater than that corresponding to:

(1) 120 minutes at cruising speed or 400 NM, whichever is the lesser, in the case of aeroplanes capable of continuing the flight to an aerodrome with the critical engine(s) becoming inoperative at any point along the route or planned diversions; or

(2) for all other aeroplanes, 30 minutes at cruising speed or 100 NM, whichever is the lesser, shall be equipped with:

- life-rafts in sufficient numbers to carry all persons on board, stowed so as to facilitate their ready use in emergency, and being of sufficient size to accommodate all the survivors in the event of a loss of one raft of the largest rated capacity;
- a survivor locator light in each life-raft;
- life-saving equipment to provides the means for sustaining life, as appropriate for the flight to be undertaken; and
- at least two survival emergency locator transmitters (ELT(S)).

CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment

(a) Aeroplanes operated over areas which have been designated by a State as areas where search and rescue would be especially difficult shall be equipped with:

(1) signalling equipment to make the distress signals;

(2) at least one ELT (S); and

(3) additional survival equipment for the route to be flown taking account of the number of persons on board.

(b) The additional survival equipment specified in (a)(3) does not need to be carried when the aeroplane:

(1) remains within a distance from an area where search and rescue is not especially difficult corresponding to:

(i) 120 minutes at one engine inoperative (OEI) cruising speed for aeroplanes capable of continuing the flight to an aerodrome with the critical engine(s) becoming inoperative at any point along the route or planned diversion routes; or

(ii) 30 minutes at cruising speed for all other aeroplanes, or

(2) remains within a distance no greater than that corresponding to 90 minutes at cruising speed from an area suitable for making an emergency landing, for aeroplanes certified in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003.

CAT.IDE.A.325 Headset

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with a headset with a boom or throat microphone or equivalent for each flight crew member on flight crew compartment duty.

(b) Aeroplanes operated under IFR or at night shall be equipped with a transmit button on the manual pitch and roll control for each required flight crew member.

CAT.IDE.A.330 Radio equipment

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with radio communication equipment required by applicable rules of the air or airspace requirements.

(b) The radio communication equipment shall provide for communication on the aeronautical emergency frequency 121.5 MHz.

CAT.IDE.A.335 Audio selector panel

Aeroplanes operated under IFR shall be equipped with an audio selector panel operable from each required flight crew member station.

CAT.IDE.A.340 Radio equipment for operations under VFR over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks

Aeroplanes operated under VFR over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks shall be equipped with radio communication equipment necessary under normal radio propagation conditions to fulfil the following:

(a) communicate with appropriate ground stations;

(b) communicate with appropriate air traffic control (ATC) facilities from any point in controlled airspace within which flights are intended; and

(c) receive meteorological information.

CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR, or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

(a) Aeroplanes operated under IFR or under VFR over routes that cannot be navigated by reference to visual landmarks shall be equipped with radio communication and navigation equipment in accordance with the applicable airspace requirements.

(b) Radio communication equipment shall include at least two independent radio communication systems necessary under normal operating conditions to communicate with an appropriate ground station from any point on the route including diversions.

(c) Notwithstanding (b), aeroplanes operated for short haul operations in the North Atlantic minimum navigation performance specifications (NAT MNPS) airspace and not crossing the North Atlantic shall be equipped with at least one long range communication system (high frequency/HF-system), in case alternative communication procedures are published for the airspace concerned.

(d) Aeroplanes shall have sufficient navigation equipment to ensure that, in the event of the failure of one item of equipment at any stage of the flight, the remaining equipment shall allow safe navigation in accordance with the flight plan.

(e) Aeroplanes operated on flights in which it is intended to land in instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) shall be equipped with radio equipment capable of receiving signals providing guidance to a point from which a visual landing can be performed. This equipment shall be capable of providing such guidance for each aerodrome at which it is intended to land in IMC and for any designated alternate aerodromes.

CAT.IDE.A.350 Transponder

Aeroplanes shall be equipped with a pressure altitude reporting secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponder and any other SSR transponder capability required for the route being flown.

CAT.IDE.A.355 Electronic navigation data management

(a) Operators shall only use electronic navigation products that support a navigation application that meets standards of integrity that are adequate for the intended use of the data.

(b) When the electronic navigation data products support a navigation application needed for an operation for which Part-SPA requires an approval, the operator shall demonstrate to the competent authority that the process applied and the delivered products meets standards of integrity that are adequate for the intended use of the data.

(c) Operators shall continuously monitor both the process and the products, either directly or by monitoring the compliance of third party providers.

(d) Operators shall ensure the timely distribution and insertion of current and unaltered electronic navigation data to all aircraft that require it.

Section 2 - Helicopters

CAT.IDE.H.100 Instruments and equipment – General

(a) Equipment and instruments required by this Part shall be approved in accordance with Part-21, with the exception of the following:

(1) spare fuses;

(2) electric torches;

(3) an accurate time piece;

(4) chart holder.

(5) first-aid kit;

(6) megaphones;

(7) survival and signalling equipment;

(8) sea anchors and equipment for mooring; and

(9) child restraint devices.

(b) Instruments and equipment not required by this Part that do not need to be approved in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 but are carried on a flight, shall comply with the following:

(1) The information provided by these instruments, equipment or accessories shall not be used by the flight crew to comply with Annex 1 to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 or CAT.IDE.H.330, CAT.IDE.H.335, CAT.IDE.H.340 and CAT.IDE.H.345.

(2) The instruments and equipment shall not affect the airworthiness of the helicopter, even in the case of failures or malfunction.

(c) If equipment is to be used by one flight crew member at his/her station during flight, it must be readily operable from that station. When a single item of equipment is required to be operated by more than one flight crew member it must be installed so that the equipment is readily operable from any station at which the equipment is required to be operated.

(d) Those instruments that are used by any flight crew member shall be so arranged as to permit the flight crew member to see the indications readily from his/her station, with the minimum practicable deviation from the position and line of vision that he/she normally assumes when looking forward along the flight path.

(e) All required emergency equipment shall be easily accessible for immediate use.

CAT.IDE.H.105 Minimum equipment for flight

(a) A flight shall not be commenced when any of the helicopter instruments, items of equipment or functions required by this Part are inoperative, unless:

(1) the helicopter is operated in accordance with the operator minimum equipment list (MEL); or

(2) the helicopter is approved by the competent authority to be operated within the constraints of the master minimum equipment list (MMEL).

CAT.IDE.H.110 Spare electrical fuses

Helicopters shall be equipped with spare electrical fuses, of the ratings required for complete circuit protection, for replacement of those fuses that can be replaced in flight.

CAT.IDE.H.115 Operating lights

(a) Helicopters operated by day under visual flight rules (VFR) shall be equipped with an anti-collision light system.

(b) Helicopters operated by night or under instrument flight rules (IFR) shall in addition be equipped with:

(1) lighting supplied from the helicopter's electrical system to provide adequate illumination for all instruments and equipment essential to the safe operation of the helicopter;

(2) lighting supplied from the helicopter's electrical system to provide illumination in all passenger compartments;

(3) an electric torch for each required crew member readily accessible to crew members when seated at their designated station;

(4) navigation/position lights;

(5) two landing lights of which at least one is adjustable in flight so as to illuminate the ground in front of and below the helicopter and the ground on either side of the helicopter; and

(6) lights to conform with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea if the helicopter is amphibious.

CAT.IDE.H.125 Day VFR operations – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

Helicopters operated by day under VFR shall be equipped with the following equipment, available at the pilot’s station:

(a) a means of measuring and displaying:

(1) magnetic direction;

(2) time in hours, minutes, and seconds;

(3) pressure altitude;

(4) indicated airspeed;

(5) vertical speed;

(6) slip;

(b) a means of displaying:

(1) outside air temperature; and

(2) when power is not adequately supplied to the required flight instruments.

(c) Whenever two pilots are required for the operation, an additional separate means of displaying the following shall be available for the second pilot:

(1) pressure altitude;

(2) indicated airspeed;

(3) vertical speed; and

(4) slip.

(d) Helicopters with a maximum certificated take-off mass (MCTOM) of more than 3 175 kg or any helicopter operating over water when out of sight of land or when the visibility is less than 1 500 m, a means of measuring and displaying:

(1) attitude; and

(2) direction.

(e) A means for preventing malfunction of the airspeed indicating systems due to condensation or icing for helicopters with an MCTOM of more than3 175 kg or a maximum passenger seating configuration (MPSC) of more than nine.

CAT.IDE.H.130 IFR or night operations – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

Helicopters operated under VFR at night or under IFR shall be equipped with the following equipment, available at the pilot's station:

(a) a means of measuring and displaying:

(1) magnetic direction;

(2) time in hours, minutes and seconds;

(3) indicated airspeed;

(4) vertical speed;

(5) slip;

(6) attitude;

(7) stabilised direction;

(b) two means of measuring and displaying pressure altitude. For single pilot night VFR operations one pressure altimeter may be substituted by a radio altimeter;

(c) a means of displaying:

(1) outside air temperature; and

(2) when power is not adequately supplied to the required flight instruments;

(d) a means of preventing malfunction of the airspeed indicating systems required in (a)(3) and (h)(2) due to either condensation or icing;

(e) a means of indicating and annunciating to the flight crew the failure of the means required in (d) for helicopters:

(1) issued with an individual Certificate of Airworthiness (of A) on or after 1 August 1999; or

(2) issued with an individual C of A before 1 August 1999 with an MCTOM of more than 3175 kg, and with an MPSC of more than nine;

(f) a standby means of measuring and displaying attitude that:

(1) operates independently from other means of measuring and displaying attitude;

(2) is capable of being used from either pilot's station;

(3) is operative automatically after total failure of the normal electrical generating system;

(4) provides reliable operation for a minimum of 30 minutes or the time required to fly to a suitable alternate landing site when operating over hostile terrain or offshore, whichever is greater, after total failure of the normal electrical generating system, taking into account other loads on the emergency power supply and operational procedures;

(5) is appropriately illuminated during all phases of operation; and

(6) is associated with a means to alert the flight crew when operating under its dedicated power supply, including when operated by emergency power;

(g) an alternate source of static pressure for the means of measuring altitude, airspeed and vertical speed; and

(h) whenever two pilots are required for the operation, a separate means for displaying for the second pilot:

(1) pressure altitude;

(2) indicated airspeed;

(3) vertical speed;

(4) slip;

(5) attitude; and

(6) stabilised direction;

(i) for IFR operations, a chart holder in an easily readable position that can be illuminated for night operations.

CAT.IDE.H.135 Additional equipment for single pilot operation under IFR

Helicopters operated under IFR with a single pilot shall be equipped with an autopilot with, at least, altitude hold and heading mode.

CAT.IDE.H.145 Radio Altimeters

(a) Helicopters on flights over water shall be equipped with a radio altimeter capable of emitting an audio warning below a pre-set height and a visual warning at a height selectable by the pilot, when operating:

(1) out of sight of the land;

(2) in a visibility of less than 1 500 m;

(3) at night; or

(4) at a distance from land corresponding to more than 3 minutes at normal cruising speed.

CAT.IDE.H.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment

Helicopters with an MPSC of more than nine and operated under IFR or at night shall be equipped with airborne weather equipment when current weather reports indicate that thunderstorms or other potentially hazardous weather conditions, regarded as detectable with airborne weather detecting equipment, may reasonably be expected along the route to be flown.

CAT.IDE.H.165 Additional equipment for operations in icing conditions at night

(a) Helicopters operated in expected or actual icing conditions at night shall be equipped with a means to illuminate or detect the formation of ice.

(b) The means to illuminate the formation of ice shall not cause glare or reflection that would handicap crew members in the performance of their duties.

CAT.IDE.H.170 Flight crew interphone system

Helicopters operated by more than one flight crew member shall be equipped with a flight crew interphone system, including headsets and microphones for use by all flight crew members.

CAT.IDE.H.175 Crew member interphone system

Helicopters shall be equipped with a crew member interphone system when carrying a crew member other than a flight crew member.

CAT.IDE.H.180 Public address system

(a) Helicopters with an MPSC of more than nine shall be equipped with a public address system with the exception of the following:

(1) for helicopters with an MPSC of more than nine and less than 19, if:

(i) the helicopter is designed without a bulkhead between pilot and passengers; and

(ii) the operator is able to demonstrate that when in flight, the pilot's voice is audible and intelligible at all passengers' seats.

CAT.IDE.H.185 Cockpit voice recorder

(a) The following helicopter types shall be equipped with a cockpit voice recorder (CVR):

(1) all helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg; and

(2) helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg and first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 January 1987.

(b) The CVR shall be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least:

(1) the preceding 2 hours for helicopters referred to in (a)(1) and (a)(2), when first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 January 2016;

(2) the preceding 1 hour for helicopters referred to in (a)(1), when first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 August 1999 and before 1 January 2016;

(3) the preceding 30 minutes for helicopters referred to in (a)(1), when first issued with an individual C of A before 1 August 1999;or

(4) the preceding 30 minutes for helicopters referred to in (a)(2), when first issued with an individual C of A before 1 January 2016.

(c) The CVR shall record with reference to a timescale:

(1) voice communications transmitted from or received on the flight crew compartment per radio;

(2) flight crew members' voice communications using the interphone system and the public address system, if installed;

(3) the aural environment of the flight crew compartment, including, where practicable, without interruption, the audio signals received from each crew microphone; and

(4) voice or audio signals identifying navigation or approach aids introduced into a headset or speaker.

(d) The CVR shall start to record automatically prior to the helicopter moving under its own power and shall continue to record until the termination of the flight when the helicopter is no longer capable of moving under its own power.

(e) In addition, for helicopters referred to in (a)(2) when the individual C of A has been issued on or after 1 August 1999 and depending on the availability of electrical power, the CVR shall start to record as early as possible during the cockpit checks prior to the flight until the cockpit checks immediately following engine shutdown at the end of the flight.

(f) The CVR shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder

(a) The following helicopters shall be equipped with a flight data recorder (FDR) that uses a digital method of recording and storing data and for which a method of readily retrieving that data from the storage medium is available:

(1) helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg and first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 August 1999; and

(2) helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg, or an MPSC of more than nine, and first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 January 1989 and before 1 August 1999.

(b) The FDR shall record the parameters required to determine accurately the:

(1) flight path, speed, attitude, engine power, operation and configuration and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 10 hours, for helicopters referred to in (a)(1) and first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 January 2016;

(2) flight path, speed, attitude, engine power and operation and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 8 hours, for helicopters referred to in (a)(1) and first issued with an individual C of A before 1 January 2016; or

(3) flight path, speed, attitude, engine power and operation and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 5 hours, for helicopters referred to in (a)(2).

(c) Data shall be obtained from helicopter sources which enable accurate correlation with information displayed to the flight crew.

(d) The FDR shall automatically start to record the data prior to the helicopter being capable of moving under its own power and shall stop automatically after the helicopter is incapable of moving under its own power.

(e) The FDR shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

CAT.IDE.H.195 Data link recording

(a) Helicopters first issued with an individual C of A on or after 8 April 2014 that have the capability to operate data link communications and are required to be equipped with a CVR, shall record on a recorder, where applicable:

(1) data link communication messages related to air traffic services communications to and from the helicopter;

(2) information that enables correlation to any associated records related to data link communications and stored separately from the helicopter; and

(3) information on the time and priority of data link communications messages, taking into account the system's architecture.

(b) The recorder shall use a digital method of recording and storing data and information and a method of readily retrieving that data shall be available. The recording method shall be such as to allow the data to match the data recorded on the ground.

(c) The recorder shall be capable of retaining data recorded for at least the same duration as set out for CVRs in CAT.IDE.H.185.

(d) The recorder shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

(e) The recorder shall start to record automatically prior to the helicopter moving under its own power and shall continue to record until the termination of the flight when the helicopter is no longer capable of moving under its own power.

(f) Depending on the availability of electrical power, the recorder shall start to record as early as possible during the cockpit checks prior to engine start at the beginning of the flight until the cockpit checks immediately following engine shutdown at the end of the flight.

CAT.IDE.H.200 Flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder

Compliance with CVR and FDR requirements may be achieved by the carriage of one combination recorder.

CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, harnesses and child restraint devices

(a) Helicopters shall be equipped with:

(1) a seat or berth for each person on board older than 24 months;

(2) seats for cabin crew members;

(3) a seat belt for use in each passenger seat and restraining belts for each berth;

(4) for helicopters first issued with an individual C of Aon or after 1 August 1999, a safety belt with a diagonal shoulder strap or safety harness for use on each passenger seat for each passenger above the age of 24 months;

(5) a child restraint device (CRD) for each person on board younger than 24 months;

(6) a safety harness incorporating a device that will automatically restrain the occupant's torso in the event of rapid deceleration on each flight crew seat; and

(7) a safety harness on the seats for the minimum required cabin crew.

(b) Safety harnesses shall include two shoulder straps and a seat belt which may be used independently

(c) Safety harnesses and safety belts have a single point release.

CAT.IDE.H.210 Fasten seat belt and no smoking signs

Helicopters in which all passenger seats are not visible from the flight crew seat shall be equipped with a means of indicating to all passengers and cabin crew when seat belts shall be fastened and when smoking is not allowed.

CAT.IDE.H.220 First-aid kits

(a) The helicopter shall be equipped with at least one first-aid kit.

(b) First-aid kits shall be:

(1) readily accessible for use;

(2) carried in a way that prevents unauthorised access; and

(3) kept up-to-date.

CAT.IDE.H.240 Supplemental oxygen- non-pressurised helicopters

Non-pressurised helicopters operated at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft shall be equipped with supplemental oxygen equipment capable of storing and dispensing the oxygen supplies in accordance with Table 1.

Table 1: Oxygen minimum requirements for non-pressurised aeroplanes

Supply for:	**Duration and cabin pressure altitude**
1. Occupants of flight crew compartments seats on flight crew compartment duty and crew members assisting flight crew in their duties	The entire flight time at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft.
2. Required cabin crew members	The entire flight time at pressure altitudes above 13 000 ft and for any period of more than 30 minutes at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft and not more than 13 000 ft.
3. Additional crew members and 100 % of passengers*	The entire flight time at pressure altitudes above 13 000 ft.
4. 10 % of passengers*	The entire flight time after 30 minutes at pressure altitudes greater than 10 000 ft but not more than 13 000 ft.

* Passengers refers to passengers actually carried on board including persons younger than 24 months.

CAT.IDE.H.250 Hand fire extinguishers

(a) Helicopters shall be equipped with at least one hand fire extinguisher in the flight crew compartment.

(b) At least one hand fire extinguisher shall be located in, or readily accessible for use in each galley not located on the main passenger deck.

(c) At least one hand fire extinguisher shall be available for use in each cargo compartment that is accessible to crew members in flight.

(d) The type and quantity of extinguishing agent for the required fire extinguishers shall be suitable for the type of fire likely to occur in the compartment where the extinguisher is intended to be used and to minimise the hazard of toxic gas concentration in compartments occupied by persons.

(e) The helicopter shall be equipped with at least a number of hand fire extinguishers in accordance with Table 1 conveniently located to provide adequate availability for use in each passenger compartment.

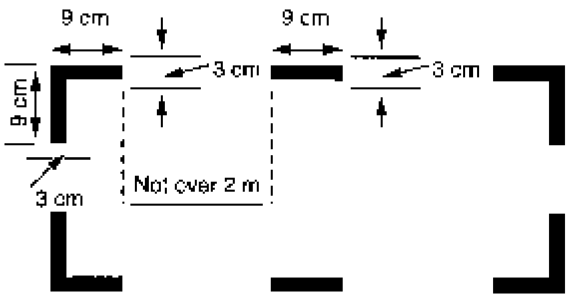
Table 1: Number of hand fire extinguishers

Maximum passenger seating configuration	Number of extinguishers
7 -30	1
31 -60	2
61 -200	3

CAT.IDE.H.260 Marking of break-in points

If areas of the helicopter's fuselage suitable for break-in by rescue crews in an emergency are marked, such areas shall be marked as shown in Figure 1.

Figure 1: Marking of break-in points



CAT.IDE.H.270 Megaphones

Helicopters with an MPSC of more than 19, when carrying at least one passenger, shall be equipped with one portable battery-powered megaphones readily accessible for use by crew members during an emergency evacuation.

CAT.IDE.H.275 Emergency lighting and marking

(a) Helicopters with an MPSC of more than 19 shall be equipped with:

(1) an emergency lighting system having an independent power supply to provide a source of general cabin illumination to facilitate the evacuation of the helicopter; and

(2) emergency exit marking and locating signs visible in daylight or in the dark.

(b) Helicopters shall be equipped with emergency exit markings visible in daylight or in the dark when operated:

(1) in performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes' flying time at normal cruising speed; or

(2) in performance class 3 on a flight over water at a distance corresponding to more than 3 minutes' flying time at normal cruising speed.

CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

(a) The helicopter shall be equipped with at least one automatic ELT.

(b) Helicopters operating in performance class 1 or 2 used in offshore operations ona flight over water in a hostile environment and at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes' flying time at normal cruising speed shall be equipped with an automatically deployable ELT (ELT(AD)).

(c) The ELT shall be capable of transmitting simultaneously on 121.5 MHz and 406 MHz.

CAT.IDE.H.290 Life-jackets

(a) The helicopter shall be equipped with a life-jacket for each person on board or equivalent floatation device for each person on board younger than 24 months, stowed in a position that is readily accessible from the seat or berth of the person for whose use it is provided, when operated in:

(1) performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes' flying time at normal cruising speed;

(2) performance class 3 on a flight over water beyond autorotational distance from land; or

(3) performance class 2 or 3 when taking off or landing at an aerodrome or operating site where the take-off or approach path is over water.

(b) The commander of a helicopter operated in performance class 3 shall determine the risks to survival of the occupants of the helicopter in the event of a ditching, when deciding if the life-jackets required above shall be worn by all occupants.

(c) Each life-jacket or equivalent individual flotation device shall be equipped with a means of electric illumination for the purpose of facilitating the location of persons.

CAT.IDE.H.295 Crew survival suits

Each helicopter crew member shall wear a survival suit when operating:

(a) in performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water in support of offshore operations, at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes' flying time at normal cruising speed, when the weather report or forecasts available to the commander indicate that the sea temperature will be less than plus 10°C during the flight, or when the estimated rescue time exceeds the estimated survival time; or

(b) in performance class 3 on a flight over water beyond auto rotational distance or safe forced landing distance from land, when the weather report or forecasts available to the commander indicate that the sea temperature will be less than plus 10°C during the flight.

CAT.IDE.H.300 Life-rafts, ELT(S)and survival equipment on extended overwater flights

(a) Helicopters operated:

(1) in performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes' flying time at normal cruising speed; or

(2) in performance class 3 on a flight over water at a distance corresponding to more than 3 minutes' flying time at normal cruising, shall be equipped with:

- in the case of a helicopter carrying less than 12 persons, at least one life-raft with a rated capacity of not less than the maximum number of persons on board, stowed so as to facilitate their ready use in emergency;
- in the case of a helicopter carrying more than 11 persons, at least two life-rafts sufficient together to accommodate all persons capable of being carried on board and with respective overload capacity sufficient to accommodate all persons on the helicopter, stowed so as to facilitate their ready use in emergency;
- at least one survival ELT (ELT(S)) for each required life raft; and
- life-saving equipment, including means of sustaining life, as appropriate to the flight to be undertaken.

CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment

Helicopters operated over areas which have been designated by a State as areas where search and rescue would be especially difficult shall be equipped with:

(a) signalling equipment to make distress signals;

(b) at least one ELT(S); and

(c) additional survival equipment for the route to be flown taking account of the number of persons on board.

CAT.IDE.H.310 Additional requirements for helicopters conducting offshore operations in a hostile sea area

Helicopters operated in offshore operations in a hostile sea area, at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes' flying time at normal cruising speed, shall comply with the following:

(a) When the weather report or forecasts available to the commander indicate that the sea temperature will be less than plus 10°C during the flight, or when the estimated rescue time exceeds the calculated survival time, or the flight is planned to be conducted at night, all persons on board are wearing a survival suit.

(b) All life-rafts carried in accordance with CAT.IDE.H.300 shall be installed so as to be usable in the sea conditions in which the helicopter's ditching, flotation and trim characteristics were evaluated in order to comply with the ditching requirements for certification.

(c) The helicopter shall be equipped with an emergency lighting system with an independent power supply to provide a source of general cabin illumination to facilitate the evacuation of the helicopter.

(d) All emergency exits, including crew emergency exits, and the means of opening them shall be conspicuously marked for the guidance of occupants using the exits in daylight or in the dark. Such markings shall be designed to remain visible if the helicopter is capsized and the cabin is submerged.

(e) All non-jettisonable doors that are designated as ditching emergency exits shall have a means of securing them in the open position so that they do not interfere with occupants' egress in all sea conditions up to the maximum required to be evaluated for ditching and flotation.

(f) All doors, windows or other openings in the passenger compartment assessed as suitable for the purpose of underwater escape shall be equipped so as to be operable in an emergency.

(g) Life-jackets shall be worn at all times, unless the passenger or crew member is wearing an integrated survival suit that meets the combined requirement of the survival suit and life-jacket.

CAT.IDE.H.315 Helicopters certificated for operating on water - miscellaneous equipment

Helicopters certificated for operating on water shall be equipped with:

(a) a sea anchor and other equipment necessary to facilitate mooring, anchoring or manoeuvring the helicopter on water, appropriate to its size, weight and handling characteristics; and

(b) equipment for making the sound signals prescribed in the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, where applicable.

CAT.IDE.H.320 All helicopters on flights over water - ditching

(a) Helicopters shall be designed for landing on water or certificated for ditching in accordance with the relevant airworthiness code when operated in performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water in a hostile environment at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes' flying time at normal cruise speed.

(b) Helicopters shall be designed for landing on water or certificated for ditching in accordance the relevant airworthiness code or fitted with emergency flotation equipment when operated in:

  (1) performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water in a non-hostile environment at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes' flying time at normal cruise speed;

  (2) performance class 2, when taking-off or landing over water, except in the case of helicopter emergency medical services (HEMS) operations, where for

the purpose of minimising exposure, the landing or take-off at a HEMS operating site located in a congested environment is conducted over water; or

(3) performance class 3 on a flight over water beyond safe forced landing distance from land.

Part-CAT | AMC-GM

Subpart A – General requirements

Section 1 – Aeroplanes and helicopters

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.100(b) Crew responsibilities

COPIES OF REPORTS

Where written reports are required, a copy of the reports should be communicated to the commander concerned, unless the terms of the operator's reporting schemes prevent this.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.100(c) Crew responsibilities

ALCOHOL CONSUMPTION

The operator should instructions concerning the consumption of alcohol by crew members. The requirements should be no less restrictive than the following:

1. no alcohol should be consumed less than 8 hours prior to the specified reporting time for flight duty or the commencement of standby;
2. the blood alcohol level should not exceed the lower of the national requirements or 0.2 promille at the start of a flight duty period;
3. no alcohol should be consumed during the flight duty period or whilst on standby.

GM1-CAT.GEN.AH.100(c) Crew responsibilities

ELAPSED TIME BEFORE RETURNING TO FLYING DUTY

24 hours is a suitable minimum length of time to allow after normal blood donation or normal recreational (sport) diving before returning to flying duties. This should be considered by operators when determining a reasonable time period for the guidance of crew members.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.115 Personnel or crew members other than cabin crew in the passenger compartment

MEASURES TO PREVENT

Personnel or crew members other than cabin crew should not wear a uniform or perform tasks which might identify them as members of the operating cabin crew.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.130 Rotor engagement - helicopters

ROTOR ENGAGEMENT

The pilot should remain at the controls when the rotors are turning under power. The requirement, however, should not prevent ground runs being conducted by qualified personnel other than pilots. The operator should ensure that the qualification of personnel, other than pilots, who are authorised to conduct ground runs, is described in the appropriate manual. Ground runs should not include taxiing the helicopter.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.135(a)(3) Admission to flight crew compartment

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SINGLE-PILOT VFR DAY OPERATIONS

Where an aircraft is used in a single-pilot VFR day operation but has more than one pilot station, the instructions of the operator may permit passengers to be carried in the unoccupied pilot seat(s), provided that the commander is satisfied that:

1. it will not cause distraction or interference with the operation of the flight; and
2. the passenger occupying a pilot seat is familiar with the relevant restrictions and safety procedures.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.145 Information on emergency and survival equipment carried

ITEMS FOR COMMUNICATION TO RCC

The information should include, as applicable, the number, colour and type of life-rafts and pyrotechnics; details of emergency medical supplies; water supplies; and the type and frequencies of emergency portable radio equipment.

GM1-CAT.GEN.AH.155 Carriage of weapons of war and munitions of war

WEAPONS OF WAR AND MUNITIONS OF WAR

1. There is no internationally agreed definition of weapons of war and munitions of war. Some States may have defined them for their particular purposes or for national need.
2. It is the responsibility of the operator to check, with the State(s) concerned, whether or not a particular weapon or munition is regarded as a weapon of war or munitions of war. In this context, States which may be concerned with granting approvals for the carriage of weapons of war or munitions of war are those of origin, transit, overflight and destination of the consignment and the State of the operator.
3. Where weapons of war or munitions of war are also dangerous goods by definition (e.g. torpedoes, bombs, etc.), CAT.GEN.AH.200 Transport of dangerous goods also applies.

GM1-CAT.GEN.AH.160 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition

SPORTING WEAPONS

1. There is no internationally agreed definition of sporting weapons. In general it may be any weapon which is not a weapon of war or munitions of war. Sporting weapons include hunting knives, bows and other similar articles. An antique weapon, which at one time may have been a weapon of war or munitions of war, such as a musket, may now be regarded as a sporting weapon.
2. A firearm is any gun, rifle or pistol which fires a projectile.
3. The following firearms are generally regarded as being sporting weapons:
   a. those designed for shooting game, birds and other animals;
   b. those used for target shooting, clay-pigeon shooting and competition shooting, providing the weapons are not those on standard issue to military forces;
   c. airguns, dart guns, starting pistols, etc.
4. A firearm, which is not a weapon of war or munitions of war, should be treated as a sporting weapon for the purposes of its carriage on an aircraft.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.161 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition - alleviations

SPORTING WEAPONS

Procedures for the carriage of sporting weapons may need to be considered if the helicopter does not have a separate compartment in which the weapons can be stowed. These procedures should take into account the nature of the flight, its origin and destination, and the possibility of unlawful interference. As far as possible, the weapons should be stowed so they are not immediately accessible to the passengers, e.g. in locked boxes, in checked baggage which is stowed under other baggage or under fixed netting.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.180 Documents, manuals and information to be carried

GENERAL

The documents, manuals and information may be available in a form other than on printed paper. Accessibility, usability and reliability should be assured.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.180(a) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

LOSS OR THEFT OF DOCUMENTS

In case of loss or theft of documents, the operation is allowed to continue until the flight reaches the base or a place where a replacement document can be provided.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.180(a)(1) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

AIRCRAFT FLIGHT MANUAL OR EQUIVALENT DOCUMENT(S)

'Aircraft flight manual, or equivalent document(s)' means; the flight manual for the aircraft, or other documents containing information required for the operation of the aircraft within the terms of its certificate of airworthiness, unless this data is available in the parts of the operations manual carried on board.

GM1-CAT.GEN.AH.180(a)(5) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

THE AIR OPERATOR CERTIFICATE

Certified true copies may be provided:

1. directly by the competent authority; or
2. by persons holding privileges for certification of official documents in accordance with applicable Member State's legislation, e.g., public notaries, authorised officials in public services.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.180(a)(9) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

JOURNEY LOG OR EQUIVALENT

'Journey log, or equivalent' means; that the required information may be recorded in documentation other than a log book, such as the operational flight plan or the aircraft technical log.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.180(a)(13) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

PROCEDURES AND VISUAL SIGNALS FOR USE BY INTERCEPTING AND INTERCEPTED AIRCRAFT

The procedures and the visual signals for use by intercepting and intercepted aircraft should reflect those contained in ICAO Annex 2. This may be part of the operations manual.

GM1-CAT.GEN.AH.180(a)(14) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

SEARCH AND RESCUE INFORMATION

This information is usually found in the State's aeronautical information publication.

GM1-CAT.GEN.AH.180(a)(23) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

DOCUMENTS WHICH MAY BE PERTINENT TO THE FLIGHT

Any other documents which may be pertinent to the flight or required by the States concerned with the flight may include, for example, forms to comply with reporting requirements.

STATES CONCERNED WITH THE FLIGHT

The States concerned are those of origin, transit, overflight and destination of the flight.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.195 Preservation, production and use of flight recorder recordings - aeroplanes

OPERATIONAL CHECKS

Whenever a recorder is required to be carried, the operator should:

1. perform an annual inspection of FDR recording, CVR recording and, if applicable, data link recording; and
2. check every five years or in accordance with the recommendations of the sensor manufacturer, that the parameters dedicated to the FDR and not monitored by other means are being recorded within the calibration tolerances.

GM1-CAT.GEN.AH.195 Preservation of recordings, production and use of flight recorder recordings - aeroplanes

PROCEDURES FOR THE INSPECTIONS AND MAINTENANCE PRACTICES

Procedures for the inspections and maintenance practices of the FDR and CVR systems are given in ICAO Annex 6, Part I and in Annex II-B of EUROCAE ED-112.

REMOVAL OF RECORDERS

The need for removal of the recorders from the aircraft will be determined by the investigating authority with due regard to the seriousness of an occurrence and the circumstances, including the impact on the operation.

AMC1-CAT.GEN.AH.200(e) Transport of dangerous goods

DANGEROUS GOODS ACCIDENT AND INCIDENT REPORTING

1. Any type of dangerous goods accident or incident, or the finding of undeclared or misdeclared dangerous goods should be reported, irrespective of whether the dangerous goods are contained in cargo, mail, passengers' baggage or crew baggage. For the purposes of the reporting of undeclared and misdeclared

dangerous goods found in cargo, the Technical Instructions considers this to include items of operators' stores that are classified as dangerous goods.

2. The first report should be dispatched within 72 hours of the event. It may be sent by any means, including e-mail, telephone or fax. This report should include the details that are known at that time, under the headings identified in 3. below. If necessary, a subsequent report should be made as soon as possible giving all the details that were not known at the time the first report was sent. If a report has been made verbally, written confirmation should be sent as soon as possible.

3. The first and any subsequent report should be as precise as possible and should contain the following data, where relevant:

   a. date of the incident or accident or the finding of undeclared or misdeclared dangerous goods;

   b. location, the flight number and flight date;

   c. description of the goods and the reference number of the air waybill, pouch, baggage tag, ticket, etc;

   d. proper shipping name (including the technical name, if appropriate) and UN/ID number, when known;

   e. class or division and any subsidiary risk;

   f. type of packaging, and the packaging specification marking on it;

   g. quantity;

   h. name and address of the shipper, passenger, etc;

   i. any other relevant details;

   j. suspected cause of the incident or accident;

   k. action taken;

   l. any other reporting action taken; and

   m. name, title, address and telephone number of the person making the report.

4. Copies of relevant documents and any photographs taken should be attached to the report.

5. A dangerous goods accident or incident may also constitute an aircraft accident, serious incident or incident. Reports should be made for both types of occurrences when the criteria for each are met.

6. The following dangerous goods reporting form should be used, but other forms, including electronic transfer of data, may be used provided that at least the minimum information of this AMC is supplied:

DANGEROUS GOODS OCCURRENCE REPORT				DGOR No:
1. Operator:		2. Date of Occurrence:		3. Local time of occurrence:
4. Flight date:			5. Flight No:	
6. Departure aerodrome:			7. Destination aerodrome:	
8. Aircraft type:			9. Aircraft registration:	
10. Location of occurrence:			11. Origin of the goods:	
12. Description of the occurrence, including details of injury, damage, etc. (if necessary continue on the reverse of this form):				
13. Proper shipping name (including the technical name):				14. UN/ID No (when known):
15.Class/Division (when known):	16. Subsidiary risk(s):		17. Packing group:	18 Category (Class 7 only):
19. Type of packaging:	20.Packaging specification marking:		21. No of packages:	22. Quantity (or transport index, if applicable):
23. Reference No of Airway Bill:				
24. Reference No of courier pouch, baggage tag, or passenger ticket:				
25. Name and address of shipper, agent, passenger, etc.:				
26. Other relevant information (including suspected cause, any action taken):				

27. Name and title of person making report:	28. Telephone No:
29. Company:	30. Reporters ref:
31. Address:	32. Signature:
	33. Date:
Description of the occurrence (continuation)	

Notes for completion of the form:

1. Any type of dangerous goods occurrence should be reported, irrespective of whether the dangerous goods are contained in cargo, mail or baggage.
2. A dangerous goods accident is an occurrence associated with and related to the transport of dangerous goods which results in fatal or serious injury to a person or major property damage. For this purpose serious injury is an injury which is sustained by a person in an accident and which:
   a. requires hospitalisation for more than 48 hours, commencing within 7 day from the date the injury was received; or
   b. results in a fracture of any bones (except simple fractures of fingers, toes or nose); or
   c. involves lacerations which cause severe haemorrhage, nerve, muscle or tendon damage; or
   d. involves injury to any internal organ; or
   e. involves second or third degree burns, or any burns affecting more than 5 % of the body surface; or
   f. involves verified exposure to infectious substances or injurious radiation. A dangerous goods accident may also be an aircraft accident; in which case the normal procedure for reporting of air accidents should be followed.
3. A dangerous goods incident is an occurrence, other than a dangerous goods accident, associated with and related to the transport of dangerous goods, not necessarily occurring on board an aircraft, which results in injury to a person, property damage, fire, breakage, spillage, leakage of fluid or radiation or other evidence that the integrity of the packaging has not been maintained. Any occurrence relating to the transport of dangerous goods which seriously jeopardises

the aircraft or its occupants is also deemed to constitute a dangerous goods incident.

4. This form should also be used to report any occasion when undeclared or misdeclared dangerous goods are discovered in cargo, mail or unaccompanied baggage or when accompanied baggage contains dangerous goods which passengers or crew are not permitted to take on aircraft.

5. An initial report, which may be made by any means, should be dispatched within 72 hours of the occurrence, to the competent authority of the State (a) of the operator; and (b) in which the incident occurred, unless exceptional circumstances prevent this. This occurrence report form, duly completed, should be sent as soon as possible, even if all the information is not available.

6. Copies of all relevant documents and any photographs should be attached to this report.

7. Any further information, or any information not included in the initial report, should be sent as soon as possible to authorities identified in 5 above.

8. Providing it is safe to do so, all dangerous goods, packaging, documents, etc., relating to the occurrence should be retained until after the initial report has been sent to the authorities identified in 5. above and they have indicated whether or not these should continue to be retained.

GM1-CAT.GEN.AH.200 Transport of dangerous goods

GENERAL

1. The requirement to transport dangerous goods by air in accordance with the Technical Instructions is irrespective of whether:

    a. the flight is wholly or partly within or wholly outside the territory of a state; or

    b. an approval to carry dangerous goods in accordance with SPA.DG. is held.

2. The Technical Instructions provide that in certain circumstances dangerous goods, which are normally forbidden on an aircraft, may be carried. These circumstances include cases of extreme urgency or when other forms of transport are inappropriate or when full compliance with the prescribed requirements is contrary to the public interest. In these circumstances all the States concerned may grant exemptions from the provisions of the Technical Instructions provided that an overall level of safety which is at least equivalent to that provided by the Technical Instructions is achieved. Although exemptions are most likely to be granted for the carriage of dangerous goods which are not permitted in normal circumstances, they may also be granted in other circumstances, such as when the packaging to be used is not provided for by the appropriate packing method or the quantity in the packaging is greater than that permitted. The Technical Instructions also make provision for some dangerous goods to be carried when an approval has been granted only by the State of Origin and the State of the Operator, or in the case of

non-commercial operations with other-than-complex motor-powered aircraft, the State of Registry.

3. When an exemption is required, the States concerned are those of origin, transit, overflight and destination of the consignment and that of the operator. For the State of overflight, if none of the criteria for granting an exemption are relevant, an exemption may be granted based solely on whether it is believed that an equivalent level of safety in air transport has been achieved.

4. The Technical Instructions provide that exemptions and approvals are granted by the "appropriate national authority", which is intended to be the authority responsible for the particular aspect against which the exemption or approval is being sought. The Instructions do not specify who should seek exemptions and, depending on the legislation of the particular State, this may mean the operator, the shipper or an agent. If an exemption or approval has been granted to other than the operator, the operator should ensure a copy has been obtained before the relevant flight. The operator should ensure all relevant conditions on an exemption or approval are met.

5. The exemption or approval referred to in 2. to 4. is in addition to the approval required by SPA.DG.

Subpart B – Operating procedures

Section 1 – Aeroplanes and helicopters

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.105 Use of aerodromes and operating sites

DEFINING OPERATING SITES - HELICOPTERS

When defining operating sites (including infrequent or temporary sites) for the type(s) of helicopter(s) and operation(s) concerned, the operator should take account of the following:

1. An adequate site is a site that the operator considers to be satisfactory, taking account of the applicable performance requirements and site characteristics (guidance on standards and criteria are contained in ICAO Annex 14 Volume 2 and in the ICAO *Heliport Manual* (Doc 9261-AN/903)).
2. The operator should have in place a procedure for the survey of sites by a competent person. Such a procedure should take account for possible changes to the site characteristics which may have taken place since last surveyed.
3. Sites that are presurveyed should be specifically specified in the operations manual. The operations manual should contain diagrams or/and ground and aerial photographs, and depiction (pictorial) and description of:
   a. the overall dimensions of the site;
   b. location and height of relevant obstacles to approach and take-off profiles, and in the manoeuvring area;
   c. approach and take-off flight paths;
   d. surface condition (blowing dust/snow/sand);
   e. helicopter types authorised with reference to performance requirements;
   f. provision of control of third parties on the ground (if applicable);
   g. procedure for activating site with land owner or controlling authority;
   h. other useful information, for example appropriate ATS agency and frequency; and
   j. lighting (if applicable).
4. For sites that are not pre-surveyed, the operator should have in place a procedure that enables the pilot to make, from the air, a judgment on the suitability of a site. 3.a. to 3.f. should be considered.
5. Operations to non-pre-surveyed sites by night (except in accordance with SPA.HEMS.125, (b)(3)) should not be permitted.

HELIDECK

6. The content of Part C of the operations manual relating to the specific usage of helidecks should contain both the listing of helideck limitations in a helideck

limitations list (HLL) and a pictorial representation (template) of each helideck showing all necessary information of a permanent nature. The HLL should show, and be amended as necessary to indicate, the most recent status of each helideck concerning non-compliance with ICAO Annex 14 Volume 2, limitations, warnings, cautions or other comments of operational importance. An example of a typical template is shown in Figure 1 below.

7. In order to ensure that the safety of flights is not compromised, the operator should obtain relevant information and details for compilation of the HLL, and the pictorial representation, from the owner/operator of the helideck.

8. When listing helidecks, if more than one name of the helideck exists, the most common name should be used, other names should also be included. After renaming a helideck, the old name should be included in the HLL for the ensuing six months.

9. All helideck limitations should be included in the HLL. Helidecks without limitations should also be listed. With complex installations and combinations of installations (e.g. co-locations), a separate listing in the HLL, accompanied by diagrams where necessary, may be required.

10. Each helideck should be assessed based on limitations, warnings, cautions or comments to determine its acceptability with respect to the following which, as a minimum, should cover the factors listed below:

    a. The physical characteristics of the helideck.

    b. The preservation of obstacle-protected surfaces is the most basic safeguard for all flights.

       These surfaces are:

       i. the minimum 210° obstacle-free surface (OFS);

       ii. the 150° limited obstacle surface (LOS); and

       iii. the minimum 180° falling "5:1" - gradient with respect to significant obstacles. If this is infringed or if an adjacent installation or vessel infringes the obstacle clearance surfaces or criteria related to a helideck, an assessment should be made to determine any possible negative effect that may lead to operating restrictions.

    c. Marking and lighting:

       i. adequate perimeter lighting;

       ii. adequate floodlighting;

       iii. status lights (for night and day operations e.g. signalling lamp);

       iv. dominant obstacle paint schemes and lighting;

       v. helideck markings; and

       vi. general installation lighting levels. Any limitations in this respect should be annotated "daylight only operations" on the HLL.

    d. Deck surface:

i. surface friction;

ii. helideck net;

iii. drainage system;

iv. deck edge netting;

v. tie down system; and

vi. cleaning of all contaminants.

e. Environment:

i. foreign object damage;

ii. physical turbulence generators;

iii. bird control;

iv. air quality degradation due to exhaust emissions, hot gas vents or cold gas vents; and

v. adjacent helideck may need to be included in air quality assessment.

f. Rescue and fire fighting:

i. primary and complementary media types, quantities, capacity and systems personal protective equipment and clothing, breathing apparatus; and

ii. crash box;

g. Communications & navigation:

i. aeronautical radio(s);

ii. radio/telephone (R/T) call sign to match helideck name and side identification which should be simple and unique;

iii. Non directional beacon (NDB) or equivalent (as appropriate);

iv. radio log; and

v. light signal (e.g. signalling lamp).

h. Fuelling facilities:

i. in accordance with the relevant national guidance and regulations.

i. Additional operational and handling equipment:

i. windsock;

ii. wind recording;

iii. deck motion recording and reporting where applicable;

iv. passenger briefing system;

v. chocks;

vi. tie downs; and

vii. weighing scales.

j. Personnel:

   i. trained helideck staff (e.g. helicopter landing officer/helicopter deck assistant and fire fighters etc.).

k. Other:

   i. as appropriate.

11. For helidecks about which there is incomplete information, 'limited' usage based on the information available may be specified by the operator prior to the first helicopter visit. During subsequent operations and before any limit on usage is lifted, information should be gathered and the following should apply:

a. Pictorial (static) representation:

   i. template (see figure 1) blanks should be available, to be filled out during flight preparation on the basis of the information given by the helideck owner/operator and flight crew observations;

   ii. where possible, suitably annotated photographs may be used until the HLL and template have been completed;

   iii. until the HLL and template have been completed, operational restrictions (e.g. performance, routing etc.) may be applied;

   iv. any previous inspection reports should be obtained by the operator; and

   v. an inspection of the helideck should be carried out to verify the content of the completed HLL and template, following which the helideck may be considered as fully adequate for operations.

b. With reference to the above, the HLL should contain at least the following:

   i. HLL revision date and number;

   ii. generic list of helideck motion limitations;

   iii. name of helideck;

   iv. 'D' value; and

   v. limitations, warnings, cautions and comments.

c. The template should contain at least the following (see example below):

   i. installation/vessel name;

   ii. R/T call sign;

   iii. helideck identification marking;

   iv. side panel identification marking;

   v. helideck elevation;

   vi. maximum installation/vessel height;

   vii. 'D' value;

   viii. type of installation/vessel;

- fixed manned
- fixed unmanned
- ship type (e.g. diving support vessel)
- semi-submersible
- jack-up

ix. name of owner/operator;

x. geographical position;

xi. Communication and navigation (Com/Nav) frequencies and ident;

xii. general drawing preferably looking into the helideck with annotations showing location of derrick, masts, cranes, flare stack, turbine and gas exhausts, side identification panels, windsock etc.;

xiii. plan view drawing, chart orientation from the general drawing, to show the above. The plan view will also show the 210° orientation in degrees true;

xiv. type of fuelling:

- pressure and gravity
- pressure only
- gravity only
- none

xv. type and nature of fire fighting equipment;

xvi. availability of GPU;

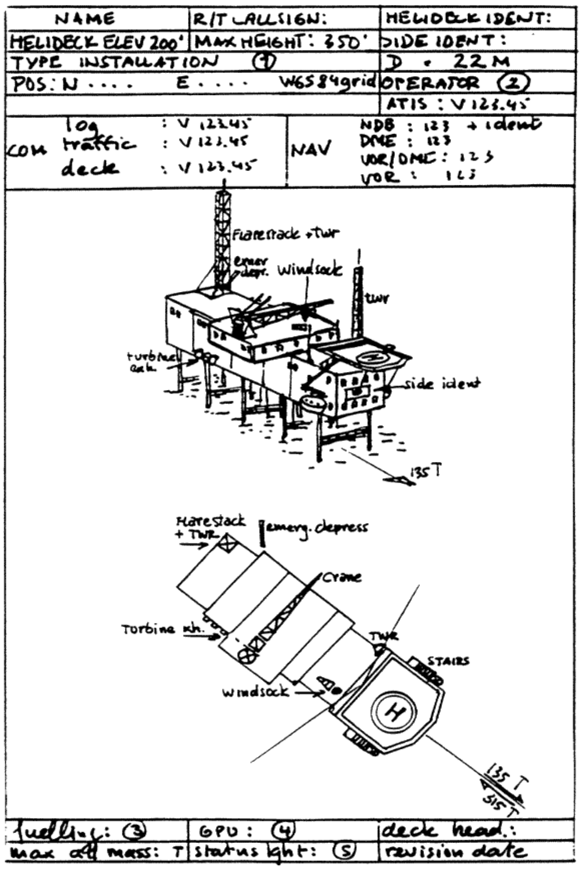
xvii. deck heading;

xviii. maximum allowable mass;

xix. status light (Yes/No); and

xx. revision date of publication.

Figure 1 – Helideck template



1. Fixed manned; fixed unmanned; small ship; large ship; semi-submersible; jack-up.
2. NAM, AMOCO etc.
3. Pressure/gravity; pressure; gravity; no.
4. Yes; no; 28V DC.
5. Yes; no.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.110 Aerodrome operating minima

TAKE-OFF OPERATIONS

1. Take-off operations

   a. General

      i. Take-off minima should be expressed as visibility or runway visual range (RVR) limits, taking into account all relevant factors for each aerodrome planned to be used and aircraft characteristics. Where there is a specific need to see and avoid obstacles on departure and/or for a forced landing, additional conditions, e.g. ceiling, should be specified.

      ii. The commander should not commence take-off unless the weather conditions at the aerodrome of departure are equal to or better than applicable minima for landing at that aerodrome unless a suitable take-off alternate aerodrome is available.

iii. When the reported meteorological visibility is below that required for take-off and RVR is not reported, a take-off should only be commenced if the commander can determine that the RVR/visibility along the take-off runway/area is equal to or better than the required minimum.

iv. When no reported meteorological visibility or RVR is available, a take-off should only be commenced if the commander can determine that the RVR/visibility along the take-off runway/area is equal to or better than the required minimum.

b. Visual reference

i. The take-off minima should be selected to ensure sufficient guidance to control the aircraft in the event of both a rejected take-off in adverse circumstances and a continued take-off after failure of the critical engine.

ii. For night operations, ground lights should be available to illuminate the runway/final approach and take-off area (FATO) and any obstacles.

c. Required RVR/VIS – aeroplanes

i. For multi-engined aeroplanes, with performance such that in the event of a critical engine failure at any point during take-off the aeroplane can either stop or continue the take-off to a height of 1 500 ft above the aerodrome while clearing obstacles by the required margins, the take-off minima specified by the operator should be expressed as RVR/CMV (converted meteorological visibility) values not lower than those specified in Table 1.A.

ii. For multi-engined aeroplanes without the performance to comply with the conditions in 1.c.i. above in the event of a critical engine failure, there may be a need to reland immediately and to see and avoid obstacles in the take-off area. Such aeroplanes may be operated to the following take-off minima provided they are able to comply with the applicable obstacle clearance criteria, assuming engine failure at the height specified. The take-off minima specified by the operator should be based upon the height from which the one-engine-inoperative (OEI) net take-off flight path can be constructed. The RVR minima used should not be lower than either of the values specified in Table 1.A or Table 2.A.

iii. When RVR, or meteorological visibility is not available, the commander should not commence take-off unless he/she can determine that the actual conditions satisfy the applicable take-off minima.

Table 1.A: Take-off – aeroplanes (without an approval for low visibility take-off (LVTO))
RVR/CMV

Facilities	RVR/CMV (m) *
Day only: Nil**	500
Day: at least runway edge lights or runway centreline markings Night: at least runway edge lights or runway centreline lights and runway end lights	400

*: *The reported RVR/CMV value representative of the initial part of the take-off run can be replaced by pilot assessment.*

**: *The pilot is able to continuously identify the take-off surface and maintain directional control.*

Table 2.A: Take-off - aeroplanes
Assumed engine failure height above the runway versus RVR/CMV

Assumed engine failure height above the take-off runway (ft)	RVR/CMV (m) **
<50	400 (200 with LVTO approval)
51 – 100	400 (300 with LVTO approval)
101 – 150	400
151 – 200	500
201 – 300	1 000
>300 *	1 500

*: *1 500 m is also applicable if no positive take-off flight path can be constructed.*

**: *The reported RVR/Visibility value representative of the initial part of the take-off run can be replaced by pilot assessment.*

d. Required RVR/VIS – helicopters:

i. For performance class 1 operations, the operator should specify an RVR/VIS as take-off minima in accordance with Table 1.H.

ii. For performance class 2 operations onshore, the commander should operate to take-off minima of 800 m RVR/CMV and remain clear of cloud during the take-off manoeuvre until reaching performance class 1 capabilities.

iii. For performance class 2 operations offshore, the commander should operate to minima not less than that for performance class 1 and remain clear of cloud during the take-off manoeuvre until reaching performance class 1 capabilities.

iv. Table 9 for converting reported meteorological visibility to RVR, should not be used for calculating take-off minima.

Table 1.H: Take-off – helicopters (without LVTO approval) RVR/CMV

Onshore aerodromes with instrument flight rules (IFR) departure procedures	**RVR/CMV (m)**
No light and no markings (day only)	400 or the rejected take-off distance, whichever is the greater
No markings (night)	800
Runway edge/FATO light and centreline marking	400
Runway edge/FATO light, centreline marking and relevant RVR information	400
Offshore helideck *	
Two-pilot operations	400
Single-pilot operations	500

**: The take-off flight path to be free of obstacles.*

NPA, APV, CAT I OPERATIONS

1. The decision height (DH) to be used for an NPA, approach procedure with vertical guidance (APV) or CAT I operation should not be lower than the highest of:
   a. the minimum height to which the approach aid can be used without the required visual reference;
   b. the obstacle clearance height (OCH) for the category of aircraft;
   c. the published approach procedure DH where applicable;
   d. the system minimum specified in Table 3; or

e. the minimum DH specified in the aircraft flight manual (AFM) or equivalent document, if stated.

2. The minimum descent height (MDH) for an NPA operation should not be lower than the highest of:

a. the OCH for the category of aircraft;

b. the system minimum specified in Table 3; or

c. the minimum MDH specified in the AFM, if stated.

Table 3: System minima

Facility	**Lowest DH/MDH (ft)**
ILS	200
GNSS/SBAS (LPV)	200
GNSS (LNAV)	250
GNSS/Baro-VNAV (LNAV/ VNAV)	250
LOC with or without DME	250
SRA (terminating at ½ NM)	250
SRA (terminating at 1 NM)	300
SRA (terminating at 2 NM or more)	350
VOR	300
VOR/DME	250
NDB	350
NDB/DME	300
VDF	350

DME: distance measuring equipment;

GNSS: global navigation satellite system;

ILS: instrument landing system;

LNAV: lateral navigation;

LOC: localiser;

SBAS: satellite-based augmentation system;

SRA: surveillance radar approach;

VDF: VHF direction finder;

VNAV: vertical navigation;

VOR: VHF omnidirectional radio range.

3. Aeroplanes

The following criteria for establishing RVR/CMV should apply:

a. In order to qualify for the lowest allowable values of RVR/CMV specified in Table 6.A the instrument approach should meet at least the following facility requirements and associated conditions:

i. Instrument approaches with designated vertical profile up to and including 4.5° for Category A and B aeroplanes, or 3.77° for Category C and D aeroplanes, unless other approach angles are approved by the competent authority for a particular aircraft / runway combination, where the facilities are:

A. instrument landing system (ILS) / microwave landing system (MLS) / GBAS landing system (GLS) / precision approach radar (PAR); or

B. APV; and

where the final approach track is offset by not more than 15° for Category A and B aeroplanes or by not more than 5° for Category C and D aeroplanes.

ii. Instrument approach operations flown using the continuous descent final approach (CDFA) technique with a nominal vertical profile, up to and including 4.5° for Category A and B aeroplanes, or 3.77° for Category C and D aeroplanes, unless other approach angles are approved by the competent authority for a particular aircraft / runway combination, where the facilities are NDB, NDB/DME, VOR, VOR/DME, LOC, LOC/DME, VDF, SRA or GNSS/LNAV, with a final-approach segment of at least 3 NM, which also fulfil the following criteria:

A. the final approach track is offset by not more than 30° for Category A and B aeroplanes or by not more than 15° for Category C and D aeroplanes;

B. the final approach fix (FAF) or another appropriate fix where descent is initiated is available, or distance to threshold (THR) is available by flight management system / area navigation (FMS/RNAV) or DME; and

C. if the missed approach point (MAPt) is determined by timing, the distance from FAF to THR is ≤ 8 NM.

iii. Instrument approaches where the facilities are NDB, NDB/DME, VOR, VOR/DME, LOC, LOC/DME, VDF, SRA or GNSS/LNAV, not fulfilling the criteria in 3.a.ii. above, or with an MDH ≥ 1 200 ft.

b. The missed approach operation, after an approach operation has been flown using the CDFA technique, should be executed when reaching the DH/A or the MAPt, whichever occurs first. The lateral part of the missed approach procedure should be flown via the MAPt unless otherwise stated on the approach chart.

4. Aeroplanes

The RVR/CMV/VIS minima for CAT I, APV and NPA operations should be determined as follows:

a. The minimum RVR/CMV/VIS should be the highest of the values specified in Table 5 or Table 6.A but not greater than the maximum values specified in Table 6.A, where applicable.

b. The values in Table 5 should be derived from the formula below,

Required RVR/VIS (m) = [(DH/MDH (ft) x 0.3048) / tanα] - length of approach lights (m)

where α is the calculation angle, being a default value of 3.00° increasing in steps of 0.10° for each line in Table 5 up to 3.77° and then remains constant.

c. If the approach is flown with a level flight segment at or above MDA/H, 200 m should be added for Category A and B aeroplanes and 400 m for Category C and D aeroplanes to the minimum RVR/CMV/VIS value resulting from the application of Tables 5 and 6.

d. An RVR of less than 750 m as indicated in Table 5 may be used:

i. for CAT I approach operations to runways with full approach light system (FALS), runway touchdown zone lights (RTZL) and runway centreline lights (RCLL);

ii. for CAT I approach operations to runways without RTZL and RCLL when using an approved head-up display landing system (HUDLS), or equivalent approved system, or when conducting a coupled approach or flight-director-flown approach to a DH. The ILS should not be published as a restricted facility; or

iii. for APV approach operations to runways with FALS, RTZL and RCLL when using an approved HUD.

e. Lower values than those specified in Table 5, for HUDLS and auto-land operations may be used if approved in accordance with SPA.LVO.

f. The visual aids should comprise standard runway day markings and approach and runway lights as specified in Table 4. The competent authority may approve that RVR values relevant to a BALS are used on runways where the approach lights are restricted in length below 210 m due to terrain or water, but where at least one cross-bar is available.

g. For night operations or for any operation where credit for runway and approach lights is required, the lights should be on and serviceable except as provided for in Table 7.

h. For single-pilot operations, the minimum RVR/VIS should be calculated in accordance with the following additional criteria:

i. an RVR of less than 800 m as indicated in Table 5 may be used for CAT I approaches provided any of the following is used at least down to the applicable DH:

A. a suitable autopilot, coupled to an ILS, MLS or GLS that is not published as restricted; or

B. an approved HUDLS, including, where appropriate, EVS, or equivalent approved system;

ii. where RTZL and/or RCLL are not available, the minimum RVR/CMV should not be less than 600 m; and

iii. an RVR of less than 800 m as indicated in Table 5 may be used for APV operations to runways with FALS, RTZL and RCLL when using an approved HUDLS, or equivalent approved system, or when conducting a coupled approach to a DH equal to or greater than 250 ft.

Table 4: Approach light systems

Class of lighting facility	**Length, configuration and intensity of approach lights**
FALS	CAT I light system (HIALS 720 m ≥) distance coded centreline, Barrette centreline
IALS	Simple approach light system (HIALS 420 – 719 m) single source, Barrette
BALS	Any other approach light system (HIALS, MIALS or ALS 210-419 m)
NALS	Any other approach light system (HIALS, MIALS or ALS <210 m) or no approach lights

Note: HIALS: high intensity approach light system;
MIALS: medium intensity approach light system.

Table 5: RVR/CMV vs. DH/MDH

DH or MDH			Class of lighting facility			
			FALS	**IALS**	**BALS**	**NALS**
			See 4.d., e., h. above about RVR <750/800 m			
ft			**RVR/CMV (m)**			
200	-	210	550	750	1 000	1 200
211	-	220	550	800	1 000	1 200
221	-	230	550	800	1 000	1 200
231	-	240	550	800	1 000	1 200
241	-	250	550	800	1 000	1 300
251	-	260	600	800	1 100	1 300
261	-	280	600	900	1 100	1 300
281	-	300	650	900	1 200	1 400
301	-	320	700	1 000	1 200	1 400
321	-	340	800	1 100	1 300	1 500
341	-	360	900	1 200	1 400	1 600
361	-	380	1 000	1 300	1 500	1 700
381	-	400	1 100	1 400	1 600	1 800
401	-	420	1 200	1 500	1 700	1 900
421	-	440	1 300	1 600	1 800	2 000
441	-	460	1 400	1 700	1 900	2 100
461	-	480	1 500	1 800	2 000	2 200
481		500	1 500	1 800	2 100	2 300
501	-	520	1 600	1 900	2 100	2 400
521	-	540	1 700	2 000	2 200	2 400

DH or MDH			Class of lighting facility			
			FALS	IALS	BALS	NALS
			See 4.d., e., h. above about RVR <750/800 m			
ft			RVR/CMV (m)			
541	-	560	1 800	2 100	2 300	2 500
561	-	580	1 900	2 200	2 400	2 600
581	-	600	2 000	2 300	2 500	2 700
601	-	620	2 100	2 400	2 600	2 800
621	-	640	2 200	2 500	2 700	2 900
641	-	660	2 300	2 600	2 800	3 000
661	-	680	2 400	2 700	2 900	3 100
681	-	700	2 500	2 800	3 000	3 200
701	-	720	2 600	2 900	3 100	3 300
721	-	740	2 700	3 000	3 200	3 400
741	-	760	2 700	3 000	3 300	3 500
761	-	800	2 900	3 200	3 400	3 600
801	-	850	3 100	3 400	3 600	3 800
851	-	900	3 300	3 600	3 800	4 000
901	-	950	3 600	3 900	4 100	4 300
951	-	1 000	3 800	4 100	4 300	4 500
1 001	-	1 100	4 100	4 400	4 600	4 900
1 101	-	1 200	4 600	4 900	5 000	5 000
1 201 and above			5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000

Table 6.A: CAT I, APV, NPA - aeroplanes
Minimum and maximum applicable RVR/CMV (lower and upper cut-off limits)

Facility/conditions	RVR/CMV (m)	Aeroplane category			
		A	B	C	D
ILS, MLS, GLS, PAR, GNSS/SBAS, GNSS/VNAV	Min	According to Table 5			
	Max	1 500	1 500	2 400	2 400
NDB, NDB/DME, VOR, VOR/DME, LOC, LOC/DME, VDF, SRA, GNSS/LNAV with a procedure that fulfils the criteria in 3.a.ii.	Min	750	750	750	750
	Max	1 500	1 500	2 400	2 400
For NDB, NDB/DME, VOR, VOR/DME, LOC, LOC/DME, VDF, SRA, GNSS/LNAV: - not fulfilling the criteria in paragraph 3.a.ii, or - with a DH or MDH ≥1 200 ft	Min	1 000	1 000	1 200	1 200
	Max	According to Table 5 if flown using the CDFA technique, otherwise an add-on of 200/400 m applies to the values in Table 5 but not to result in a value exceeding 5 000 m.			

5. Helicopters

The RVR/CMV/VIS minima for NPA, APV and CAT I operations should be determined as follows:

a. For NPA operations operated in performance class 1 (PC1) or performance class 2 (PC2), the minima specified in Table 6.1.H should apply:

   i. where the missed approach point is within ½ NM of the landing threshold, the approach minima specified for full facilities may be used regardless of the length of approach lights available. However, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights, end lights and FATO/runway markings are still required;

   ii. for night operations, ground lights should be available to illuminate the FATO/runway and any obstacles; and

   iii. for single-pilot operations, the minimum RVR is 800 m or the minima in Table 6.2.H, whichever is higher.

b. For CAT I operations operated in PC1 or PC2, the minima specified in Table 6.2.H should apply:

i. for night operations, ground light should be available to illuminate the FATO/runway and any obstacles;

ii. for single-pilot operations, the minimum RVR/VIS should be calculated in accordance with the following additional criteria:

A. an RVR of less than 800 m should not be used except when using a suitable autopilot coupled to an ILS, MLS or GLS, in which case normal minima apply; and

B. the DH applied should not be less than 1.25 times the minimum use height for the autopilot.

Table 6.1.H Onshore NPA minima

MDH (ft) *	**Facilities/RVR (m) **, ***, ********			
	Full	**Intermediate**	**Basic**	**Nil**
250 – 299	600	800	1 000	1 000
300 – 449	800	1 000	1 000	1 000
450 and above	1 000	1 000	1 000	1 000

*: *The MDH refers to the initial calculation of MDH. When selecting the associated RVR, there is no need to take account of a rounding up to the nearest ten ft, which may be done for operational purposes, e.g. conversion to MDA.*

**: *The tables are only applicable to conventional approaches with a nominal descent slope of not greater than 4°. Greater descent slopes will usually require that visual glide slope guidance (e.g. precision path approach indicator (PAPI)) is also visible at the MDH.*

***: *The above figures are either reported RVR or CMV.*

****: *Full facilities comprise FATO/runway markings, 720 m or more of high intensity / medium intensity (HI/MI) approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.*

Intermediate facilities comprise FATO/runway markings, 420 - 719 m of HI/MI approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.

Basic facilities comprise FATO/runway markings, <420 m of HI/MI approach lights, any length of LI approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.

Nil approach light facilities comprise FATO/runway markings, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights, FATO/runway end lights or no lights at all.

Table 6.2.H Onshore CAT I minima

MDH (ft) *	Facilities/RVR (m) **, ***, ****			
	Full	**Intermediate**	**Basic**	**Nil**
200	500	600	700	1 000
201 – 250	550	650	750	1 000
251 – 300	600	700	800	1 000
301 and above	750	800	900	1 000

*: *The MDH refers to the initial calculation of MDH. When selecting the associated RVR, there is no need to take account of a rounding up to the nearest 10 ft, which may be done for operational purposes, e.g. conversion to DA.*

**: *The above figures are either the reported RVR or CMV.*

***: *The table is applicable to conventional approaches with a glide slope up to and including 4°.*

****: *Full facilities comprise FATO/runway markings, 720 m or more of HI/MI approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.*

Intermediate facilities comprise FATO/runway markings, 420 - 719 m of HI/MI approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.

Basic facilities comprise FATO/runway markings, <420 m of HI/MI approach lights, any length of LI approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.

Nil approach light facilities comprise FATO/runway markings, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights, FATO/runway end lights or no lights at all.

CIRCLING OPERATIONS - AEROPLANES

1. Circling minima

   The following standards should apply for establishing circling minima for operations with aeroplanes:

   a. the MDH for circling should be the highest of:

      i. the published circling OCH for the aeroplane category;

      ii. the minimum circling height derived from Table 8; or

      iii. the DH/MDH of the preceding instrument approach procedure;

b. the MDA for circling should be calculated by adding the published aerodrome elevation to the MDH, as determined by 1.a. above;

c. the minimum visibility for circling should be the highest of:

   i. the circling visibility for the aeroplane category, if published;

   ii. the minimum visibility derived from Table 8; or

   iii. the RVR/CMV derived from Tables 5 and 6 for the preceding instrument approach procedure.

Table 8: Circling - aeroplanes
MDH and minimum visibility vs. aeroplane category

	Aeroplane category			
	A	**B**	**C**	**D**
MDH (ft)	400	500	600	700
Minimum meteorological visibility (m)	1 500	1 600	2 400	3 600

2. Conduct of flight – general:

   a. the MDH and OCH included in the procedure are referenced to aerodrome elevation;

   b. the MDA is referenced to mean sea level;

   c. for these procedures, the applicable visibility is the meteorological visibility; and

   d. operators should provide tabular guidance of the relationship between height above threshold and the in-flight visibility required to obtain and sustain visual contact during the circling manoeuvre.

3. Instrument approach followed by visual manoeuvring (circling) without prescribed tracks

   a. When the aeroplane is on the initial instrument approach, before visual reference is stabilised, but not below MDA/H - the aeroplane should follow the corresponding instrument approach procedure until the appropriate instrument MAPt is reached.

   b. At the beginning of the level flight phase at or above the MDA/H, the instrument approach track determined by radio navigation aids, RNAV, RNP or ILS, MLS, GLS should be maintained until the pilot:

      i. estimates that, in all probability, visual contact with the runway of intended landing or the runway environment will be maintained during the entire circling procedure;

      ii. estimates that the aeroplane is within the circling area before commencing circling; and

iii. is able to determine the aeroplane's position in relation to the runway of intended landing with the aid of the appropriate external references.

c. When reaching the published instrument MAPt and the conditions stipulated in 3.b. are unable to be established by the pilot, a missed approach should be carried out in accordance with that instrument approach procedure.

d. After the aeroplane has left the track of the initial instrument approach, the flight phase outbound from the runway should be limited to an appropriate distance, which is required to align the aeroplane onto the final approach. Such manoeuvres should be conducted to enable the aeroplane:

i. to attain a controlled and stable descent path to the intended landing runway; and

ii. remain within the circling area and in such way that visual contact with the runway of intended landing or runway environment is maintained at all times.

e. Flight manoeuvres should be carried out at an altitude/height that is not less than the circling MDA/H.

f. Descent below MDA/H should not be initiated until the threshold of the runway to be used has been appropriately identified. The aeroplane should be in a position to continue with a normal rate of descent and land within the touchdown zone.

4. Instrument approach followed by a visual manoeuvring (circling) with prescribed track

a. The aeroplane should remain on the initial instrument approach procedure until one of the following is reached:

i. the prescribed divergence point to commence circling on the prescribed track; or

ii. the MAPt.

b. The aeroplane should be established on the instrument approach track determined by the radio navigation aids, RNAV, RNP, or ILS, MLS, GLS in level flight at or above the MDA/H at or by the circling manoeuvre divergence point.

c. If the divergence point is reached before the required visual reference is acquired, a missed approach should be initiated not later than the MAPt and completed in accordance with the instrument approach procedure.

d. When commencing the prescribed circling manoeuvre at the published divergence point, the subsequent manoeuvres should be conducted to comply with the published routing and published heights/altitudes.

e. Unless otherwise specified, once the aeroplane is established on the prescribed track(s), the published visual reference does not need to be maintained unless:

i. required by the State of the aerodrome; or

ii. the circling MAPt (if published) is reached.

f. If the prescribed circling manoeuvre has a published MAPt and the required visual reference has not been obtained by that point, a missed approach should be executed in accordance with 5.b. and 5.c..

g. Subsequent further descent below MDA/H should only commence when the required visual reference has been obtained.

h. Unless otherwise specified in the procedure, final descent should not be commenced from MDA/H until the threshold of the intended landing runway has been identified and the aeroplane is in a position to continue with a normal rate of descent to land within the touchdown zone.

5. Missed approach

a. Missed approach during the instrument procedure prior to circling:

i. if the missed approach procedure is required to be flown when the aeroplane is positioned on the instrument approach track defined by radio-navigation aids RNAV, RNP, or ILS, MLS, and before commencing the circling manoeuvre, the published missed approach for the instrument approach should be followed; or

ii. if the instrument approach procedure is carried out with the aid of an ILS, MLS or an stabilised approach (SAp), the MAPt associated with an ILS, MLS procedure without glide path (GP-out procedure) or the SAp, where applicable, should be used.

b. If a prescribed missed approach is published for the circling manoeuvre, this overrides the manoeuvres prescribed below.

c. If visual reference is lost while circling to land after the aeroplane has departed from the initial instrument approach track, the missed approach specified for that particular instrument approach should be followed. It is expected that the pilot will make an initial climbing turn toward the intended landing runway to a position overhead the aerodrome where the pilot will establish the aeroplane in a climb on the instrument missed approach segment.

d. The aeroplane should not leave the visual manoeuvring (circling) area, which is obstacle protected, unless:

i. established on the appropriate missed approach procedure; or

ii. at minimum sector altitude (MSA).

e. All turns should be made in the same direction and the aeroplane should remain within the circling protected area while climbing to either:

i. the altitude assigned to any published circling missed approach manoeuvre if applicable;

ii. the altitude assigned to the missed approach of the initial instrument approach;

iii. the MSA;

iv. the minimum holding altitude (MHA) applicable for transition to a holding facility or fix, or continue to climb to an MSA; or

v. as directed by ATS.

When the missed approach procedure is commenced on the "downwind" leg of the circling manoeuvre, an "S" turn may be undertaken to align the aeroplane on the initial instrument approach missed approach path, provided the aeroplane remains within the protected circling area.

The commander should be responsible for ensuring adequate terrain clearance during the above-stipulated manoeuvres, particularly during the execution of a missed approach initiated by ATS.

f. Because the circling manoeuvre may be accomplished in more than one direction, different patterns will be required to establish the aeroplane on the prescribed missed approach course depending on its position at the time visual reference is lost. In particular, all turns are to be in the prescribed direction if this is restricted, e.g. to the west/east (left or right hand) to remain within the protected circling area.

g. If a missed approach procedure is published for a particular runway onto which the aeroplane is conducting a circling approach and the aeroplane has commenced a manoeuvre to align with the runway, the missed approach for this direction may be accomplished. The ATS unit should be informed of the intention to fly the published missed approach procedure for that particular runway.

h. The commander should advise ATS when any missed approach procedure has been commenced, the height/altitude the aeroplane is climbing to and the position the aeroplane is proceeding towards and / or heading the aeroplane is established on.

ONSHORE CIRCLING OPERATIONS - HELICOPTERS

For circling the specified MDH should not be less than 250 ft, and the meteorological visibility not less than 800 m.

VISUAL APPROACH OPERATIONS

The operator should not use an RVR of less than 800 m for a visual approach operation.

CONVERSION OF REPORTED METEOROLOGICAL VISIBILITY TO RVR

1. A conversion from meteorological visibility to RVR/CMV should not be used when

   a. reported RVR is available;

   b. for calculating take-off minima; and

   c. for other RVR minima less than 800 m.

2. If the RVR is reported as being above the maximum value assessed by the aerodrome operator, e.g. "RVR more than 1 500 m", it should not be considered as a reported value.

3. When converting meteorological visibility to RVR in circumstances other than those in a. and b. above, the conversion factors specified in Table 9 should be used.

Table 9: Conversion of reported meteorological visibility to RVR/CMV

Light elements in operation	**RVR/CMV = reported meteorological visibility x**	
	Day	**Night**
HI approach and runway lights	1.5	2.0
Any type of light installation other than above	1.0	1.5
No lights	1.0	not applicable

FAILED OR DOWNGRADED GROUND EQUIPMENT

1. General

   These instructions are intended for use both pre-flight and in-flight. It is however not expected that the commander would consult such instructions after passing 1 000 ft above the aerodrome. If failures of ground aids are announced at such a late stage, the approach could be continued at the commander's discretion. If failures are announced before such a late stage in the approach, their effect on the approach should be considered as described in Table 7, and the approach may have to be abandoned.

2. Conditions applicable to Tables 7:

   a. multiple failures of runway/FATO lights other than indicated in Table 7 should not be acceptable;

   b. deficiencies of approach and runway/FATO lights are treated separately; and

   c. failures other than ILS, MLS affect RVR only and not DH.

Table 7: Failed or downgraded equipment – effect on landing minima Operations without a low visibility operations (LVO) approval

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Failed or downgraded equipment</th><th colspan="2">Effect on landing minima</th></tr>
<tr><th>CAT I</th><th>APV, NPA</th></tr>
<tr><td>ILS/MLS stand-by transmitter</td><td colspan="2">No effect</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Outer Marker</td><td rowspan="3">Not allowed except if replaced by equivalent position</td><td>APV – not applicable</td></tr>
<tr><td>NPA with FAF: no effect unless used as FAF</td></tr>
<tr><td>If the FAF cannot be identified (e.g. no method available for timing of descent), non-precision operations cannot be conducted</td></tr>
<tr><td>Middle marker</td><td>No effect</td><td>No effect unless used as MAPt</td></tr>
<tr><td>RVR Assessment Systems</td><td colspan="2">No effect</td></tr>
<tr><td>Approach lights</td><td colspan="2">Minima as for NALS</td></tr>
<tr><td>Approach lights except the last 210 m</td><td colspan="2">Minima as for BALS</td></tr>
<tr><td>Approach lights except the last 420 m</td><td colspan="2">Minima as for IALS</td></tr>
<tr><td>Standby power for approach lights</td><td colspan="2">No effect</td></tr>
<tr><td>Edge lights, threshold lights and runway end lights</td><td colspan="2">Day - no effect;
Night – Not allowed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Centreline lights</td><td>No effect if F/D, HUDLS or auto-land

otherwise RVR 750 m</td><td>No effect</td></tr>
</table>

Failed or downgraded equipment	**Effect on landing minima**	
	CAT I	**APV, NPA**
Centreline lights spacing increased to 30 m	No effect	
Touchdown zone lights	No effect if F/D, HUDLS or auto-land; otherwise RVR 750 m	No effect
Taxiway light system	No effect	

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.110 Aerodrome operating minima

ONSHORE AERODROME DEPARTURE PROCEDURES – HELICOPTERS

The cloud base and visibility should be such as to allow the helicopter to be clear of cloud at take-off decision point (TDP), and for the pilot flying to remain in sight of the surface until reaching the minimum speed for flight in instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) given in the AFM.

GM2-CAT.OP.AH.110 Aerodrome operating minima

APPROACH LIGHT SYSTEMS – ICAO, FAA

The following table provides a comparison of ICAO and FAA specifications.

Table 1: Approach light systems

Class of lighting facility	**Length, configuration and intensity of approach lights**
FALS	ICAO: CAT I light system (HIALS ≥ 900 m) distance coded centreline, Barrette centreline FAA: ALSF1, ALSF2, SSALR, MALSR, high or medium intensity and/or flashing lights, 720 m or more
IALS	ICAO: simple approach light system (HIALS 420 – 719 m) single source, Barrette FAA: MALSF, MALS, SALS/SALSF, SSALF, SSALS, high or medium intensity and/or

	flashing lights, 420 – 719 m
BALS	Any other approach light system (HIALS, MIALS or ALS 210-419 m) FAA: ODALS, high or medium intensity or flashing lights 210 - 419 m
NALS	Any other approach light system (HIALS, MIALS or ALS <210 m) or no approach lights

Note: *ALSF: approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights;*
MALS: medium intensity approach light system;
MALSF: medium intensity approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights;
MALSR: medium intensity approach lighting system with runway alignment indicator lights;
ODALS: omnidirectional approach lighting system;
SALS: simple approach lighting system;
SALSF: short approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights;
SSALF: simplified short approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights;
SSALR: simplified short approach lighting system with runway alignment indicator lights;
SSALS: simplified short approach lighting system.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.110(c) Aerodrome operating minima

INCREMENTS SPECIFIED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY

Additional increments to the published minima may be specified by the competent authority to take into account special operations, such as downwind approaches and single-pilot operations.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.115 Approach flight technique - aeroplanes

CONTINUOUS DESCENT FINAL APPROACH (CDFA)

1. Approach with a designated vertical profile using the CDFA technique
    a. The optimum angle for the approach slope is 3°, and the gradient should preferably not exceed 11 % which equates to a slope of 5°, (372 ft/NM) for procedures intended for conventional aeroplane types or classes and/or operations. A 4.5° approach slope is the upper limit for certification of conventional aeroplanes.
    b. The approach is to be flown utilising operational flight techniques and on board navigation system(s) and navigation aids to ensure it can be flown on the desired vertical path and track in a stabilised manner, without significant vertical path changes during the final-segment descent to the runway. APV is included.

c. The approach is flown to a DA/H.

d. No MAPt is published for these procedures.

2. Approach with a nominal vertical profile using the CDFA technique

a. The optimum angle for the approach slope is 3°, and the gradient should preferably not exceed 6.5 % which equates to a slope of 3.77°, (400 ft/NM) for Category A and B aeroplanes and 6.1 %, which equates to a slope of 3.5° for Category C and D aeroplanes. A 4.5° approach slope is the upper limit for certification of conventional aeroplanes.

b. The approach procedure should meet at least the following facility requirements and associated conditions (NDB, NDB/DME, VOR, VOR/DME, LOC, LOC/DME, VDF, SRA, RNAV/LNAV) and fulfil the following criteria:

i. the final approach track off-set is ≤5° except for Category A and B aeroplanes, where the approach-track off-set is ≤15°; and

ii. a FAF, or another appropriate fix where descent initiated is available; and

iii. the distance from the FAF to the Threshold (THR) is less than or equal to 8 NM in the case of timing; or

iv. the distance to the THR is available by FMS/RNAV or DME; or

v. the minimum final-segment of the designated constant angle approach path should be 3 NM from the THR unless otherwise approved by the competent authority.

c. CDFA may also be applied utilising the following:

i. GNSS/LNAV with altitude/height cross checks against positions or distances from the THR; or

ii. height crosscheck compared with DME distance values.

d The approach is flown to a DA/H; it may be necessary to apply an add-on to the published minima to ensure obstacle clearance. The add-on, if applicable, should be specified in the operations manual – (aerodrome operating minima).

e. The approach is flown as an SAp.

Generally, MAPt is published for these procedures.

3. Operational procedures

a. MAPt should be specified to apply CDFA with a nominal vertical profile as for any non-precision approach.

b. The flight techniques associated with CDFA employ a pre-determined approach slope. The approach, in addition, is flown in a stabilised manner, in terms of configuration, energy and control of the flight path. The approach should be flown to a DA/H at which the decision to land or missed approach procedure is made immediately. This approach technique should be used when conducting all NPAs meeting the specified CDFA criteria in 1. and 2. above.

c. The flight techniques and operational procedures prescribed above should always be applied; in particular with regard to control of the descent path and the stability of the aeroplane on the approach prior to reaching MDA/H. Level flight at MDA/H should be avoided as far as practicable. In addition appropriate procedures and training should be established and implemented to facilitate the applicable elements of 4., 5. and 6. Particular emphasis should be placed on 4.h., 5.a. to g. and 8.d..

d. In cases where the CDFA technique is not used with a high MDA/H, it may be appropriate to make an early descent to MDA/H with appropriate safeguards to include the above training requirements, as applicable, and the application of a significantly higher RVR/VIS.

e. For circling approaches (visual manoeuvring), all the applicable criteria with respect to the stability of the final descent path to the runway should apply, as follows:

   i. The control of the desired final nominal descent path to the threshold should be conducted to facilitate the techniques described in 4. and 5.:

   ii. Stabilisation during the final segment of the instrument approach used to reach the circling MDA/H should ideally be accomplished by 1 000 ft above aerodrome elevation for turbo-jet aeroplanes.

   iii. For a circling approach where the landing runway threshold and appropriate visual landing aids may be visually acquired from a point on the designated or published procedure (prescribed tracks), stabilisation should be achieved not later than 500 ft above aerodrome elevation. It is however recommended that the aeroplane be stabilised when passing 1 000 ft above aerodrome elevation.

   iv. When a low-level final turning manoeuvre is required in order to align the aeroplane visually with the landing runway, a height of 300 ft above the runway threshold elevation, or aerodrome elevation as appropriate, should be considered as the lowest height for approach stabilisation with wings level.

   v. Dependent upon aeroplane type or class the operator may specify an appropriately higher minimum stabilisation height for circling approach operations.

   vi. The operator should specify in the operations manual the procedures and instructions for conducting circling approaches, including at least:

      A. the minimum required visual reference;

      B. the corresponding actions for each segment of the circling manoeuvre;

      C. the relevant missed approach procedure actions if the required visual reference is lost; and

D. the visual reference requirements for any operations with a prescribed track circling manoeuvre to include the MDA/H and any published MAPt.

f. Visual approach. All the applicable criteria with respect to the stability of the final descent path to the runway should apply to the operation of visual approaches. In particular, the control of the desired final nominal descent path to the threshold should be conducted to facilitate the appropriate techniques and procedures described in 6. and 7.:

i. stabilisation during the final straight-in segment for a visual approach should ideally be accomplished by 500 ft above runway threshold elevation for turbo-jet aeroplanes;

ii. when a low level final turning manoeuvre is required in order to align the aeroplane with the landing runway, a minimum height of 300 ft above the runway threshold elevation or aerodrome elevation, as appropriate should be considered as the lowest height for visual approach stabilisation with wings level;

iii. dependent upon aeroplane type or class, the operator may specify an appropriately higher minimum stabilisation height for visual approach operations; and

iv. the operator should specify in the operations manual the procedures and instructions for conducting visual approaches to include at least:

A. the minimum required visual reference;

B. the corresponding actions if the required visual reference is lost during a visual approach manoeuvre; and

C. the appropriate missed approach actions.

g. The control of the descent path using the CDFA technique ensures that the descent path to the runway threshold is flown using:

i. a variable descent rate or flight path angle to maintain the desired path, which may be verified by appropriate crosschecks; or

ii. a precomputed constant rate of descent from the FAF, or other appropriate fix which is able to define a descent point and/or from the final approach segment step-down fix; or

iii. vertical guidance, including APV.

The above techniques also support a common method for the implementation of flight-director-guided or auto-coupled RNAV approaches.

h. The manoeuvre associated with the vertical profile of the missed approach should be initiated not later than reaching the MAPt or the DA/H specified for the approach, whichever occurs first. The lateral part of the missed approach procedure should be flown via the MAPt unless otherwise stated on the approach chart.

i. In case the CDFA technique is not used the approach should be flown to an altitude/height at or above the MDA/H where a level flight segment at or above MDA/H may be flown to the MAPt.

j. In case the CDFA technique is not used when flying an approach, the operator should implement procedures to ensure that early descent to the MDA/H will not result in a subsequent flight below MDA/H without adequate visual reference. These procedures could include:

   i. awareness of radio altimeter information with reference to the approach profile;

   ii. enhanced ground proximity warning system (GPWS) and/or terrain awareness information;

   iii. limitation of rate of descent;

   iv. limitation of the number of repeated approaches;

   v. safeguards against too early descents with prolonged flight at MDA/H; and

   vi. specification of visual requirements for the descent from the MDA/H.

4. Flight techniques

a. The CDFA technique can be used on almost any published non-precision approach when the control of the descent path is aided by either:

   i. a recommended descent rate, based on estimated ground speed, which may be provided on the approach chart; or

   ii. the descent path as depicted on the chart.

b. In order to facilitate the provision of 4.a.ii., the operator should either provide charts which depict the appropriate cross check altitudes/heights with the corresponding appropriate range information, or such information should be calculated and provided to the flight crew in an appropriate and usable format.

c. For approaches flown coupled to a designated descent path using computed electronic glide-slope guidance (normally a 3° path), the descent path should be appropriately coded in the flight management system data base and the specified navigational accuracy (RNP) should be determined and maintained throughout the operation of the approach.

d. With an actual or estimated ground speed, a nominal vertical profile and required descent rate, the approach should be flown by crossing the FAF configured and on-speed. The tabulated or required descent rate is established and flown to not less than the DA/H, observing any step-down crossing altitudes if applicable.

e. To assure the appropriate descent path is flown, the pilot monitoring should announce crossing altitudes as published fixes and other designated points are crossed, giving the appropriate altitude or height for the appropriate range as depicted on the chart. The pilot flying should promptly adjust the rate of descent as appropriate.

f. With the required visual reference requirements established, the aeroplane should be in position to continue descent through the DA/H or MDA/H with little or no adjustment to attitude or thrust/power.

g. When applying CDFA on an approach with a nominal vertical profile to a DA/H, it may be necessary to apply an add-on to the published minima (vertical profile only) to ensure sufficient obstacle clearance. The add-on, if applicable, should be published in the operations manual. However, the resulting procedure minimum will still be referred to as the DA/H for the approach.

h. Operators should establish a procedure to ensure that an appropriate callout (automatic or oral) is made when the aeroplane is approaching DA/H. If the required visual references are not established at DA/H, the missed approach procedure is to be executed promptly. Visual contact with the ground alone is not sufficient for continuation of the approach. With certain combinations of DA/H, RVR and approach slope, the required visual references may not be achieved at the DA/H in spite of the RVR being at or above the minimum required for the conduct of the approach. The safety benefits of CDFA are negated if prompt missed approach procedure action is not initiated.

i. The following bracketing conditions in relation to angle of bank, rate of descent and thrust/power management are considered to be suitable for most aeroplane types or classes to ensure the pre-determined vertical path approach is conducted in a stabilised manner:

   i. Bank angle: as prescribed in the operations manual, this should generally be less than 30°.

   ii. Rate of descent (ROD): the target ROD should not exceed 1 000 fpm. The ROD should deviate by no more than ±300 fpm from the target ROD. Prolonged rates of descent which differ from the target ROD by more than 300 fpm indicate that the vertical path is not being maintained in a stabilised manner. The ROD should not exceed 1 200 fpm, except under exceptional circumstances which have been anticipated and briefed prior to commencing the approach; for example, a strong tailwind. Zero rate of descent may be used when the descent path needs to be regained from below the profile. The target ROD may need to be initiated prior to reaching the required descent point (typically 0.3 NM before the descent point, dependent upon ground speed, which may vary for each type or class of aeroplane).

   iii. Thrust/power management: the limits of thrust/power and the appropriate range should be specified in the operations manual Part B or equivalent documents.

j. Transient corrections/overshoots: the above-specified range of corrections should normally be used to make occasional momentary adjustments in order to maintain the desired path and energy of the aeroplane. Frequent or sustained overshoots should require the approach to be abandoned and a missed approach procedure initiated. A correction philosophy should be applied similar to that described in 5..

k. The relevant elements of 4. should, in addition, be applied to approaches not flown using the CDFA technique; the procedures thus developed thereby ensure a controlled flight path to MDA/H. Dependent upon the number of step down fixes and the aeroplane type or class, the aeroplane should be appropriately configured to ensure safe control of the flight path prior to the final descent to MDA/H.

5. Stabilisation of energy/speed and configuration of the aeroplane on the approach

a. The control of the descent path is not the only consideration. Control of the aeroplane's configuration and energy is also vital to the safe conduct of an approach.

b. The approach should be considered to be fully stabilised when the aeroplane is:

i. tracking on the required approach path and profile;

ii. in the required configuration and attitude;

iii. flying with the required rate of descent and speed; and

iv. flying with the appropriate thrust/power and trim.

c. The following flight path control criteria should be met and maintained when the aeroplane passes the gates described in 6. and 7..

d. The aeroplane is considered established on the required approach path at the appropriate energy for stable flight using the CDFA technique when:

i. it is tracking on the required approach path with the correct track set, approach aids tuned and identified as appropriate to the approach type flown and on the required vertical profile; and

ii. it is at the appropriate attitude and speed for the required target ROD with the appropriate thrust/power and trim.

e. It is recommended to compensate for strong wind/gusts on approach by speed increments given in the operations manual. To detect wind shear and magnitude of winds aloft, all available aeroplane equipment such as flight management system (FMS), inertial navigation system (INS), etc. should be used.

f. It is recommended that stabilisation during any straight-in approach without visual reference to the ground should be achieved at the latest when passing 1 000 ft above runway threshold elevation. For approaches with a designated vertical profile applying CDFA, a later stabilisation in speed may be acceptable if higher than normal approach speeds are required by ATC procedures or allowed by the operations manual. Stabilisation should, however, be achieved not later than 500 ft above runway threshold elevation.

g. For approaches where the pilot has visual reference with the ground, stabilisation should be achieved not later than 500 ft above aerodrome elevation. However, it is recommended that the aeroplane should be stabilised when passing 1 000 ft above runway threshold elevation; in the case of circling approaches flown after a CDFA, it is recommended that the aircraft be stabilised in the circling configuration not later than passing 1 000 ft above the runway elevation.

h. The relevant elements of 5. should, in addition, be applied to approaches not flown using the CDFA technique; the procedures thus developed ensure that a controlled and stable path to MDA/H is achieved. Dependent upon the number of step down fixes and the aeroplane type or class, the aeroplane should be appropriately configured to ensure safe and stable flight prior to the final descent to MDA/H.

6. Visual reference and path-control below MDA/H when not using the CDFA technique. In addition to the provisions stated in CAT.OP and its AMC material the pilot should have attained a combination of visual cues to safely control the aeroplane in roll and pitch to maintain the final approach path to landing. This should be included in the standard operating procedures and reflected in the operations manual.

7. Operational procedures and instructions for using the CDFA technique or not

a. The operator should establish procedures and instructions for flying approaches using the CDFA technique and not. These procedures should be included in the operations manual and should include the duties of the flight crew during the conduct of such operations. In addition,

i. the provisions stated in 4. and 5., as appropriate to the aeroplane type or class to be operated, should be specified; and

ii. the checklists should be completed as early as practicable and preferably before commencing final descent towards the DA/H.

b. The operations manuals should at least specify the maximum ROD for each aeroplane type or class operated and the required visual reference to continue the approach below:

i. the DA/H, when applying CDFA; and

ii. the MDA/H, when not applying CDFA.

c. The operator should establish procedures that prohibit level flight at MDA/H without the flight crew having obtained the required visual references. It is not the intention to prohibit level flight at MDA/H when conducting a circling approach, which does not come within the definition of the CDFA technique.

d. The operator should provide the flight crew with unambiguous details of the technique used (CDFA or not). The corresponding relevant minima should include:

i. type of decision, whether DA/H or MDA/H;

ii. MAPt as applicable; and

iii. appropriate RVR/Visibility for the approach classification and aeroplane category.

e. Specific types or classes of aeroplanes, in particular certain performance class B and performance class C aeroplanes, may be unable to comply fully with the requirements of this guidance relating to the operation of CDFA. This problem arises because some aeroplanes should not be configured fully into the landing configuration until required visual references are obtained for landing, because of inadequate missed approach performance engine out. For such aeroplanes, the operator should either:

i. submit to the competent authority an appropriate modification to the stipulated procedures and flight techniques prescribed herein; or

ii. increase the required minimum RVR to ensure the aeroplane will be operated safely during the configuration change on the final approach path to landing.

8. Training

a. Prior to using the CDFA technique or not, each flight crew member should undertake appropriate training and checking as required by OR.OPS.FC. Such training should cover the techniques and procedures appropriate to the operation which are stipulated in 4. and 5.. The operator's proficiency check should include at least one approach to a landing or missed approach as appropriate using the CDFA technique or not. The approach should be operated to the lowest appropriate DA/H or MDA/H, as appropriate; and, if conducted in a FSTD, the approach should be operated to the lowest approved RVR. The approach is not in addition to any manoeuvre currently required by either Part-FCL or Part-CAT. The requirement may be fulfilled by undertaking any currently required approach, engine out or otherwise, other than a precision approach, whilst using the CDFA technique.

b. The policy for the establishment of constant pre-determined vertical path and approach stability is to be enforced both during initial and recurrent pilot training and checking. The relevant training procedures and instructions should be documented in the operations manual.

c. The training should emphasise the need to establish and facilitate joint crew procedures and CRM to enable accurate descent path control and the requirement to establish the aeroplane in a stable condition as required by the operator's operational procedures. If barometric VNAV is used, the crews should be trained in awareness of the errors associated with these systems.

d. During training, emphasis should be placed on the flight crew's need to:

i. maintain situational awareness at all times, in particular with reference to the required vertical and horizontal profile;

ii. ensure good communication channels throughout the approach;

iii. ensure accurate descent-path control particularly during any manually-flown descent phase. The monitoring pilot should facilitate good flight path control by:

A. communicating any altitude/height crosschecks prior to the actual passing of the range/altitude or height crosscheck;

B. prompting, as appropriate, changes to the target ROD; and

C. monitoring flight path control below DA/MDA;

iv. understand the actions to be taken if the MAPt is reached prior to the MDA/H;

v. ensure that the decision for a missed approach is taken no later than when reaching the DA/H or MDA/H;

vi. ensure that prompt action for a missed approach is taken immediately when reaching DA/H if the required visual reference has not been obtained as there may be no obstacle protection if the missed approach procedure manoeuvre is delayed;

vii. understand the significance of using the CDFA technique to a DA/H with an associated MAPt and the implications of early missed approach manoeuvres; and

viii. understand the possible loss of the required visual reference due to pitch-change/climb when not using the CDFA technique for aeroplane types or classes that require a late change of configuration and/or speed to ensure the aeroplane is in the appropriate landing configuration.

e. Additional specific training when not using the CDFA technique with level flight at or above MDA/H

i. The training should detail:

A. the need to facilitate CRM with appropriate flight crew communication in particular;

B. the additional known safety risks associated with the 'dive-and-drive' approach philosophy which may be associated with non-CDFA;

C. the use of DA/H during approaches flown using the CDFA technique;

D. the significance of the MDA/H and the MAPt where appropriate;

E. the actions to be taken at the MAPt and the need to ensure that the aeroplane remains in a stable condition and on the nominal and appropriate vertical profile until the landing;

F. the reasons for increased RVR/Visibility minima when compared to the application of CDFA;

G. the possible increased obstacle infringement risk when undertaking level flight at MDA/H without the required visual references;

H. the need to accomplish a prompt missed approach manoeuvre if the required visual reference is lost;

I. the increased risk of an unstable final approach and an associated unsafe landing if a rushed approach is attempted either from:

1. inappropriate and close-in acquisition of the required visual reference; or

2. unstable aeroplane energy and or flight path control; and

J. the increased risk of CFIT.

9. Approaches requiring level flights

a. The procedures that are flown with level flight at/or above MDA/H should be listed in the operations manual.

b. Operators should categorise aerodromes where there are approaches that require level flight at/or above MDA/H as B or C. Such aerodrome categorisation will depend upon the operator's experience, operational exposure, training programme(s) and flight crew qualification(s).

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.115 Approach flight technique - aeroplanes

CONTINUOUS DESCENT FINAL APPROACH (CDFA)

1. Introduction

a. Controlled flight into terrain (CFIT) is a major hazard in aviation. Most CFIT accidents occur in the final approach segment of non-precision approaches; the use of stabilised-approach criteria on a continuous descent with a constant, predetermined vertical path is seen as a major improvement in safety during the conduct of such approaches. Operators should ensure that the following techniques are adopted as widely as possible, for all approaches.

b. The elimination of level flight segments at MDA close to the ground during approaches, and the avoidance of major changes in attitude and power/thrust close to the runway which can destabilise approaches, are seen as ways to reduce operational risks significantly.

c. The term CDFA has been selected to cover a technique for any type of non-precision approach.

d. Non-precision approaches operated other than using a constant pre-determined vertical path or when the facility requirements and associated conditions do not meet the conditions specified in AMC1-CAT.OP.115 1. and 2., RVR penalties apply. However, this should not preclude an operator from applying CDFA technique to such approaches. Those operations should be classified as special let down procedures, since it has been shown that such operations, flown without additional training, may lead to inappropriately steep descent to the MDA/H, with continued descent below the MDA/H in an attempt to gain (adequate) visual reference(s).

e. The advantages of CDFA are as follows:

   i. the technique enhances safe approach operations by the utilisation of standard operating practices;

   ii. the technique is similar to that used when flying an ILS approach, including when executing the missed approach and the associated missed approach procedure manoeuvre;

   iii. the aeroplane attitude may enable better acquisition of visual cues;

   iv. the technique may reduce pilot workload;

   v. the approach profile is fuel-efficient;

   vi. the approach profile affords reduced noise levels;

   vii. the technique affords procedural integration with APV approach operations; and

   viii. when used and the approach is flown in a stabilised manner, CDFA is the safest approach technique for all approach operations.

2. CDFA

a. Continuous descent final approach is defined in Annex I to the Cover Regulation Air Operations.

b. An approach is only suitable for application of a CDFA technique when it is flown along a pre-determined vertical approach slope which follows a:

   i. designated vertical profile: a continuous vertical approach profile which forms part of the approach procedure design. APV is considered to be an approach with a designated vertical profile; or

   ii. nominal vertical profile: a vertical profile not forming part of the approach procedure design, but which can be flown as a continuous descent. The nominal vertical profile information may be published or displayed on the approach chart to the pilot by depicting the nominal slope or range/distance vs. height. Approaches with a nominal vertical profile are considered to be:

      A. NDB, NDB/DME;

      B. VOR, VOR/DME;

      C. LOC, LOC/DME;

      D. VDF, SRA; or

      E. GNSS/LNAV.

c. Stabilised approach (SAp) is defined in Annex I to the Cover Regulation Air Operations.

i. The control of the descent path is not the only consideration when using the CDFA technique. Control of the aeroplane's configuration and energy is also vital to the safe conduct of an approach.

ii. The control of the flight path, described above as one of the requirements for conducting an SAp, should not be confused with the path requirements for using the CDFA technique. The pre-determined path requirements for conducting an SAp are established by the operator and published in the operations manual part B.

iii. The pre-determined approach slope requirements for applying the CDFA technique are established by the following:

A. the instrument-procedure design when the approach has a designated vertical profile;

B. the published 'nominal' slope information when the approach has a nominal vertical profile; and

C. the designated final-approach segment minimum of 3 NM, and maximum, when using timing techniques, of 8 NM.

iv. An SAp will never have any level segment of flight at DA/H or MDA/H as applicable. This enhances safety by mandating a prompt missed approach procedure manoeuvre at DA/H or MDA/H.

v. An approach using the CDFA technique will always be flown as an SAp, since this is a requirement for applying CDFA. However, an SAp does not have to be flown using the CDFA technique, for example a visual approach.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.120 Airborne radar approaches (ARAs) for overwater operations - helicopters

GENERAL

1. Before commencing the final approach the commander should ensure that a clear path exists on the radar screen for the final and missed approach segments. If lateral clearance from any obstacle will be less than 1 NM, the commander should:

   a. approach to a nearby target structure and thereafter proceed visually to the destination structure; or

   b. make the approach from another direction leading to a circling manoeuvre.

2. The cloud ceiling should be sufficiently clear above the helideck to permit a safe landing.

3. MDH should not be less than 50 ft above the elevation of the helideck.

   a. The MDH for an airborne radar approach should not be lower than:

      i. 200 ft by day; or

      ii. 300 ft by night.

b. The MDH for an approach leading to a circling manoeuvre should not be lower than:

   i. 300 ft by day; or

   ii. 500 ft by night.

4. MDA may only be used if the radio altimeter is unserviceable. The MDA should be a minimum of MDH +200 ft and should be based on a calibrated barometer at the destination or on the lowest forecast QNH for the region.

5. The decision range should not be less than ¾ NM.

6. The MDA/H for a single-pilot ARA should be 100 ft higher than that calculated using 3. and 4. above. The decision range should not be less than 1 NM.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.120 Airborne radar approaches (ARAs) for overwater operations - helicopters

GENERAL

1. General

   a. The helicopter ARA procedure may have as many as five separate segments. These are the arrival, initial, intermediate, final, and missed approach segments. In addition, the requirements of the circling manoeuvre to a landing under visual conditions should be considered. The individual approach segments can begin and end at designated fixes, however, the segments of an ARA may often begin at specified points where no fixes are available.

   b. The fixes, or points, are named to coincide with the associated segment. For example, the intermediate segment begins at the intermediate fix (IF) and ends at the final approach fix (FAF). Where no fix is available or appropriate, the segments begin and end at specified points; for example, intermediate point (IP) and final approach point (FAP). The order in which this guidance material discusses the segments is the order in which the pilot would fly them in a complete procedure: that is, from the arrival through initial and intermediate to a final approach and, if necessary, the missed approach.

   c. Only those segments that are required by local conditions applying at the time of the approach need be included in a procedure. In constructing the procedure, the final approach track, which should be orientated so as to be substantially into wind should be identified first as it is the least flexible and most critical of all the segments. When the origin and the orientation of the final approach have been determined, the other necessary segments should be integrated with it to produce an orderly manoeuvring pattern that does not generate an unacceptably high work-load for the flight crew.

   d. Examples of ARA procedures, vertical profile and missed approach procedures are contained in Figures 1 to 5.

2. Obstacle environment

a. Each segment of the ARA is located in an overwater area that has a flat surface at sea level. However, due to the passage of large vessels which are not required to notify their presence, the exact obstacle environment cannot be determined. As the largest vessels and structures are known to reach elevations exceeding 500 ft above mean sea level (AMSL), the uncontrolled offshore obstacle environment applying to the arrival, initial and intermediate approach segments can reasonably be assumed to be capable of reaching to at least 500 ft AMSL. But, in the case of the final approach and missed approach segments, specific areas are involved within which no radar returns are allowed. In these areas the height of wave crests and the possibility that small obstacles may be present that are not visible on radar results in an uncontrolled surface environment that extends to an elevation of 50 ft AMSL.

b. Under normal circumstances, the relationship between the approach procedure and the obstacle environment is governed according to the concept that vertical separation is very easy to apply during the arrival, initial and intermediate segments, while horizontal separation, which is much more difficult to guarantee in an uncontrolled environment, is applied only in the final and missed approach segments.

3. Arrival segment

The arrival segment commences at the last en-route navigation fix, where the aircraft leaves the helicopter route, and it ends either at the initial approach fix (IAF) or, if no course reversal, or similar manoeuvre is required, it ends at the IF. Standard en-route obstacle clearance criteria should be applied to the arrival segment.

4. Initial approach segment

The initial approach segment is only required if a course reversal, race track, or arc procedure is necessary to join the intermediate approach track. The segment commences at the IAF and on completion of the manoeuvre ends at the IP. The minimum obstacle clearance (MOC) assigned to the initial approach segment is 1 000 ft.

5. Intermediate approach segment

The intermediate approach segment commences at the IP, or in the case of straight-in approaches, where there is no initial approach segment, it commences at the IF. The segment ends at the FAP and should not be less than 2 NM in length. The purpose of the intermediate segment is to align and prepare the helicopter for the final approach. During the intermediate segment the helicopter should be lined up with the final approach track, the speed should be stabilised, the destination should be identified on the radar, and the final approach and missed approach areas should be identified and verified to be clear of radar returns. The MOC assigned to the intermediate segment is 500 ft.

6. Final approach segment

a. The final approach segment commences at the FAP and ends at the missed approach point (MAPt). The final approach area, which should be identified on radar, takes the form of a corridor between the FAP and the radar return of the destination. This corridor should not be less than 2 NM wide in order that the projected track of the helicopter does not pass closer than 1 NM to the obstacles lying outside the area.

b. On passing the FAP, the helicopter will descend below the intermediate approach altitude, and follow a descent gradient which should not be steeper than 6.5 %. At this stage vertical separation from the offshore obstacle environment will be lost. However, within the final approach area the MDA/H will provide separation from the surface environment. Descent from 1 000 ft AMSL to 200 ft AMSL at a constant 6.5 % gradient will involve a horizontal distance of 2 NM. In order to follow the guideline that the procedure should not generate an unacceptably high work-load for the flight crew, the required actions of levelling at MDH, changing heading at the offset initiation point (OIP), and turning away at MAPt should not be planned to occur at the same time. Consequently, the FAP should not normally be located at less than 4 NM from the destination.

c. During the final approach, compensation for drift should be applied and the heading which, if maintained, would take the helicopter directly to the destination, should be identified. It follows that, at an OIP located at a range of 1.5 NM, a heading change of 10° is likely to result in a track offset of 15° at 1 NM, and the extended centreline of the new track can be expected to have a mean position lying some 300 - 400 m to one side of the destination structure. The safety margin built in to the 0.75 NM decision range (DR) is dependent upon the rate of closure with the destination. Although the airspeed should be in the range 60/90 kt during the final approach, the ground speed, after due allowance for wind velocity, should be no greater than 70 kt.

7. Missed approach segment

a. The missed approach segment commences at the MAPt and ends when the helicopter reaches minimum en-route altitude. The missed approach manoeuvre is a "turning missed approach" which should be of not less than 30° and should not, normally, be greater than 45°. A turn away of more than 45° does not reduce the collision risk factor any further, nor will it permit a closer DR. However, turns of more than 45° may increase the risk of pilot disorientation and, by inhibiting the rate of climb (especially in the case of an OEI missed approach procedure), may keep the helicopter at an extremely low level for longer than is desirable.

b. The missed approach area to be used should be identified and verified as a clear area on the radar screen during the intermediate approach segment. The base of the missed approach area is a sloping surface at 2.5 % gradient starting from MDH at the MAPt. The concept is that a helicopter executing a turning missed approach will be protected by the horizontal boundaries of the missed approach area until vertical separation of more than 130 ft is achieved between the base of the area, and the offshore obstacle environment of 500 ft AMSL which prevails outside the area.

c. A missed approach area, taking the form of a 45° sector orientated left or right of the final approach track, originating from a point 5 NM short of the destination, and terminating on an arc 3 NM beyond the destination, will normally satisfy the requirements of a 30° turning missed approach.

8. The required visual reference

The visual reference required is that the destination should be in view in order that a safe landing may be carried out.

9. Radar equipment

During the ARA procedure, colour mapping radar equipment with a 120° sector scan and 2.5 NM range scale selected, may result in dynamic errors of the following order:

a. bearing/tracking error ±4.5° with 95 % accuracy;

b. mean ranging error -250 m; or

c. random ranging error ±250 m with 95 % accuracy.

Figure 1 of GM1-CAT.OP.AH.120.H Arc procedure

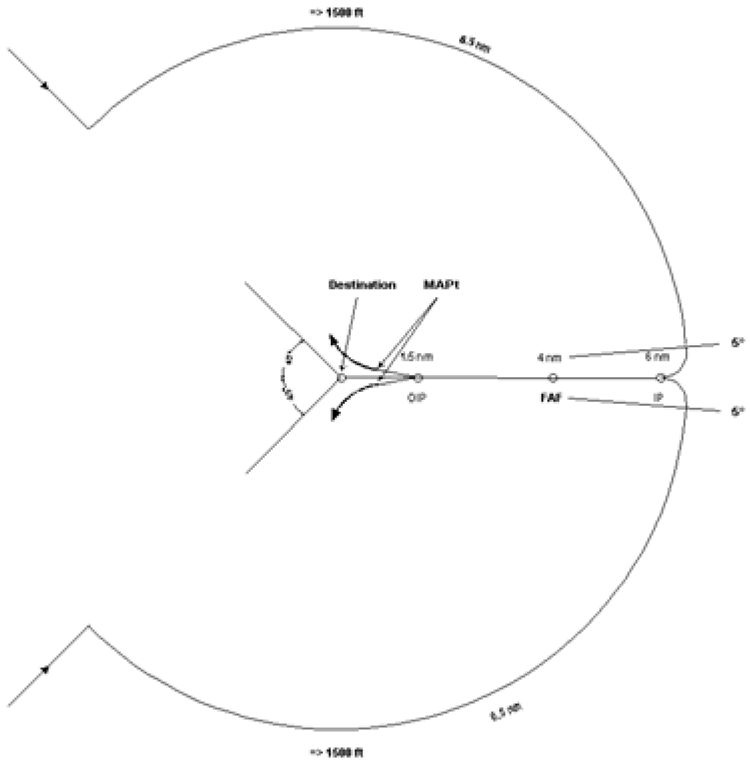


Figure 2 of GM1-CAT.OP.AH.120.H Base turn procedure – direct approach

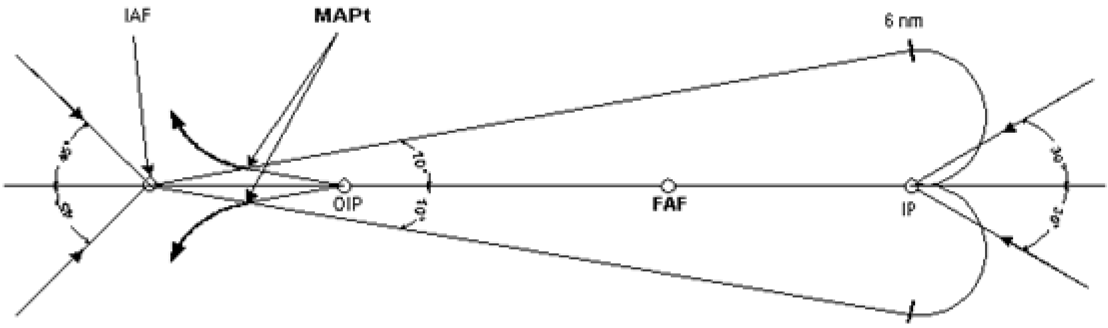


Figure 3 of GM1-CAT.OP.AH.120.H Holding pattern & race track procedure

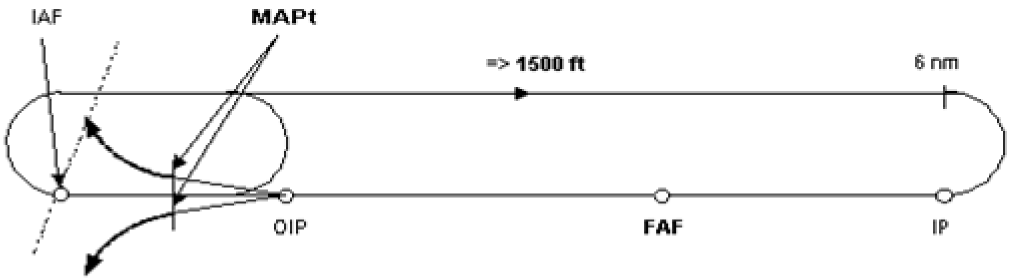


Figure 4 of GM1-CAT.OP.AH.120.H Vertical profile

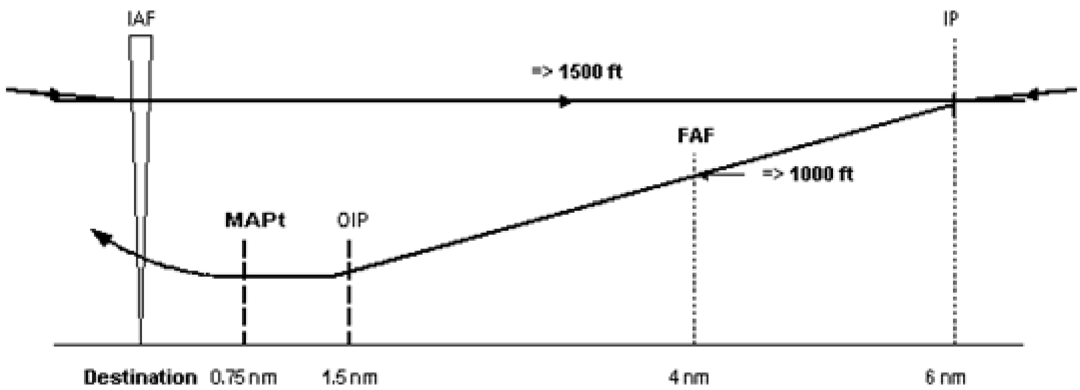
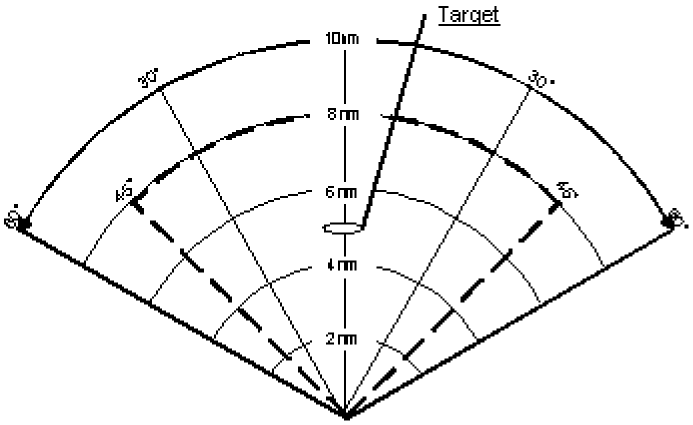


Figure 5 of GM1-CAT.OP.AH.120.H Missed approach area left & right



AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.130 Noise abatement procedures

NDAP DESIGN - AEROPLANES

1. For each aeroplane type two departure procedures should be defined, in accordance with ICAO Doc. 8168 (Procedures for Air Navigation Services, "PANS-OPS"), Volume I:
   a. noise abatement departure procedure one (NADP 1), designed to meet the close-in noise abatement objective; and
   b. noise abatement departure procedure two (NADP 2), designed to meet the distant noise abatement objective.
2. For each type of NADP (1 and 2), a single climb profile should be specified for use at all aerodromes, which is associated with a single sequence of actions. The NADP 1 and NADP2 profiles may be identical.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.130 Noise abatement procedures

TERMINOLOGY

1. 'Climb profile' means in this context the vertical path of the NADP as it results from the pilot's actions (engine power reduction, acceleration, slats/flaps retraction).
2. 'Sequence of actions' means the order in which these pilot's actions are done and their timing.

GENERAL

3. The requirement addresses only the vertical profile of the departure procedure. Lateral track has to comply with the Standard Instrument Departure (SID).

EXAMPLE

4. For a given aeroplane type, when establishing the distant NADP, the operator should choose either to reduce power first and then accelerate, or to accelerate first

and then wait until slats/flaps are retracted before reducing power. The two methods constitute two different sequences of actions.

5. For an aeroplane type, each of the two departure climb profiles may be defined by one sequence of actions (one for close-in, one for distant) and two above aerodrome level (AAL) altitudes/heights. These are:

   a. the altitude of the first pilot's action (generally power reduction with or without acceleration). This altitude should not be less than 800 ft AAL; or

   b. the altitude of the end of the noise abatement procedure. This altitude should usually not be more than 3 000 ft AAL.

   These two altitudes may be runway specific when the aeroplane flight management system (FMS) has the relevant function which permits the crew to change thrust reduction and/or acceleration altitude/height. If the aeroplane is not FMS equipped or the FMS is not fitted with the relevant function, two fixed heights should be defined and used for each of the two NADPs.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.137(a)(2) Routes and areas of operation - helicopters

COASTAL TRANSIT

1. General

   a. A helicopter operating overwater in performance class 3 has to have certain equipment fitted. This equipment varies with the distance from land that the helicopter is expected to operate. The aim of this GM is to discuss that distance, bring into focus what fit is required and to clarify the operator's responsibility, when a decision is made to conduct coastal transit operations.

   b. In the case of operations north of 45N or south of 45S, the coastal corridor facility may or may not be available in a particular state, as it is related to the State definition of open sea area as described in the definition of hostile environment.

   c. Where the term 'coastal transit' is used, it means the conduct of operations overwater within the coastal corridor in conditions where there is reasonable expectation that

      i. the flight can be conducted safely in the conditions prevailing;

      ii. following an engine failure, a safe forced landing and successful evacuation can be achieved; and

      survival of the crew and passengers can be assured until rescue is effected.

   d. Coastal corridor is a variable distance from the coastline to a maximum distance corresponding to three minutes' flying at normal cruising speed.

2. Establishing the width of the coastal corridor

   a. The maximum distance from land of coastal transit, is defined as the boundary of a corridor that extends from the land, to a maximum distance of up to three minutes at normal cruising speed (approximately 5 - 6 NM). Land in this context includes sustainable ice (see a. to c. below) and, where the coastal region includes islands, the surrounding waters may be included in the corridor and aggregated with the coast and each other. Coastal transit need not be applied to inland waterways, estuary crossing or river transit.

i. In some areas, the formation of ice is such that it can be possible to land, or force land, without hazard to the helicopter or occupants. Unless the competent authority considers that operating to, or over, such ice fields is unacceptable, the operator may regard the definition of the "land" extends to these areas.

ii. The interpretation of the following rules may be conditional on a. above:

CAT.OP.AH.137(a)(2)

CAT.IDE.H.290

CAT.IDE.H.295

CAT.IDE.H.300

CAT.IDE.H.320.

iii. In view of the fact that such featureless and flat white surfaces could present a hazard and could lead to white-out conditions, the definition of land does not extend to flights over ice fields in the following rules:

CAT.IDE.H.125, (d)

CAT.IDE.H.145.

b. The width of the corridor is variable from not safe to conduct operations in the conditions prevailing, to the maximum of three minutes wide. A number of factors will, on the day, indicate if it can be used - and how wide it can be. These factors will include but not be restricted to:

i. the meteorological conditions prevailing in the corridor;

ii. the instrument fit of the aircraft;

iii. the certification of the aircraft - particularly with regard to floats;

iv. the sea state;

v. the temperature of the water;

vi. the time to rescue; and

vii. the survival equipment carried.

c. These can be broadly divided into three functional groups:

i. those which meet the requirement for safe flying – b.i. and ii.;

b. those which meet the requirement for a safe forced landing and evacuation – b.i. to iv.; and

c. those which meet the requirement for survival following a forced landing and successful evacuation – b.i., iv. to vii..

3. Requirement for safe flying

   a. It is generally recognised that when flying out of sight of land in certain meteorological conditions, such as occur in high pressure weather patterns (goldfish bowl - no horizon, light winds and low visibility), the absence of a basic panel (and training) can lead to disorientation. In addition, lack of depth perception in these conditions demands the use of a radio altimeter with an audio voice warning as an added safety benefit - particularly when autorotation to the surface of the water may be required.

   b. In these conditions a helicopter, without the required instruments and radio altimeter, should be confined to a corridor in which the pilot can maintain reference using the visual cues on the land.

4. Requirement for a safe forced landing and evacuation

   a. Weather and sea state both affect the outcome of an autorotation following an engine failure. It is recognised that the measurement of sea state is problematical and when assessing such conditions, good judgement has to be exercised by the operator and the commander.

   b. Where floats have been certificated only for emergency use (and not for ditching), operations should be limited to those sea states which meet the requirement for such use - where a safe evacuation is possible.

      Ditching certification requires compliance with a comprehensive number of requirements relating to rotorcraft water entry, flotation and trim, occupant egress and occupant survival. Emergency flotation systems, generally fitted to smaller CS-27 rotorcraft, are approved against a broad requirement that the equipment should perform its intended function and not hazard the rotorcraft or its occupants. In practice, the most significant difference between ditching and emergency flotation systems is substantiation of the water entry phase. Ditching requirements call for water entry procedures and techniques to be established and promulgated in the AFM. The fuselage/flotation equipment should thereafter be shown to be able to withstand loads under defined water entry conditions which relate to these procedures. For emergency flotation equipment, there is no requirement to define the water entry technique and no specific conditions defined for the structural substantiation.

5. Requirements for survival

   a. Survival of crew members and passengers, following a successful autorotation and evacuation, is dependent on the clothing worn, the equipment carried and worn, the temperature of the sea and the sea state. Search and rescue response/capability consistent with the anticipated exposure should be available before the conditions in the corridor can be considered non-hostile.

   b. Coastal transit can be conducted (including north of 45N and south of 45S - when the definition of open sea areas allows) providing the requirements of 3. and 4. are met, and the conditions for a non-hostile coastal corridor are satisfied.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.140 Maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome for two-engined aeroplanes without an ETOPS approval

ONE-ENGINE-INOPERATIVE (OEI) CRUISING SPEED

The OEI cruising speed is intended to be used solely for establishing the maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.145(a) Establishment of minimum flight altitudes

CONSIDERATIONS FOR ESTABLISHING MINIMUM FLIGHT ALTITUDES

1. The operator should take into account the following factors when establishing minimum flight altitudes:
   a. the accuracy with which the position of the aircraft can be determined;
   b. the probable inaccuracies in the indications of the altimeters used;
   c. the characteristics of the terrain, such as sudden changes in the elevation, along the routes or in the areas where operations are to be conducted;
   d. the probability of encountering unfavourable meteorological conditions, such as severe turbulence and descending air currents; and
   e. possible inaccuracies in aeronautical charts.
2. The operator should also consider:
   a. corrections for temperature and pressure variations from standard values;
   b. ATC requirements; and
   c. any foreseeable contingencies along the planned route.

VFR OPERATIONS OF OTHER-THAN-COMPLEX MOTOR-POWERED AIRCRAFT BY DAY

3. For VFR operations of other-than-complex motor-powered aircraft by day, the safety objective should be satisfied if the operator ensures that operations are only conducted along such routes or within such areas for which a safe terrain clearance can be maintained and take account of such factors as temperature, terrain and unfavourable meteorological conditions.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.150 Fuel policy

PROCEDURES - AEROPLANES

The operator should base the defined fuel policy, including calculation of the amount of fuel to be on board for departure, on the following planning criteria:

1. Basic procedure

   The usable fuel to be on board for departure should be the sum of:

   a. Taxi fuel, which should not be less than the amount, expected to be used prior to take-off. Local conditions at the departure aerodrome and auxiliary power unit (APU) consumption should be taken into account.

b. Trip fuel, which should include:

   i. fuel for take-off and climb from aerodrome elevation to initial cruising level/altitude, taking into account the expected departure routing; and

   ii. fuel from top of climb to top of descent, including any step climb/descent; and

   iii. fuel from top of descent to the point where the approach is initiated, taking into account the expected arrival procedure; and

   iv. fuel for approach and landing at the destination aerodrome.

c. Contingency fuel, except as provided for in 2. below, which should be the higher of:

   i. Either:

      A. 5 % of the planned trip fuel or, in the event of in-flight replanning, 5 % of the trip fuel for the remainder of the flight;

      B. not less than 3 % of the planned trip fuel or, in the event of in-flight replanning, 3 % of the trip fuel for the remainder of the flight, provided that an en-route alternate aerodrome is available;

      C. an amount of fuel sufficient for 20 minutes flying time based upon the planned trip fuel consumption, provided that the operator has established a fuel consumption monitoring programme for individual aeroplanes and uses valid data determined by means of such a programme for fuel calculation; or

      D. an amount of fuel based on a statistical method that ensures an appropriate statistical coverage of the deviation from the planned to the actual trip fuel. This method is used to monitor the fuel consumption on each city pair/aeroplane combination and the operator uses this data for a statistical analysis to calculate contingency fuel for that city pair/aeroplane combination;

   ii. or an amount to fly for 5 minutes at holding speed at 1 500 ft (450 m), above the destination aerodrome in standard conditions.

d. Alternate fuel, which should:

   i. include:

      A. fuel for a missed approach from the applicable DA/H or MDA/H at the destination aerodrome to missed approach altitude, taking into account the complete missed approach procedure;

      B. fuel for climb from missed approach altitude to cruising level/altitude, taking into account the expected departure routing;

      C. fuel for cruise from top of climb to top of descent, taking into account the expected routing;

D. fuel for descent from top of descent to the point where the approach is initiated, taking into account the expected arrival procedure; and

E. fuel for executing an approach and landing at the destination alternate aerodrome;

ii. where two destination alternate aerodromes are required, be sufficient to proceed to the alternate aerodrome that requires the greater amount of alternate fuel.

e. Final reserve fuel, which should be:

i. for aeroplanes with reciprocating engines, fuel to fly for 45 minutes; or

ii. for aeroplanes with turbine engines, fuel to fly for 30 minutes at holding speed at 1 500 ft (450 m) above aerodrome elevation in standard conditions, calculated with the estimated mass on arrival at the destination alternate aerodrome or the destination aerodrome, when no destination alternate aerodrome is required.

f. The minimum additional fuel, which should permit:

i. the aeroplane to descend as necessary and proceed to an adequate alternate aerodrome in the event of engine failure or loss of pressurisation, whichever requires the greater amount of fuel based on the assumption that such a failure occurs at the most critical point along the route, and

A. hold there for 15 minutes at 1 500 ft (450 m) above aerodrome elevation in standard conditions; and

B. make an approach and landing,

except that additional fuel is only required, if the minimum amount of fuel calculated in accordance with 1.b. to 1.e. above is not sufficient for such an event; and

ii. holding for 15 minutes at 1 500 ft (450 m) above destination aerodrome elevation in standard conditions, when a flight is operated without a destination alternate aerodrome.

g. Extra fuel, which should be at the discretion of the commander.

2. RCF procedure

If the operator's fuel policy includes pre-flight planning to a destination 1 aerodrome (commercial destination) with a reduced contingency fuel procedure using a decision point along the route and a destination 2 aerodrome (optional refuel destination), the amount of usable fuel, on board for departure, should be the greater of 2.a. or 2.b. below:

a. The sum of:

i. taxi fuel;

ii. trip fuel to the destination 1 aerodrome, via the decision point;

iii. contingency fuel equal to not less than 5 % of the estimated fuel consumption from the decision point to the destination 1 aerodrome;

iv. alternate fuel or no alternate fuel if the decision point is at less than six hours from the destination 1 aerodrome and the requirements of CAT.OP.AH.180, (b)(1)(ii), are fulfilled;

v. final reserve fuel;

vi. additional fuel; and

vii. extra fuel if required by the commander.

b. The sum of:

i. taxi fuel;

ii. trip fuel to the destination 2 aerodrome, via the decision point;

iii. contingency fuel equal to not less than the amount calculated in accordance with 1.c. above from departure aerodrome to the destination 2 aerodrome;

iv. alternate fuel, if a destination 2 alternate aerodrome is required;

v. final reserve fuel;

vi. additional fuel; and

vii. extra fuel if required by the commander.

3. PDP procedure

If the operator's fuel policy includes planning to a destination alternate aerodrome where the distance between the destination aerodrome and the destination alternate aerodrome is such that a flight can only be routed via a predetermined point to one of these aerodromes, the amount of usable fuel, on board for departure, should be the greater of 3.a. or 3.b. below:

a. the sum of:

i. taxi fuel;

ii. trip fuel from the departure aerodrome to the destination aerodrome, via the predetermined point;

iii. contingency fuel calculated in accordance with 1.c. above;

iv. additional fuel if required, but not less than:

A. for aeroplanes with reciprocating engines, fuel to fly for 45 minutes plus 15 % of the flight time planned to be spent at cruising level or two hours, whichever is less; or

B. for aeroplanes with turbine engines, fuel to fly for two hours at normal cruise consumption above the destination aerodrome;

this should not be less than final reserve fuel; and

v. extra fuel if required by the commander;

or

b. the sum of:

   i. taxi fuel;

   ii. trip fuel from the departure aerodrome to the destination alternate aerodrome, via the predetermined point;

   iii. contingency fuel calculated in accordance with 1.c. above;

   iv. additional fuel if required, but not less than:

      A. for aeroplanes with reciprocating engines: fuel to fly for 45 minutes; or

      B. for aeroplanes with turbine engines: fuel to fly for 30 minutes at holding speed at 1 500 ft (450 m) above the destination alternate aerodrome elevation in standard conditions.

   this should not be less than final reserve fuel; and

   v. extra fuel if required by the commander.

4. Isolated aerodrome procedure

   If the operator's fuel policy includes planning to an isolated aerodrome, the last possible point of diversion to any available en-route alternate aerodrome should be used as the predetermined point.

LOCATION OF THE FUEL EN-ROUTE ALTERNATE (FUEL ERA) AERODROME

1. The fuel ERA aerodrome should be located within a circle having a radius equal to 20 % of the total flight plan distance, the centre of which lies on the planned route at a distance from the destination aerodrome of 25 % of the total flight plan distance, or at least 20 % of the total flight plan distance plus 50 NM, whichever is greater. All distances should be calculated in still air conditions (see Figure 1).

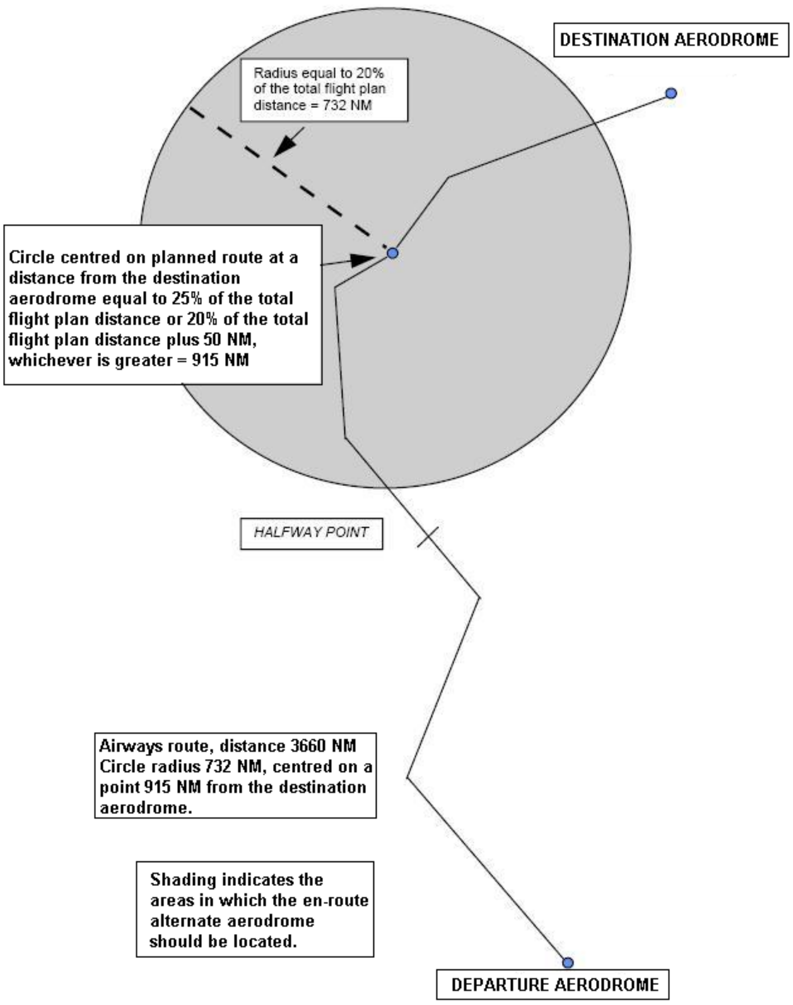


Figure 1: Location of the fuel ERA aerodrome for the purposes of reducing contingency fuel to 3 %

PLANNING CRITERIA - HELCIOPTER

The operator should base the company fuel policy, including calculation of the amount of fuel to be carried, on the following planning criteria:

1. The amount of:

   a. taxi fuel, which should not be less than the amount expected to be used prior to take-off. Local conditions at the departure site and APU consumption should be taken into account;

   b. trip fuel, which should include:

      i. fuel for take-off and climb from aerodrome elevation to initial cruising level/altitude, taking into account the expected departure routing;

      ii. fuel from top of climb to top of descent, including any step climb/descent;

      iii. fuel from top of descent to the point where the approach procedure is initiated, taking into account the expected arrival procedure; and

      iv. fuel for approach and landing at the destination site.

   c. contingency fuel, which should be:

      i. for IFR flights, or for VFR flights in a hostile environment, 10 % of the planned trip fuel; or

      ii. for VFR flights in a non-hostile environment, 5 % of the planned trip fuel;

   d. alternate fuel, which should be:

      i. fuel for a missed approach from the applicable MDA/DH at the destination aerodrome to missed approach altitude, taking into account the complete missed approach procedure;

      ii. fuel for a climb from missed approach altitude to cruising level/altitude;

      iii. fuel for the cruise from top of climb to top of descent;

      iv. fuel for descent from top of descent to the point where the approach is initiated, taking into account the expected arrival procedure;

      v. fuel for executing an approach and landing at the destination alternate selected in accordance with CAT.OP.AH.181; and

      vi. or helicopters operating to or from helidecks located in a hostile environment, 10 % of 1.d.i. to v. above.

   e. final reserve fuel, which should be:

      i. for VFR flights navigating by day with reference to visual landmarks, 20 minutes' fuel at best range speed; or

      ii. for IFR flights or when flying VFR and navigating by means other than by reference to visual landmarks or at night, fuel to fly for 30 minutes at holding speed at 1 500 ft (450 m) above the destination aerodrome in standard conditions calculated with the estimated mass on arrival above the alternate, or the destination, when no alternate is required;

and

f. extra fuel, which should be at the discretion of the commander.

2. Isolated aerodrome IFR procedure

If the operator's fuel policy includes planning to an isolated aerodrome flying IFR, or when flying VFR and navigating by means other than by reference to visual landmarks, for which a destination alternate does not exist, the amount of fuel at departure should include:

a. taxi fuel;

b. trip fuel;

c. contingency fuel calculated in accordance with 1.c. above;

d. additional fuel to fly for two hours at holding speed, including final reserve fuel; and

e. extra fuel at the discretion of the commander.

3. Sufficient fuel should be carried at all times to ensure that following the failure of an engine occurring at the most critical point along the route, the helicopter is able to:

a. descend as necessary and proceed to an adequate aerodrome;

b. hold there for 15 minutes at 1 500 ft (450 m) above aerodrome elevation in standard conditions; and

c. make an approach and landing.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.150 Fuel policy

CONTINGENCY FUEL STATISTICAL METHOD - AEROPLANES

1. As an example, the following values of statistical coverage of the deviation from the planned to the actual trip fuel provide appropriate statistical coverage.

a. 99 % coverage plus 3 % of the trip fuel, if the calculated flight time is less than two hours, or more than two hours and no suitable ERA aerodrome is available.

b. 99 % coverage if the calculated flight time is more than two hours and a suitable ERA aerodrome is available.

c. 90 % coverage if:

i. the calculated flight time is more than two hours;

ii. a suitable ERA aerodrome is available; and

iii. at the destination aerodrome two separate runways are available and usable, one of which is equipped with an ILS/MLS, and the weather conditions are in compliance with GM1-CAT.OP.AH.180, or the ILS/MLS is operational to CAT II/III operating minima and the weather conditions are at or above 500 ft.

2. The fuel consumption database used in conjunction with these values should be based on fuel consumption monitoring for each route/aeroplane combination over a rolling two-year period.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.150(c)(3)(i) Fuel policy

CONTINGENCY FUEL

Factors that may influence fuel required on a particular flight in an unpredictable way include deviations of an individual aeroplane from the expected fuel consumption data, deviations from forecast meteorological conditions and deviations from planned routings and/or cruising levels/altitudes.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.150(c)(3)(ii) Fuel policy

DESTINATION ALTERNATE AERODROME

The departure aerodrome may be selected as the destination alternate aerodrome.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.155 Carriage of special categories of passengers (SCPs)

GENERAL

The procedures established by the operator for the carriage of special categories of passengers should take into account:

1. the number and the categories of such passengers;
2. the total number of passengers carried on board;
3. the aircraft type and cabin configuration; and
3. the number and composition of the operating crew.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.155 Carriage of special categories of passengers (SCPs)

GENERAL

Persons who should be considered as special categories of passengers requiring special conditions, assistance and/or devices when carried on a flight, include:

1. persons with reduced mobility (PRMs); this is understood to mean persons whose mobility is reduced due to physical incapacity, (sensory or locomotory), an intellectual deficiency, age, illness or any other cause of disability;
2. children (whether accompanied or not) and infants;
3. passengers with animals; and
4. deportees, inadmissible passengers or prisoners in custody.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.160 Stowage of baggage and cargo

STOWAGE PROCEDURES

Procedures established by the operator to ensure that hand baggage and cargo are adequately and securely stowed should take account of the following:

1. each item carried in a cabin should be stowed only in a location that is capable of restraining it;
2. mass limitations placarded on or adjacent to stowages should not be exceeded;
3. under seat stowages should not be used unless the seat is equipped with a restraint bar and the baggage is of such size that it may adequately be restrained by this equipment;
4. items should not be stowed in lavatories or against bulkheads that are incapable of restraining articles against movement forwards, sideways or upwards and unless the bulkheads carry a placard specifying the greatest mass that may be placed there;
5. baggage and cargo placed in lockers should not be of such size that they prevent latched doors from being closed securely;
6. baggage and cargo should not be placed where it can impede access to emergency equipment; and
7. checks should be made before take-off, before landing, and whenever the fasten seat belts signs are illuminated or it is otherwise so ordered to ensure that baggage is stowed where it cannot impede evacuation from the aircraft or cause injury by falling (or other movement) as may be appropriate to the phase of flight.

CARRIAGE OF CARGO IN THE PASSENGER CABIN

The following should be observed before carrying cargo in the passenger compartment:

1. for aeroplanes, dangerous goods should not be allowed;
2. for aeroplanes, a mix of passengers and live animals should only be allowed for pets weighing not more than 8 kg and guide dogs;
3. the mass of cargo should not exceed the structural loading limits of the floor or seats;
4. the number/type of restraint devices and their attachment points should be capable of restraining the cargo in accordance with applicable certification specifications; and
5. the location of the cargo should be such that, in the event of an emergency evacuation, it will not hinder egress nor impair the crew’s view.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.165 Passenger seating

PROCEDURES

1. The operator should make provision so that:

   a. those passengers who are allocated seats that permit direct access to emergency exits appear to be reasonably fit, strong and able to assist the rapid evacuation of the aircraft in an emergency after an appropriate briefing by the crew;

   b. in all cases, passengers who, because of their condition, might hinder other passengers during an evacuation or who might impede the crew in carrying out their duties, should not be allocated seats that permit direct access to emergency exits. If procedures cannot be reasonably implemented at the time of passenger 'check-in', the operator should establish an alternative procedure which ensures that the correct seat allocations will, in due course, be made.

2. 1. above should not apply to aircraft where the normal exit also serves as an emergency exit. However in these circumstances, the operator should ensure when choosing passengers to sit next to a normal exit, that evacuation is not hindered in the case of an emergency.

ACCESS TO EMERGENCY EXITS

3. The following categories of passengers are among those who should not be allocated to, or directed to seats that permit direct access to emergency exits:

   a. passengers suffering from obvious physical or mental handicap to the extent that they would have difficulty in moving quickly if asked to do so;

   b. passengers who are either substantially blind or substantially deaf to the extent that they might not readily assimilate printed or verbal instructions given;

   c. passengers who because of age or sickness are so frail that they have difficulty in moving quickly;

   d. passengers who are so obese that they would have difficulty in moving quickly or reaching and passing through the adjacent emergency exit;

   e. children (whether accompanied or not) and infants;

   f. deportees or persons in custody; and

   g. passengers with animals.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.165 Passenger seating

"Direct access" means a seat from which a passenger can proceed directly to the exit without entering an aisle or passing around an obstruction.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.170 Passenger briefing

PASSENGER BRIEFING

Passenger briefings should contain the following:

1. Before take-off
    a. passengers should be briefed on the following items if applicable:
        i. smoking regulations;
        ii. back of the seat to be in the upright position and tray table stowed;
        iii. location of emergency exits;
        iv. location and use of floor proximity escape path markings;
        v. stowage of hand baggage;
        vi. restrictions on the use of portable electronic devices; and
        vii. the location and the contents of the safety briefing card;

    and

    b. passengers should receive a demonstration of the following:
        i. the use of safety belts or safety harnesses, including how to fasten and unfasten the safety belts or safety harnesses;
        ii. the location and use of oxygen equipment, if required. Passengers should also be briefed to extinguish all smoking materials when oxygen is being used; and
        iii. the location and use of life-jackets, if required.
2. After take-off
    a. passengers should be reminded of the following, if applicable:
        i. smoking regulations; and
        ii. use of safety belts or safety harnesses including the safety benefits of having safety belts fastened when seated irrespective of seat belt sign illumination.
3. Before landing
    a. passengers should be reminded of the following, if applicable:
        i. smoking regulations;
        ii. use of safety belts or safety harnesses;
        iii. back of the seat to be in the upright position and tray table stowed;
        iv. re-stowage of hand baggage; and
        v. restrictions on the use of portable electronic devices.
4. After landing
    a. passengers should be reminded of the following:

i. smoking regulations; and

ii. use of safety belts and/or safety harnesses.

TRAINING PROGRAMME

1. The operator may replace the briefing/demonstration with a passenger training programme covering all safety and emergency procedures for a given type of aircraft.
2. Only passengers who have been trained according to this programme and have flown on the aircraft type within the last 90 days may be carried on board without receiving a briefing/demonstration.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.175(a) Flight preparation

OPERATIONAL FLIGHT PLAN – COMPLEX MOTOR-POWERED AIRCRAFT

1. The operational flight plan used and the entries made during flight should contain the following items:

   a. aircraft registration;

   b. aircraft type and variant;

   c. date of flight;

   d. flight identification;

   e. names of flight crew members;

   f. duty assignment of flight crew members;

   g. place of departure;

   h. time of departure (actual off-block time, take-off time);

   i. place of arrival (planned and actual);

   j. time of arrival (actual landing and on-block time);

   k. type of operation (ETOPS, VFR, ferry flight, etc.);

   l. route and route segments with checkpoints/waypoints, distances, time and tracks;

   m. planned cruising speed and flying times between check-points/waypoints (estimated and actual times overhead);

   n. safe altitudes and minimum levels;

   o. planned altitudes and flight levels;

   p. fuel calculations (records of in-flight fuel checks);

   q. fuel on board when starting engines;

   r. alternate(s) for destination and, where applicable, take-off and en-route, including information required in 1.l.-o. above;

   s. initial ATS flight plan clearance and subsequent reclearance;

t. in-flight replanning calculations; and

u. relevant meteorological information.

2. Items that are readily available in other documentation or from another acceptable source or are irrelevant to the type of operation may be omitted from the operational flight plan.

3. The operational flight plan and its use should be described in the operations manual.

4. All entries on the operational flight plan should be made concurrently and be permanent in nature.

OPERATIONAL FLIGHT PLAN - OTHER-THAN-COMPLEX MOTOR-POWERED AIRCRAFT AND LOCAL OPERATIONS

An operational flight plan may be established in a simplified form relevant to the kind of operation.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.175(b)(5) Flight preparation

CONVERSION TABLES

The documentation should include any conversion tables necessary to support operations where metric heights, altitudes and flight levels are used.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.180 Selection of aerodromes - aeroplanes

OPERATIONAL CRITERIA FOR SMALL TWO-ENGINED AEROPLANES WITHOUT ETOPS CAPABILITY

1. For operations between 120 and 180 minutes, due account should be taken of the aeroplane's design and capabilities as outlined below and the operator's experience related to such operations. Relevant information should be included in the operations manual and the operator's maintenance procedures. The term "the aeroplane's design" in this AMC does not imply any additional type design approval requirements beyond the applicable original type certification (TC) requirements.

2. Systems capability

   Aeroplanes should be certificated to CS-25 as appropriate or equivalent (e.g. FAR-25). With respect to the capability of the aeroplane systems, the objective is that the aeroplane is capable of a safe diversion from the maximum diversion distance with particular emphasis on operations with OEI or with degraded system capability. To this end, the operator should give consideration to the capability of the following systems to support such a diversion:

   a. Propulsion systems - the aeroplane engine should meet the applicable requirements prescribed in CS-25 and CS-E or equivalent (e.g. FAR-25, FAR-E), concerning engine TC, installation and system operation. In addition to the performance standards established by the Agency or competent authority at the time of engine certification, the engines should comply with all subsequent mandatory safety standards specified by the Agency or competent authority, including those necessary to maintain an acceptable level of reliability. In addition, consideration should be given to the effects of extended duration single-engine operation (e.g. the effects of higher power demands such as bleed and electrical).

b. Airframe systems - with respect to electrical power, three or more reliable as defined by CS-25 or equivalent (e.g. FAR-25) and independent electrical power sources should be available, each of which should be capable of providing power for all essential services which should at least include the following:

   i. sufficient instruments for the flight crew providing, as a minimum, attitude, heading, air speed and altitude information;

   ii. appropriate pitot heating;

   iii. adequate navigation capability;

   iv. adequate radio communication and intercommunication capability;

   v. adequate flight deck and instrument lighting and emergency lighting;

   vi. adequate flight controls;

   vii. adequate engine controls and restart capability with critical type fuel (from the stand-point of flame-out and restart capability) and with the aeroplane initially at the maximum relight altitude;

   viii. adequate engine instrumentation;

   ix. adequate fuel supply system capability including such fuel boost and fuel transfer functions that may be necessary for extended duration single or dual-engine operation;

   x. such warnings, cautions and indications as are required for continued safe flight and landing;

   xi. fire protection (engines and APU);

   xii. adequate ice protection including windshield de-icing; and

   xiii. adequate control of the flight deck and cabin environment including heating and pressurisation.

   The equipment including avionics necessary for extended diversion times should have the ability to operate acceptably following failures in the cooling system or electrical power systems.

   For single-engine operations, the remaining power electrical, hydraulic, and pneumatic should continue to be available at levels necessary to permit continued safe flight and landing, and to provide those services necessary for the overall safety of the passengers and crew. As a minimum, following the failure of any two of the three electrical power sources, the remaining source should be capable of providing power for all of the items necessary for the duration of any diversion. If one or more of the required electrical power sources are provided by an APU, hydraulic system or air driven generator/ram air turbine (ADG/RAT), the following criteria should apply as appropriate:

A. to ensure hydraulic power (hydraulic motor generator) reliability, it may be necessary to provide two or more independent energy sources;

B. the ADG/RAT, if fitted, should not require engine dependent power for deployment; and

C. the APU should meet the criteria in 2.c..

c. APU - the APU, if required for extended range operations, should be certificated as an essential APU and should meet the applicable CS-25 and CS-APU provisions or equivalent (e.g. FAR-25).

d. Fuel supply system - consideration should include the capability of the fuel supply system to provide sufficient fuel for the entire diversion taking account of aspects such as fuel boost and fuel transfer.

3. Engine events and corrective action

a. All engine events and operating hours should be reported by the operator to the airframe and engine supplemental type certificate (STC) holders as well as to the competent authority.

b. These events should be evaluated by the operator in consultation with the competent authority and with the engine and airframe (S)TC holders. The competent authority may consult the Agency to ensure that world wide data is evaluated.

c. Where statistical assessment alone is not applicable, e.g. where the fleet size or accumulated flight hours are small, individual engine events should be reviewed on a case-by-case basis.

d. The evaluation or statistical assessment, when available, may result in corrective action or the application of operational restrictions.

e. Engine events could include engine shut downs, both on ground and in-flight, excluding normal training events, including flameout, occurrences where the intended thrust level was not achieved or where crew action was taken to reduce thrust below the normal level for whatever reason, and unscheduled removals.

f. Arrangements to ensure that all corrective actions required by the Agency are implemented.

4. Maintenance

The maintenance programme in accordance with Part-M should be based upon reliability programmes including, but not limited to, the following elements:

a. engine oil consumption programmes - such programmes are intended to support engine condition trend monitoring; and

b. engine condition monitoring programme - a programme for each engine that monitors engine performance parameters and trends of degradation that provides for maintenance actions to be undertaken prior to significant performance loss or mechanical failure.

5. Flight crew training

Flight crew training for this type of operation should include, in addition to the requirements of OR.OPS.FC, particular emphasis on the following:

a. Fuel management - verifying required fuel on board prior to departure and monitoring fuel on board en-route including calculation of fuel remaining. Procedures should provide for an independent cross-check of fuel quantity indicators, e.g. fuel flow used to calculate fuel burned compared to indicate fuel remaining. Confirmation that the fuel remaining is sufficient to satisfy the critical fuel reserves.

b. Procedures for single and multiple failures in-flight that may give rise to go/no-go and diversion decisions - policy and guidelines to aid the flight crew in the diversion decision making process and the need for constant awareness of the closest suitable alternate aerodrome in terms of time.

c. OEI performance data - drift down procedures and OEI service ceiling data.

d. Weather reports and flight requirements – meteorological aerodrome reports (METARs) and aerodrome forecast (TAF) reports and obtaining in-flight weather updates on the ERA, destination and destination alternate aerodromes. Consideration should also be given to forecast winds including the accuracy of the forecast compared to actual wind experienced during flight and meteorological conditions along the expected flight path at the OEI cruising altitude and throughout the approach and landing.

6. Pre-departure check

A pre-departure check, additional to the pre-flight inspection required by Part-M should be reflected in the operations manual. Flight crew members who are responsible for the pre-departure check of an aeroplane should be fully trained and competent to do it. The training programme required should cover all relevant tasks with particular emphasis on checking required fluid levels.

7. MEL

The MEL should take into account all items specified by the manufacturer relevant to operations in accordance with this AMC.

8. Dispatch/flight planning requirements

The operator's dispatch requirements should address the following:

a. Fuel and oil supply - an aeroplane should not be dispatched on an extended range flight unless it carries sufficient fuel and oil to comply with the applicable operational requirements and any additional reserves determined in accordance with the following:

i. Critical fuel scenario - the critical point is the furthest point from an alternate aerodrome assuming a simultaneous failure of an engine and the pressurisation system. For those aeroplanes that are type certificated to operate above flight level 450, the critical point is the furthest point from an alternate aerodrome assuming an engine failure. The operator should carry additional fuel for the worst case fuel burn condition (one engine vs. two engines operating), if this is greater than the additional fuel calculated in accordance with the fuel requirements in CAT.OP.AH, as follows:

A. fly from the critical point to an alternate aerodrome:

1. at 10 000 ft;

2. at 25 000 ft or the single-engine ceiling, whichever is lower, provided that all occupants can be supplied with and use oxygen for the time required to fly from the critical point to an alternate aerodrome; or

3. at the single-engine ceiling, provided that the aeroplane is type certificated to operate above flight level 450;

B. descend and hold at 1 500 ft for 15 minutes in international standard atmosphere (ISA) conditions;

C. descend to the applicable MDA/DH followed by a missed approach (taking into account the complete missed approach procedure); followed by

D. a normal approach and landing.

ii. Ice protection - additional fuel used when operating in icing conditions (e.g. operation of ice protection systems (engine/airframe as applicable)) and, when manufacturer’s data is available, take account of ice accumulation on unprotected surfaces if icing conditions are likely to be encountered during a diversion.

iii. APU operation - if an APU has to be used to provide additional electrical power, consideration should be given to the additional fuel required.

b. Communication facilities - the availability of communications facilities in order to allow reliable two-way voice communications between the aeroplane and the appropriate ATC unit at OEI cruise altitudes.

c. Aircraft technical log review to ensure proper MEL procedures, deferred items, and required maintenance checks completed.

d. ERA aerodrome(s) - ensuring that ERA aerodromes are available for the intended route, within 180 minutes based upon the OEI cruising speed which is a speed within the certificated limits of the aeroplane, selected by the operator, and confirmation that, based on the available meteorological information, the weather conditions at ERA aerodromes are at or above the applicable minima for the period of time during which the aerodrome(s) may be used.

Table 1: Planning minima

Approach facility	Alternate aerodrome ceiling	Weather minima RVR/VIS
PA	DH/DA +200 ft	RVR/VIS +800 m
NPA Circling Approach	MDH/A +400 ft	RVR/VIS +1 500 m

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.180 Selection of aerodromes - aeroplanes

APPLICATION OF AERODROME FORECASTS

APPLICATION OF AERODROME FORECASTS (TAF & TREND) TO PRE-FLIGHT PLANNING (ICAO Annex 3 refers)

1. APPLICATION OF INITIAL PART OF TAF

a. Applicable time period: From the start of the TAF validity period up to the time of applicability of the first subsequent 'FM…*' or 'BECMG' or, if no 'FM' or 'BECMG' is given, up to the end of the validity period of the TAF.

b. Application of forecast: The prevailing weather conditions forecast in the initial part of the TAF should be fully applied with the exception of the mean wind and gusts (and crosswind) which should be applied in accordance with the policy in the column 'BECMG AT and FM' in the table below. This may however be overruled temporarily by a 'TEMPO' or 'PROB**' if applicable according to the table below.

2. APPLICATION OF FORECAST FOLLOWING CHANGE INDICATORS IN TAF AND TREND

TAF or TREND for AERODROME PLANNED AS:	FM (alone) and BECMG AT:	BECMG (alone), BECMG FM, BECMG TL, BECMG FM…* TL in case of:		TEMPO (alone), TEMPO FM, TEMPO TL, TEMPO FM…* TL, PROB 30/40 (alone)			PROB TEMPO
				Deterioration		Improvement	
	Deterioration and Improvement	Deterioration	Improvement	Transient/Showery Conditions in connection with short-lived weather phenomena, e.g. thunderstorms, showers	Persistent Conditions In connection with e.g. haze, mist, fog, dust/sandstorm, continuous precipitation	In any case	Deterioration and Improvement
DESTINATION at ETA ± 1 hr	Applicable from the start of the change	Applicable from the time of start of change		Not applicable	Applicable	Should be disregarded	Deterioration may be disregarded; Improvement should be disregarded including mean wind and gusts
TAKE-OFF ALTERNATE at ETA ± 1 hr					Mean wind should be within required limits		
DEST. ALTERNATE at ETA ± 1 hr	Mean wind should be within required limits				Gusts may be disregarded		
ENROUTE ALTERNATE at ETA ± 1 hr	Gusts may be disregarded			Mean wind and gusts exceeding required limits may be disregarded			
ETOPS ENROUTE ALTERNATE at earliest/latest ETA ± 1 hr	Applicable from the time of start of change		Applicable from the time of end of change	Applicable if below applicable landing minima			
	Mean wind should be within required limits						
	Gusts exceeding crosswind limits should be fully applied.						

Note 1: 'required limits' are those contained in the operations manual

Note 2: If promulgated aerodrome forecasts do not comply with the requirements of ICAO Annex 3, operators should ensure that guidance in the application of these reports is provided.

* The space following 'FM' should always include a time group e.g. 'FM 1030'.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.181(c)(1) Selection of aerodromes and operating sites - helicopters

OFFSHORE AERODROME

1. Any alleviation from the requirement to select an alternate aerodrome for a flight to a coastal aerodrome under IFR is applicable only to helicopters routing from offshore, and should be based on an individual safety case assessment.
2. The following should be taken into account:
    a. suitability of the weather based on the landing forecast for the destination;
    b. the fuel required to meet the IFR requirements of CAT.OP.AH.150 less alternate fuel;
    c. where the destination coastal aerodrome is not directly on the coast it should be:
        i. within a distance that, with the fuel specified in 2.b. above, the helicopter can, at any time after crossing the coastline, return to the coast, descend safely and carry out a visual approach and landing with VFR fuel reserves intact; and
        ii. geographically sited so that the helicopter can, within the rules of the air, and within the landing forecast:
            A. proceed inbound from the coast at 500 ft AGL and carry out a visual approach and landing; or
            B. proceed inbound from the coast on an agreed route and carry out a visual approach and landing;
    d. procedures for coastal aerodromes should be based on a landing forecast no worse than:
        i. by day, a cloud base of DH/MDH +400 ft, and a visibility of 4 km, or, if descent over the sea is intended, a cloud base of 600 ft and a visibility of 4 km; or
        ii. by night, a cloud base of 1 000 ft and a visibility of 5 km;
    e. the descent to establish visual contact with the surface should take place over the sea or as part of the instrument approach;
    f. routings and procedures for coastal aerodromes nominated as such should be included in the operations manual, Part C;
    g. the MEL should reflect the requirement for airborne radar and radio altimeter for this type of operation; and
    h. operational limitations for each coastal aerodrome should be specified in the operations manual.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.181(e) Selection of aerodromes and operating sites - helicopters

HELIDECK

1. Offshore alternate helideck landing environment

   The landing environment of a helideck that is proposed for use as an offshore alternate should be presurveyed and, as well as the physical characteristics, the effect of wind direction and strength, and turbulence established. This information, which should be available to the Commander at the planning stage and in flight, should be published in an appropriate form in the operations manual Part C (including the orientation of the helideck) such that the suitability of the helideck for use as an offshore alternate aerodrome, can be assessed. The alternate helideck should meet the criteria for size and obstacle clearance appropriate to the performance requirements of the type of helicopter concerned.

2. Performance considerations

   The use of an offshore alternate is restricted to helicopters which can achieve OEI in ground effect (IGE) hover at an appropriate power rating at the offshore alternate aerodrome. Where the surface of the offshore alternate helideck, or prevailing conditions (especially wind velocity), precludes an OEI IGE, OEI out of ground effect (OGE) hover performance at an appropriate power rating should be used to compute the landing mass. The landing mass should be calculated from graphs provided in the relevant Part B of the operations manual. When arriving at this landing mass, due account should be taken of helicopter configuration, environmental conditions and the operation of systems which have an adverse effect on performance. The planned landing mass of the helicopter including crew, passengers, baggage, cargo plus 30 minutes final reserve fuel, should not exceed the OEI landing mass at the time of approach to the offshore alternate aerodrome.

3. Weather considerations

   a. Meteorological observations

      When the use of an offshore alternate helideck is planned, the meteorological observations at the destination and alternate aerodrome should be taken by an observer acceptable to the authority responsible for the provision of meteorological services. Automatic meteorological observations stations may be used.

   b. Weather minima

      When the use of an offshore alternate helideck is planned, the operator should not select a helideck as a destination or offshore alternate helideck unless the aerodrome forecast indicates that, during a period commencing one hour before and ending one hour after the expected time of arrival at the destination and offshore alternate aerodrome, the weather conditions will be at or above the planning minima shown in Table 1 below.

Table 1: Planning minima

	Day	Night
Cloud Base	600 ft	800 ft
Visibility	4 km	5 km

c. Conditions of Fog

Where fog is forecast, or has been observed within the last two hours within 60 NM of the destination or alternate aerodrome, offshore alternate aerodromes should not be used.

4. Actions at point of no return

Before passing the point of no return - which should not be more that 30 minutes from the destination - the following actions should have been completed:

a. confirmation that navigation to the destination and offshore alternate helideck can be assured;

b. radio contact with the destination and offshore alternate helideck (or master station) has been established;

c. the landing forecast at the destination and offshore alternate helideck have been obtained and confirmed to be at or above the required minima;

d. the requirements for OEI landing (see 2. above) have been checked in the light of the latest reported weather conditions to ensure that they can be met; and

e. to the extent possible, having regard to information on current and forecast use of the offshore alternate helideck and on conditions prevailing, the availability of the offshore alternate helideck should be guaranteed by the duty holder (the rig operator in the case of fixed installations and the owner in the case of mobiles) until the landing at the destination, or the offshore alternate aerodrome, has been achieved or until offshore shuttling has been completed.

5. Offshore shuttling

Provided that the actions in 4. above have been completed, offshore shuttling, using an offshore alternate aerodrome, may be carried out.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.181 Selection of aerodromes and operating sites - helicopters

OFFSHORE ALTERNATES

When operating offshore, any spare payload capacity should be used to carry additional fuel if it would facilitate the use of an onshore alternate.

LANDING FORECAST

1. The procedures contained in AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.181(e) are weather-critical. Consequently, meteorological data conforming to the standards contained in the Regional Air Navigation Plan and ICAO Annex 3 has been specified. As the following

meteorological data is point-specific, caution should be exercised when associating it with nearby aerodromes (or helidecks).

2. Meteorological reports (METARs)

   a. Routine and special meteorological observations at offshore installations should be made during periods and at a frequency agreed between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned. They should comply with the requirements contained in the meteorological section of the ICAO Regional Air Navigation Plan, and should conform to the standards and recommended practices, including the desirable accuracy of observations, promulgated in ICAO Annex 3.

   b. Routine and selected special reports are exchanged between meteorological offices in the METAR or SPECI code forms prescribed by the World Meteorological Organisation.

3. Aerodrome forecasts (TAFS)

   a The aerodrome forecast consists of a concise statement of the mean or average meteorological conditions expected at an aerodrome or aerodrome during a specified period of validity, which is normally not less than nine hours, or more than 24 hours in duration. The forecast includes surface wind, visibility, weather and cloud, and expected changes of one or more of these elements during the period. Additional elements may be included as agreed between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned. Where these forecasts relate to offshore installations, barometric pressure and temperature should be included to facilitate the planning of helicopter landing and take-off performance.

   b. Aerodrome forecasts are most commonly exchanged in the TAF code form, and the detailed description of an aerodrome forecast is promulgated in the ICAO Regional Air Navigation Plan and also in ICAO Annex 3, together with the operationally desirable accuracy elements. In particular, the observed cloud height should remain within ±30 % of the forecast value in 70 % of cases, and the observed visibility should remain within ±30 % of the forecast value in 80 % of cases.

4. Landing forecasts (TRENDS)

   a. The landing forecast consists of a concise statement of the mean or average meteorological conditions expected at an aerodrome or aerodrome during the two-hour period immediately following the time of issue. It contains surface wind, visibility, significant weather and cloud elements, and other significant information, such as barometric pressure and temperature, as may be agreed between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned.

   b. The detailed description of the landing forecast is promulgated in the ICAO Regional Air Navigation Plan and also in ICAO Annex 3, together with the operationally desirable accuracy of the forecast elements. In particular, the value of the observed cloud height and visibility elements should remain within ±30 % of the forecast values in 90 % of the cases.

   c. Landing forecasts most commonly take the form of routine or special selected meteorological reports in the METAR code, to which either the code words "NOSIG", i.e. no significant change expected; "BECMG" (becoming), or

"TEMPO" (temporarily), followed by the expected change, are added. The two-hour period of validity commences at the time of the meteorological report.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.185 Planning minima for IFR flights - aeroplanes

PLANNING MINIMA FOR ALTERNATE AERODROMES

Non-precision minima in Table 1 of CAT.OP.AH.185 means the next highest minima that that apply in the prevailing wind and serviceability conditions. Localiser only approaches, if published, are considered to be non-precision in this context. It is recommended that operators wishing to publish tables of planning minima choose values that are likely to be appropriate on the majority of occasions (e.g. regardless of wind direction). Unserviceabilities should, however, be fully taken into account.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.190 Submission of ATS flight plan

FLIGHTS WITHOUT ATS FLIGHT PLAN

1. When unable to submit or to close the ATS flight plan due to lack of ATS facilities or any other means of communications to ATS, the operator should establish procedures, instructions and a list of nominated persons to be responsible for alerting search and rescue services.
2. To ensure that each flight is located at all times, these instructions should:
   a. provide the nominated person with at least the information required to be included in a VFR flight plan, and the location, date and estimated time for reestablishing communications;
   b. if an aircraft is overdue or missing, provide for notification to the appropriate ATS or search and rescue facility; and
   c. provide that the information will be retained at a designated place until the completion of the flight.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.195 Refuelling/defuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES - GENERAL

1. When refuelling/defuelling with passengers on board, ground servicing activities and work inside the aeroplane, such as catering and cleaning, should be conducted in such a manner that they do not create a hazard and that the aisles and emergency doors are unobstructed.
2. The deployment of integral aircraft stairs or the opening of emergency exits as a prerequisite to refuelling is not necessarily required.

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES - AEROPLANES

3. Operational procedures should specify that at least the following precautions are taken:

a. one qualified person should remain at a specified location during fuelling operations with passengers on board. This qualified person should be capable of handling emergency procedures concerning fire protection and fire-fighting, handling communications and initiating and directing an evacuation;

b. two-way communication should be established and should remain available by the aeroplane's inter-communication system or other suitable means between the ground crew supervising the refuelling and the qualified personnel on board the aeroplane;

c. crew, personnel and passengers should be warned that re/defuelling will take place;

d. "fasten seat belts" signs should be off;

e. "NO SMOKING" signs should be on, together with interior lighting to enable emergency exits to be identified;

f. passengers should be instructed to unfasten their seat belts and refrain from smoking;

g. the minimum required number of cabin crew should be on board and be prepared for an immediate emergency evacuation;

h. if the presence of fuel vapour is detected inside the aeroplane, or any other hazard arises during re/defuelling, fuelling should be stopped immediately;

i. the ground area beneath the exits intended for emergency evacuation and slide deployment areas should be kept clear at doors where stairs are not in position for use in the event of evacuation; and

j. provision is made for a safe and rapid evacuation.

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES - HELICOPTERS

4. Operational procedures should specify that at least the following precautions are taken:

a. door(s) on the refuelling side of the helicopter remain closed;

b. door(s) on the non-refuelling side of the helicopter remain open, weather permitting;

c. fire-fighting facilities of the appropriate scale be positioned so as to be immediately available in the event of a fire;

d. sufficient personnel be immediately available to move passengers clear of the helicopter in the event of a fire;

e. sufficient qualified personnel be on board and be prepared for an immediate emergency evacuation;

f. if the presence of fuel vapour is detected inside the helicopter, or any other hazard arises during refuelling/defuelling, fuelling be stopped immediately;

g. the ground area beneath the exits intended for emergency evacuation and slide deployment areas be kept clear; and

h. provision made for a safe and rapid evacuation.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.200 Refuelling/defuelling with wide-cut fuel

PROCEDURES

1. 'Wide cut fuel' (designated JET B, JP-4 or AVTAG) is an aviation turbine fuel that falls between gasoline and kerosene in the distillation range and consequently, compared to kerosene (JET A or JET A1), it has the properties of higher volatility (vapour pressure), lower flash point and lower freezing point.
2. Wherever possible, the operator should avoid the use of wide-cut fuel types. If a situation arises such that only wide-cut fuels are available for refuelling/defuelling, operators should be aware that mixtures of wide-cut fuels and kerosene turbine fuels can result in the air/fuel mixture in the tank being in the combustible range at ambient temperatures. The extra precautions set out below are advisable to avoid arcing in the tank due to electrostatic discharge. The risk of this type of arcing can be minimised by the use of a static dissipation additive in the fuel. When this additive is present in the proportions stated in the fuel specification, the normal fuelling precautions set out below are considered adequate.
3. Wide-cut fuel is considered to be "involved" when it is being supplied or when it is already present in aircraft fuel tanks.
4. When wide-cut fuel has been used, this should be recorded in the technical log. The next two uplifts of fuel should be treated as though they too involved the use of wide-cut fuel.
5. When refuelling/defuelling with turbine fuels not containing a static dissipator, and where wide-cut fuels are involved, a substantial reduction on fuelling flow rate is advisable. Reduced flow rate, as recommended by fuel suppliers and/or aeroplane manufacturers, has the following benefits:
   a. it allows more time for any static charge build-up in the fuelling equipment to dissipate before the fuel enters the tank;
   b. it reduces any charge which may build up due to splashing; and
   c. until the fuel inlet point is immersed, it reduces misting in the tank and consequently the extension of the flammable range of the fuel.
6. The flow rate reduction necessary is dependent upon the fuelling equipment in use and the type of filtration employed on the aeroplane fuelling distribution system. It is difficult, therefore, to quote precise flow rates. Reduction in flow rate is advisable whether pressure fuelling or over-wing fuelling is employed.
7. With over-wing fuelling, splashing should be avoided by making sure that the delivery nozzle extends as far as practicable into the tank. Caution should be exercised to avoid damaging bag tanks with the nozzle.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.205 Push back and towing - aeroplanes

BARLESS TOWING

1. Barless towing should be based on the applicable SAE ARP (Aerospace Recommended Practices), i.e. 4852B/4853B/5283/5284/5285 (as amended).
2. Pre- or post-taxi positioning of the aeroplanes should only be executed by barless towing if:

a. an aeroplane is protected by its own design from damage to the nose wheel steering system;

b. a system/procedure is provided to alert the flight crew that damage referred to in 2.a. may have or has occurred;

c. the towing vehicle is designed to prevent damage to the aeroplane type; and

d. the aeroplane manufacturer has published procedures and these are included in the operations manual.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.210 Crew members at stations

CABIN CREW SEATING POSITIONS

1. When determining cabin crew seating positions, the operator should ensure that they are:

   a. close to a floor level exit;

   b. provided with a good view of the area(s) of the passenger cabin for which the cabin crew member is responsible; and

   c. evenly distributed throughout the cabin, in the above order of priority.

2. 1. above should not be taken as implying that, in the event of there being more such cabin crew stations than required cabin crew, the number of cabin crew members should be increased.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.210 Crew members at stations

MITIGATING MEASURES – CONTROLLED REST

1. This Guidance Material addresses controlled rest taken by the minimum certified flight crew. It is not related to planned in-flight rest by members of an augmented crew.

2. Although flight crew members should stay alert at all times during flight, unexpected fatigue can occur as a result of sleep disturbance and circadian disruption. To cover for this unexpected fatigue, and to regain a high level of alertness, a controlled rest procedure in the flight crew compartment, organised by the commander may be used, if workload permits. 'Controlled rest' means a period of time 'off task' that may include actual sleep. The use of controlled rest has been shown to significantly increase the levels of alertness during the later phases of flight, particularly after the top of descent, and is considered to be good use of crew resource management (CRM) principles. Controlled rest should be used in conjunction with other on-board fatigue management countermeasures such as physical exercise, bright cockpit illumination at appropriate times, balanced eating and drinking, and intellectual activity.

3. Controlled rest taken in this way should not be considered to be part of a rest period for the purposes of calculating flight time limitations, nor used to justify any duty period. Controlled rest may be used to manage both sudden unexpected fatigue and fatigue which is expected to become more severe during higher workload periods later in the flight. Controlled rest is not related to fatigue management, which is planned before flight.

4. Controlled rest periods should be agreed according to individual needs and the accepted principles of CRM; where the involvement of the cabin crew is required, consideration should be given to their workload.

5. When applying controlled rest procedures, the commander should ensure that:

   a. the other flight crew member(s) is/are adequately briefed to carry out the duties of the resting flight crew member;

   b. one flight crew member is fully able to exercise control of the aircraft at all times; and

   c. any system intervention which would normally require a cross-check according to multi-crew principles is avoided until the resting flight crew member resumes his/her duties.

6. Controlled rest procedures should satisfy the following criteria:

   a. only one flight crew member at a time should take rest at his/her station; the harness should be used and the seat positioned to minimise unintentional interference with the controls;

   b. the rest period should be no longer than 45 minutes (in order to limit any actual sleep to approximately 30 minutes) to limit deep sleep and associated long recovery time (sleep inertia);

   c. after this 45-minute period, there should be a recovery period of 20 minutes during which sole control of the aircraft should not be entrusted to the flight crew member during his/her recovery period;

   d. in the case of two-crew operations, means should be established to ensure that the non-resting flight crew member remains alert. This may include:

      i. appropriate alarm systems;

      ii. on-board systems to monitor flight crew activity; and

      iii. frequent cabin crew checks. In this case, the commander should inform the senior cabin crew member of the intention of the flight crew member to take controlled rest, and of the time of the end of that rest; frequent contact should be established between the non-resting flight crew member and the cabin crew by communication means, and the cabin crew should check that the resting flight crew member is alert at the end of the period;

   e. there should be a minimum of 20 minutes between two subsequent controlled rest periods in order to overcome the effects of sleep inertia and allow for adequate briefing;

   f. if necessary, a flight crew member may take more than one rest period, if time permits, on longer sectors, subject to the restrictions above; and

   g. controlled rest periods should terminate at least 30 minutes before the top of descent.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.250 Ice and other contaminants – ground procedures

TERMINOLOGY

Terms used in the context of de-icing/anti-icing have the meaning defined in the following subparagraphs.

1. 'Anti-icing fluid' includes, but is not limited to, the following:
   a. Type I fluid if heated to min 60 °C at the nozzle;
   b. mixture of water and Type I fluid if heated to min 60 °C at the nozzle;
   c. Type II fluid;
   d. mixture of water and Type II fluid;
   e. Type III fluid;
   f. mixture of water and Type III fluid;
   g. Type IV fluid;
   h. mixture of water and Type IV fluid.

   On uncontaminated aircraft surfaces Type II, III and IV anti-icing fluids are normally applied unheated.
2. 'Clear ice': a coating of ice, generally clear and smooth, but with some air pockets. It forms on exposed objects, the temperatures of which are at, below or slightly above the freezing temperature, by the freezing of super-cooled drizzle, droplets or raindrops.
3. Conditions conducive to aircraft icing on the ground (e.g. freezing fog, freezing precipitation, frost, rain or high humidity (on cold soaked wings), snow or mixed rain and snow).
4. 'Contamination', in this context, is understood as being all forms of frozen or semi-frozen moisture, such as frost, snow, slush or ice.
5. 'Contamination check': a check of aircraft for contamination to establish the need for de-icing.
6. 'De-icing fluid': such fluid includes, but is not limited to, the following:
   a. heated water;
   b. Type I fluid;
   c. mixture of water and Type I fluid;
   d. Type II fluid;
   e. mixture of water and Type II fluid;
   f. Type III fluid;
   g. mixture of water and Type III fluid;
   h. Type IV fluid;
   i. mixture of water and Type IV fluid.

   De-icing fluid is normally applied heated to ensure maximum efficiency.

7. 'De-icing/anti-icing': this is the combination of de-icing and anti-icing performed in either one or two steps.

8. 'Ground ice detection system (GIDS)': system used during aircraft ground operations to inform the personnel involved in the operation and/or the flight crew about the presence of frost, ice, snow or slush on the aircraft surfaces.

9. 'Lowest operational use temperature (LOUT)': the lowest temperature at which a fluid has been tested and certified as acceptable in accordance with the appropriate aerodynamic acceptance test whilst still maintaining a freezing point buffer of not less than:

   a. 10°C for a Type I de-icing/anti-icing fluid; or

   b. 7°C for Type II, III or IV de-icing/anti-icing fluids.

10. 'Post-treatment check': an external check of the aircraft after de-icing and/or anti-icing treatment accomplished from suitably elevated observation points (e.g. from the de-icing/anti-icing equipment itself or other elevated equipment) to ensure that the aircraft is free from any frost, ice, snow, or slush.

11. 'Pre take-off check': an assessment normally performed from within the flight deck, to validate the applied HoT.

12. 'Pre take-off contamination check': a check of the treated surfaces for contamination, performed when the HoT has been exceeded or if any doubt exists regarding the continued effectiveness of the applied anti-icing treatment. It is normally accomplished externally, just before commencement of the take-off run.

ANTI-ICING CODES

13. The following are examples of anti-icing codes:

   a. "Type I" at (start time) – to be used if anti-icing treatment has been performed with a Type I fluid;

   b. "Type II/100" at (start time) – to be used if anti-icing treatment has been performed with undiluted Type II fluid;

   c. "Type II/75" at (start time) – to be used if anti-icing treatment has been performed with a mixture of 75 % Type II fluid and 25 % water;

   d. "Type IV/50" at (start time) – to be used if anti-icing treatment has been performed with a mixture of 50 % Type IV fluid and 50 % water.

14. When a two-step de-icing/anti-icing operation has been carried out, the anti-icing code should be determined by the second step fluid. Fluid brand names may be included, if desired.

GM2-CAT.OP.AH.250 Ice and other contaminants – ground procedures

DE-ICING/ANTI-ICING PROCEDURES

1. De-icing and/or anti-icing procedures should take into account manufacturer's recommendations, including those that are type-specific and cover:

   a. contamination checks, including detection of clear ice and under-wing frost; limits on the thickness/area of contamination published in the AFM or other manufacturers' documentation should be followed;

b. procedures to be followed if de-icing and/or anti-icing procedures are interrupted or unsuccessful;

c. post-treatment checks;

d. pre-take-off checks;

e. pre-take-off contamination checks;

f. the recording of any incidents relating to de-icing and/or anti-icing; and

g. the responsibilities of all personnel involved in de-icing and/or anti-icing.

2. Operator's procedures should ensure that:

a. When aircraft surfaces are contaminated by ice, frost, slush or snow, they are de-iced prior to take-off, according to the prevailing conditions. Removal of contaminants may be performed with mechanical tools, fluids (including hot water), infra-red heat or forced air, taking account of aircraft type-specific requirements.

b. Account is taken of the wing skin temperature versus outside air temperature (OAT), as this may affect:

i. the need to carry out aircraft de-icing and/or anti-icing; and/or

ii. the performance of the de-icing/anti-icing fluids.

c. When freezing precipitation occurs or there is a risk of freezing precipitation occurring which would contaminate the surfaces at the time of take-off, aircraft surfaces should be anti-iced. If both de-icing and anti-icing are required, the procedure may be performed in a one- or two-step process, depending upon weather conditions, available equipment, available fluids and the desired hold-over time (HoT). One-step de-icing/anti-icing means that de-icing and anti-icing are carried out at the same time, using a mixture of de-icing/anti-icing fluid and water. Two-step de-icing/anti-icing means that de-icing and anti-icing are carried out in two separate steps. The aircraft is first de-iced using heated water only or a heated mixture of de-icing/anti-icing fluid and water. After completion of the de-icing operation a layer of a mixture of de-icing/anti-icing fluid and water, or of de-icing/anti-icing fluid only, is sprayed over the aircraft surfaces. The second step will be applied before the first step fluid freezes, typically within three minutes and, if necessary, area by area.

d. When an aircraft is anti-iced and a longer HoT is needed/desired, the use of a less diluted Type II or Type IV fluid should be considered.

e. All restrictions relative to OAT and fluid application (including, but not necessarily limited to, temperature and pressure) published by the fluid manufacturer and/or aircraft manufacturer, are followed and procedures, limitations and recommendations to prevent the formation of fluid residues are followed.

f. During conditions conducive to aircraft icing on the ground or after de-icing and/or anti-icing, an aircraft is not dispatched for departure unless it has been given a contamination check or a post-treatment check by a trained and qualified person. This check should cover all treated surfaces of the aircraft and be performed from points offering sufficient accessibility to these parts.

To ensure that there is no clear ice on suspect areas, it may be necessary to make a physical check (e.g. tactile).

g. The required entry is made in the technical log.

h. The commander continually monitors the environmental situation after the performed treatment. Prior to take-off he/she performs a pre-take-off check, which is an assessment of whether the applied HoT is still appropriate. This pre-take-off check includes, but is not limited to, factors such as precipitation, wind and OAT.

i. If any doubt exists as to whether a deposit may adversely affect the aircraft's performance and/or controllability characteristics, the commander should arrange for a pre take-off contamination check to be performed in order to verify that the aircraft's surfaces are free of contamination. Special methods and/or equipment may be necessary to perform this check, especially at night time or in extremely adverse weather conditions. If this check cannot be performed just before take-off, re-treatment should be applied.

j. When retreatment is necessary, any residue of the previous treatment should be removed and a completely new de-icing/anti-icing treatment should be applied.

k. When a ground ice detection system (GIDS) is used to perform an aircraft surfaces check prior to and/or after a treatment, the use of GIDS by suitably trained personnel should be part of the procedure.

3. Special operational considerations

a. When using thickened de-icing/anti-icing fluids, the operator should consider a two-step de-icing/anti-icing procedure, the first step preferably with hot water and/or un-thickened fluids.

b. The use of de-icing/anti-icing fluids should be in accordance with the aircraft manufacturer's documentation. This is particularly important for thickened fluids to assure sufficient flow-off during take-off.

c. The operator should comply with any type-specific operational requirement(s), such as an aircraft mass decrease and/or a take-off speed increase associated with a fluid application.

d. The operator should take into account any flight handling procedures (stick force, rotation speed and rate, take-off speed, aircraft attitude etc.) laid down by the aircraft manufacturer when associated with a fluid application.

e. The limitations or handling procedures resulting from 3.c. and/or 3.d. above should be part of the flight crew pre take-off briefing.

4. Communications

a. Before aircraft treatment. When the aircraft is to be treated with the flight crew on board, the flight and personnel involved in the operation should confirm the fluid to be used, the extent of treatment required and any aircraft type-specific procedure(s) to be used. Any other information needed to apply the HoT tables should be exchanged.

b. Anti-icing code. The operator's procedures should include an anti-icing code, which indicates the treatment the aircraft has received. This code provides the flight crew with the minimum details necessary to estimate a HoT and confirms that the aircraft is free of contamination.

c. After treatment. Before reconfiguring or moving the aircraft, the flight crew should receive a confirmation from the personnel involved in the operation that all de-icing and/or anti-icing operations are complete and that all personnel and equipment are clear of the aircraft.

5. Hold-over protection

The operator should publish in the operations manual, when required, the HoTs in the form of a table or a diagram, to account for the various types of ground icing conditions and the different types and concentrations of fluids used. However, the times of protection shown in these tables are to be used as guidelines only and are normally used in conjunction with the pre take-off check.

6. Training

The operator's initial and recurrent de-icing and/or anti-icing training programmes (including communication training) for flight crew and those of its personnel involved in the operation who are involved in de-icing and/or anti-icing should include additional training if any of the following is introduced:

a. a new method, procedure and/or technique;

b. a new type of fluid and/or equipment; or

c. a new type of aircraft.

7. Contracting

When the operator contracts training on de-icing/anti-icing, the operator should ensure that the contractor complies with the operator's training/qualification procedures, together with any specific procedures in respect of:

a. de-icing and/or anti-icing methods and procedures;

b. fluids to be used, including precautions for storage and preparation for use;

c. specific aircraft requirements (e.g. no-spray areas, propeller/engine de-icing, APU operation etc.); and

d. checking and communications procedures.

8. Special maintenance considerations

a. General

The operator should take proper account of the possible side-effects of fluid use. Such effects may include, but are not necessarily limited to, dried and/or re-hydrated residues, corrosion and the removal of lubricants.

b. Special considerations regarding residues of dried fluids

The operator should establish procedures to prevent or detect and remove residues of dried fluid. If necessary the operator should establish appropriate inspection intervals based on the recommendations of the airframe manufacturers and/or the operator's own experience:

i. Dried fluid residues

Dried fluid residues could occur when surfaces have been treated and the aircraft has not subsequently been flown and has not been subject to precipitation. The fluid may then have dried on the surfaces.

ii. Re-hydrated fluid residues

Repetitive application of thickened de-icing/anti-icing fluids may lead to the subsequent formation/build up of a dried residue in aerodynamically quiet areas, such as cavities and gaps. This residue may re-hydrate if exposed to high humidity conditions, precipitation, washing, etc., and increase to many times its original size/volume. This residue will freeze if exposed to conditions at or below 0°C. This may cause moving parts, such as elevators, ailerons, and flap actuating mechanisms to stiffen or jam in-flight. Re-hydrated residues may also form on exterior surfaces, which can reduce lift, increase drag and stall speed. Re-hydrated residues may also collect inside control surface structures and cause clogging of drain holes or imbalances to flight controls. Residues may also collect in hidden areas, such as around flight control hinges, pulleys, grommets, on cables and in gaps.

iii. Operators are strongly recommended to obtain information about the fluid dry-out and re-hydration characteristics from the fluid manufacturers and to select products with optimised characteristics.

iv. Additional information should be obtained from fluid manufacturers for handling, storage, application and testing of their products.

GM3-CAT.OP.AH.250 Ice and other contaminants – ground procedures

DE-ICING/ANTI-ICING BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Further guidance material on this issue is given in the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) *Manual of Aircraft Ground De-icing/Anti-icing Operations* (Doc 9640) (hereinafter referred to as the ICAO *Manual of Aircraft Ground De-icing/Anti-icing Operations*).

1. General

a. Any deposit of frost, ice, snow or slush on the external surfaces of an aircraft may drastically affect its flying qualities because of reduced aerodynamic lift, increased drag, modified stability and control characteristics. Furthermore, freezing deposits may cause moving parts, such as elevators, ailerons, flap actuating mechanism etc., to jam and create a potentially hazardous condition. Propeller/engine/auxiliary power unit (APU)/systems performance may deteriorate due to the presence of frozen contaminants on blades, intakes and components. Also, engine operation may be seriously affected by the ingestion of snow or ice, thereby causing engine stall or compressor damage. In addition, ice/frost may form on certain external surfaces (e.g. wing upper and lower surfaces, etc.) due to the effects of cold fuel/structures, even in ambient temperatures well above 0 °C.

b. Procedures established by the operator for de-icing and/or anti-icing are intended to ensure that the aircraft is clear of contamination so that degradation of aerodynamic characteristics or mechanical interference will not occur and, following anti-icing, to maintain the airframe in that condition during the appropriate HoT.

c. Under certain meteorological conditions, de-icing and/or anti-icing procedures may be ineffective in providing sufficient protection for continued operations. Examples of these conditions are freezing rain, ice pellets and hail, heavy snow, high wind velocity, fast dropping OAT or any time when freezing precipitation with high water content is present. No HoT guidelines exist for these conditions.

d. Material for establishing operational procedures can be found, for example, in:

i. ICAO Annex 3, Meteorological Service for International Air Navigation;

ii. ICAO Manual of Aircraft Ground De-icing/Anti-icing Operations;

iii. ISO 11075 Aircraft - De-icing/anti-icing fluids - ISO type I;

iv. ISO 11076 Aircraft - De-icing/anti-icing methods with fluids;

v. ISO 11077 Aerospace - Self propelled de-icing/anti-icing vehicles - Functional requirements;

vi. ISO 11078 Aircraft - De-icing/anti-icing fluids -- ISO types II, III and IV;

vii. AEA "Recommendations for de-icing/anti-icing of aircraft on the ground";

viii. AEA "Training recommendations and background information for de-icing/anti-icing of aircraft on the ground";

ix. EUROCAE ED-104A Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Ground Ice Detection Systems;

x. SAE AS5681 Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Remote On-Ground Ice Detection Systems;

xi. SAE ARP4737 Aircraft - De-icing/anti-icing methods;

xii. SAE AMS1424 De-icing/anti-Icing Fluid, Aircraft, SAE Type I;

xiii. SAE AMS1428 Fluid, Aircraft De-icing/anti-Icing, Non-Newtonian, (Pseudoplastic), SAE Types II, III, and IV;

xiv. SAE ARP1971 Aircraft De-icing Vehicle - Self-Propelled, Large and Small Capacity;

xv. SAE ARP5149 Training Programme Guidelines for De-icing/anti-icing of Aircraft on Ground; and

xvi. ARP5646 Quality Program Guidelines for De-icing/anti-icing of Aircraft on the Ground.

2. Fluids

a. Type I fluid: Due to its properties, Type I fluid forms a thin, liquid-wetting film on surfaces to which it is applied which, under certain weather conditions, gives a very limited HoT. With this type of fluid, increasing the concentration of fluid in the fluid/water mix does not provide any extension in HoT.

b. Type II and Type IV fluids contain thickeners which enable the fluid to form a thicker liquid-wetting film on surfaces to which it is applied. Generally, this fluid provides a longer HoT than Type I fluids in similar conditions. With this type of fluid, the HoT can be extended by increasing the ratio of fluid in the fluid/water mix.

c. Type III fluid is a thickened fluid especially intended for use on aircraft with low rotation speeds.

d. Fluids used for de-icing and/or anti-icing should be acceptable to the operator and the aircraft manufacturer. These fluids normally conform to specifications such as SAE AMS1424, SAE AMS1428 or equivalent. Use of non-conforming fluids is not recommended due to their characteristics being unknown. The anti-icing and aerodynamic properties of thickened fluids may be seriously degraded by, for example, inappropriate storage, treatment, application, application equipment and age.

3. Hold-over protection

   a. Hold-over protection is achieved by a layer of anti-icing fluid remaining on and protecting aircraft surfaces for a period of time. With a one-step de-icing/anti-icing procedure, the HoT begins at the commencement of de-icing/anti-icing. With a two-step procedure, the HoT begins at the commencement of the second (anti-icing) step. The hold-over protection runs out:

      i. at the commencement of the take-off roll (due to aerodynamic shedding of fluid); or

      ii. when frozen deposits start to form or accumulate on treated aircraft surfaces, thereby indicating the loss of effectiveness of the fluid.

   b. The duration of hold-over protection may vary depending on the influence of factors other than those specified in the HoT tables. Guidance should be provided by the operator to take account of such factors, which may include:

      i. atmospheric conditions, e.g. exact type and rate of precipitation, wind direction and velocity, relative humidity and solar radiation; and

      ii. the aircraft and its surroundings, such as aircraft component inclination angle, contour and surface roughness, surface temperature, operation in close proximity to other aircraft (jet or propeller blast) and ground equipment and structures.

   c. HoTs are not meant to imply that flight is safe in the prevailing conditions if the specified HoT has not been exceeded. Certain meteorological conditions, such as freezing drizzle or freezing rain, may be beyond the certification envelope of the aircraft.

   d. References to usable HoT tables may be found in the AEA "Recommendations for de-icing/anti-icing of aircraft on the ground".

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.255 Ice and other contaminants – flight procedures

FLIGHT IN EXPECTED OR ACTUAL ICING CONDITIONS

1. In accordance with 2.a.5 of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 (Essential requirements for air operations), in case of flight into known or expected icing conditions, the aircraft must be certified, equipped and/or treated to operate safely in such conditions. The procedures to be established by the operator should take

account of the design, the equipment, the configuration of the aircraft and the necessary training. For these reasons, different aircraft types operated by the same company may require the development of different procedures. In every case the relevant limitations are those which are defined in the AFM and other documents produced by the manufacturer.

2. The operator should ensure that the procedures take account of the following:

   a. the equipment and instruments which must be serviceable for flight in icing conditions;

   b. the limitations on flight in icing conditions for each phase of flight. These limitations may be imposed by the aircraft's de-icing or anti-icing equipment or the necessary performance corrections that have to be made;

   c. the criteria the flight crew should use to assess the effect of icing on the performance and/or controllability of the aircraft;

   d. the means by which the flight crew detects, by visual cues or the use of the aircraft's ice detection system, that the flight is entering icing conditions; and

   e. the action to be taken by the flight crew in a deteriorating situation (which may develop rapidly) resulting in an adverse affect on the performance and/or controllability of the aircraft, due to:

      i. the failure of the aircraft's anti-icing or de-icing equipment to control a build-up of ice; and/or

      ii. ice build-up on unprotected areas.

3. Training for dispatch and flight in expected or actual icing conditions. The content of the operations manual should reflect the training, both conversion and recurrent, which flight crew, cabin crew and all other relevant operational personnel require in order to comply with the procedures for dispatch and flight in icing conditions:

   a. For the flight crew, the training should include:

      i. instruction on how to recognise, from weather reports or forecasts which are available before flight commences or during flight, the risks of encountering icing conditions along the planned route and on how to modify, as necessary, the departure and in-flight routes or profiles;

      ii. instruction on the operational and performance limitations or margins;

      iii. the use of in-flight ice detection, anti-icing and de-icing systems in both normal and abnormal operation; and

      iv. instruction on the differing intensities and forms of ice accretion and the consequent action which should be taken.

   b. For the cabin crew, the training should include;

      i. awareness of the conditions likely to produce surface contamination; and

      ii. the need to inform the flight crew of significant ice accretion.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.255 Ice and other contaminants – flight procedures

PROCEDURES - HELICOPTERS

1. The procedures to be established by the operator should take account of the design, the equipment or the configuration of the helicopter and also of the training which is needed. For these reasons, different helicopter types operated by the same company may require the development of different procedures. In every case, the relevant limitations are those that are defined in the AFM and other documents produced by the manufacturer.

2. For the required entries in the operations manual, the procedural principles which apply to flight in icing conditions are referred to under OR.OPS.MLR and should be cross-referenced, where necessary, to supplementary, type-specific data.

3. Technical content of the procedures

   The operator should ensure that the procedures take account of the following:

   a. CAT.IDE.H.165;

   b. the equipment and instruments that should be serviceable for flight in icing conditions;

   c. the limitations on flight in icing conditions for each phase of flight. These limitations may be specified by the helicopter's de-icing or anti-icing equipment or the necessary performance corrections which have to be made;

   d. the criteria the flight crew should use to assess the effect of icing on the performance and/or controllability of the helicopter;

   e. the means by which the flight crew detects, by visual cues or the use of the helicopter's ice detection system, that the flight is entering icing conditions; and

   f. the action to be taken by the flight crew in a deteriorating situation (which may develop rapidly) resulting in an adverse effect on the performance and/or controllability of the helicopter, due to either:

      i. the failure of the helicopter's anti-icing or de-icing equipment to control a build-up of ice; and/or

      ii. ice build-up on unprotected areas.

4. Training for dispatch and flight in expected or actual icing conditions

The content of the operations manual, Part D, should reflect the training, both conversion and recurrent, which flight crew, and all other relevant operational personnel will require in order to comply with the procedures for dispatch and flight in icing conditions.

   a. For the flight crew, the training should include:

      i. instruction on how to recognise, from weather reports or forecasts that are available before flight commences or during flight, the risks of encountering icing conditions along the planned route and on how to modify, as necessary, the departure and in-flight routes or profiles;

      ii. instruction on the operational and performance limitations or margins;

iii. the use of in-flight ice detection, anti-icing and de-icing systems in both normal and abnormal operation; and

iv. instruction on the differing intensities and forms of ice accretion and the consequent action which should be taken.

b. For crew members other than flight crew, the training should include;

i. awareness of the conditions likely to produce surface contamination; and

ii. the need to inform the flight crew of significant ice accretion.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.270 Minimum flight altitudes

MINIMUM FLIGHT ALTITUDES

1. The following are examples of some of the methods available for calculating minimum flight altitudes.

2. KSS formula:

a. Minimum obstacle clearance altitude (MOCA)

i. MOCA is the sum of:

A. the maximum terrain or obstacle elevation, whichever is higher; plus

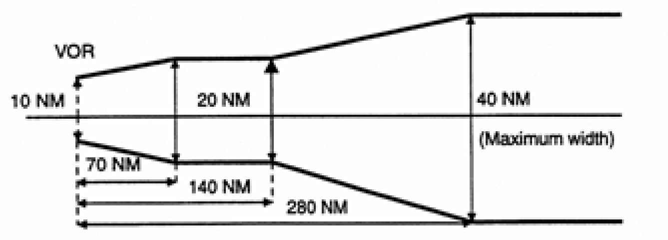
B. 1 000 ft for elevation up to and including 6 000 ft; or

C. 2 000 ft for elevation exceeding 6 000 ft rounded up to the next 100 ft.

ii. The lowest MOCA to be indicated is 2 000 ft.

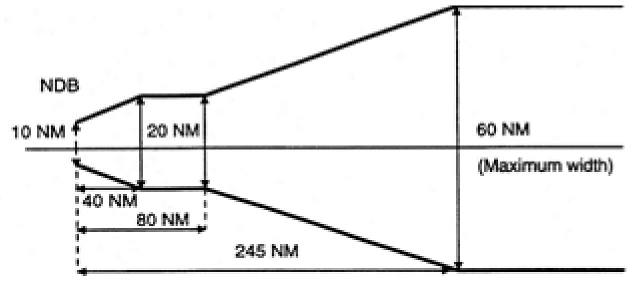
iii. From a VOR station, the corridor width is defined as a borderline starting 5 NM either side of the VOR, diverging 4° from centreline until a width of 20 NM is reached at 70 NM out, thence paralleling the centreline until 140 NM out, thence again diverging 4° until a maximum width of 40 NM is reached at 280 NM out. Thereafter the width remains constant (see Figure 1).

Figure 1 of GM1-CAT.OP.AH.270



iv. From a non-directional beacon (NDB), similarly, the corridor width is defined as a borderline starting 5 NM either side of the NDB diverging 7° until a width of 20 NM is reached 40 NM out, thence paralleling the centreline until 80 NM out, thence again diverging 7° until a maximum width of 60 NM is reached 245 NM out. Thereafter the width remains constant (see Figure 2).

Figure 2 of GM1-CAT.OP.AH.270



v. MOCA does not cover any overlapping of the corridor.

b. Minimum off-route altitude (MORA). MORA is calculated for an area bounded by each or every second LAT/LONG square on the route facility chart (RFC)/terminal approach chart (TAC) and is based on a terrain clearance as follows:

i. terrain with elevation up to 6 000 ft (2 000 m) – 1 000 ft above the highest terrain and obstructions;

ii. terrain with elevation above 6 000 ft (2 000 m) – 2 000 ft above the highest terrain and obstructions.

3. Jeppesen Formula (see Figure 3)

a. MORA is a minimum flight altitude computed by Jeppesen from current operational navigation charts (ONCs) or world aeronautical charts (WACs). Two types of MORAs are charted which are:

i. route MORAs e.g. 9800a; and

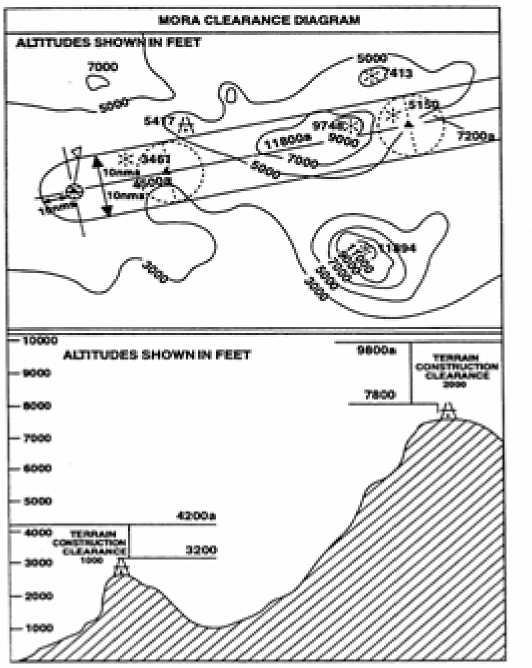
ii. grid MORAs e.g. 98.

b. Route MORA values are computed on the basis of an area extending 10 NM to either side of route centreline and including a 10 NM radius beyond the radio fix/reporting point or mileage break defining the route segment.

c. MORA values clear all terrain and man-made obstacles by 1 000 ft in areas where the highest terrain elevation or obstacles are up to 5 000 ft. A clearance of 2 000 ft is provided above all terrain or obstacles that are 5 001 ft and above.

d. A grid MORA is an altitude computed by Jeppesen and the values are shown within each grid formed by charted lines of latitude and longitude. Figures are shown in thousands and hundreds of feet (omitting the last two digits so as to avoid chart congestion). Values followed by ± are believed not to exceed the altitudes shown. The same clearance criteria as explained in 3.c. apply.

Figure 3 of GM1-CAT.OP.AH.270



4. ATLAS Formula

   a. Minimum safe en-route altitude (MEA). Calculation of the MEA is based on the elevation of the highest point along the route segment concerned (extending from navigational aid to navigational aid) within a distance on either side of track as specified in table 1 below:

   Table 1: Minimum safe en-route altitude

Segment length	Distance either side of track
Up to 100 NM	10 NM *
More than 100 NM	10 % of segment length up to a maximum of 60 NM **

*: *This distance may be reduced to 5 NM within TMAs where, due to the number and type of available navigational aids, a high degree of navigational accuracy is warranted.*

**: *In exceptional cases, where this calculation results in an operationally impracticable value, an additional special MEA may be calculated based on a distance of not less than 10 NM either side of track. Such special MEA will be shown together with an indication of the actual width of protected airspace.*

   b. The MEA is calculated by adding an increment to the elevation specified above as appropriate, following table 2 below. The resulting value is adjusted to the nearest 100 ft.

Table 2: Increment added to the elevation *

Elevation of highest point	Increment
Not above 5 000 ft	1 500 ft
Above 5 000 ft but not above 10 000 ft	2 000 ft
Above 10 000 ft	10 % of elevation plus 1 000 ft

**: For the last route segment ending over the initial approach fix, a reduction to 1 000 ft is permissible within TMAs where, due to the number and type of available navigation aids, a high degree of navigational accuracy is warranted.*

c. Minimum safe grid altitude (MGA) Calculation of the MGA is based on the elevation of the highest point within the respective grid area.

The MGA is calculated by adding an increment to the elevation specified above as appropriate, following table 3 below. The resulting value is adjusted to the nearest 100 ft.

Table 3: Minimum safe grid altitude

Elevation of highest point	Increment
Not above 5 000 ft	1 500 ft
Above 5 000 ft but not above 10 000 ft	2 000 ft
Above 10 000 ft	10 % of elevation plus 1 000 ft

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.281 In-flight fuel management - helicopters

COMPLEX MOTOR-POWERED HELICOPTERS, OTHER THAN LOCAL OPERATIONS

The operator should base in-flight fuel management procedures on the following criteria:

1. In-flight fuel checks
   a. The commander should ensure that fuel checks are carried out in-flight at regular intervals. The remaining fuel should be recorded and evaluated to:
      i. compare actual consumption with planned consumption;
      ii. check that the remaining fuel is sufficient to complete the flight; and
      iii. determine the expected fuel remaining on arrival at the destination.
   b. The relevant fuel data should be recorded.
2. In-flight fuel management
   a. If, as a result of an in-flight fuel check, the expected fuel remaining on arrival at the destination is less than the required alternate fuel plus final reserve fuel, the commander should:
      i divert; or

ii. replan the flight in accordance with CAT.OP.AH.181, (e)(1) unless he/she considers it safer to continue to the destination.

b. At an on-shore destination, when two suitable, separate touchdown and lift-off areas are available and the weather conditions at the destination comply with those specified for planning in CAT.OP.AH.245, (a)(2), the commander may permit alternate fuel to be used before landing at the destination.

3. If, as a result of an in-flight fuel check on a flight to an isolated destination, planned in accordance with 2. above, the expected fuel remaining at the point of last possible diversion is less than the sum of:

a. fuel to divert to an operating site selected in accordance with CAT.OP.AH.181, (b);

b. contingency fuel; and

c. final reserve fuel,

the commander should:

d. divert; or

e. proceed to the destination provided that at on-shore destinations, two suitable, separate touchdown and lift-off areas are available at the destination and the expected weather conditions at the destination comply with those specified for planning in CAT.OP.AH.245, (a)(2).

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.290 Ground proximity detection

GUIDANCE MATERIAL FOR TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (TAWS) FLIGHT CREW TRAINING PROGRAMMES

1. Introduction

a. This Guidance Material contains performance-based training objectives for TAWS flight crew training.

b. The training objectives cover five areas: theory of operation; pre-flight operations; general in-flight operations; response to TAWS cautions; and response to TAWS warnings.

c. The term 'TAWS' in this GM means a ground proximity warning system (GPWS) enhanced by a forward-looking terrain avoidance function. Alerts include both cautions and warnings.

d. The content of this GM is intended to assist operators who are producing training programmes. The information it contains has not been tailored to any specific aircraft or TAWS equipment, but highlights features which are typically available where such systems are installed. It is the responsibility of the individual operator to determine the applicability of the content of this guidance material to each aircraft and TAWS equipment installed and their operation. Operators should refer to the AFM and/or aircraft/flight crew operating manual A/FCOM, or similar documents, for information applicable to specific configurations. If there should be any conflict between the content of this guidance material and that published in the other documents described above, then information contained in the AFM or A/FCOM will take precedence.

2. Scope

   a. The scope of this GM is designed to identify training objectives in the areas of: academic training; manoeuvre training; initial evaluation; and recurrent qualification. Under each of these four areas, the training material has been separated into those items which are considered essential training items and those which are considered to be desirable. In each area, objectives and acceptable performance criteria are defined.

   b. No attempt is made to define how the training programme should be implemented. Instead, objectives are established to define the knowledge that a pilot operating a TAWS is expected to possess and the performance expected from a pilot who has completed TAWS training. However, the guidelines do indicate those areas in which the pilot receiving the training should demonstrate his/her understanding, or performance, using a real-time, interactive training device, i.e. a flight simulator. Where appropriate notes are included within the performance criteria which amplify or clarify the material addressed by the training objective.

3. Performance-based training objectives

   a. TAWS academic training

      i. This training is typically conducted in a classroom environment. The knowledge demonstrations specified in this section may be completed through the successful completion of written tests or by providing correct responses to non-real-time CBT questions.

      ii. Theory of operation. The pilot should demonstrate an understanding of TAWS operation and the criteria used for issuing cautions and warnings. This training should address system operation. Objective: To demonstrate knowledge of how a TAWS functions. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate an understanding of the following functions:

         A. Surveillance

            1. The GPWS computer processes data supplied from an air data computer, a radio altimeter, an instrument landing system (ILS)/microwave landing system (MLS)/multi-mode (MM) receiver, a roll attitude sensor, and actual position of the surfaces and of the landing gear.

            2. The forward looking terrain avoidance function utilises an accurate source of known aircraft position, such as that which may be provided by a flight management system (FMS) or GPS, or an electronic terrain database. The source and scope of the terrain, obstacle and airport data, and features such as the terrain clearance floor, the runway picker, and geometric altitude (where provided), should all be described.

            3. Displays required to deliver TAWS outputs include a loudspeaker for voice announcements, visual alerts

(typically amber and red lights), and a terrain awareness display (that may be combined with other displays). In addition, means should be provided for indicating the status of the TAWS and any partial or total failures that may occur.

B. Terrain avoidance. Outputs from the TAWS computer provide visual and audio synthetic voice cautions and warnings to alert the flight crew about potential conflicts with terrain and obstacles.

C. Alert thresholds. Objective: To demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing cautions and warnings. Criteria: The pilot should be able to demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by a TAWS to issue cautions and alerts and the general criteria for the issuance of these alerts, including:

1. basic GPWS alerting modes specified in the ICAO Standard:

   Mode 1: excessive sink rate;

   Mode 2: excessive terrain closure rate;

   Mode 3: descent after take-off or go-around;

   Mode 4: unsafe proximity to terrain;

   Mode 5: descent below ILS glide slope (caution only); and

2. an additional, optional alert mode:- Mode 6: radio altitude call-out (information only); TAWS cautions and warnings which alert the flight crew to obstacles and terrain ahead of the aircraft in line with or adjacent to its projected flight path (Forward-Looking Terrain Avoidance (FLTA) and Premature Descent Alert (PDA) functions).

D. TAWS limitations. Objective: To verify that the pilot is aware of the limitations of TAWS. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate knowledge and an understanding of TAWS limitations identified by the manufacturer for the equipment model installed, such as:

1. navigation should not be predicated on the use of the terrain display;

2. unless geometric altitude data is provided, use of predictive TAWS functions is prohibited when altimeter subscale settings display ‘QFE’;

3. nuisance alerts can be issued if the aerodrome of intended landing is not included in the TAWS airport database;

4. in cold weather operations, corrective procedures should be implemented by the pilot unless the TAWS has in-built compensation, such as geometric altitude data;

5. loss of input data to the TAWS computer could result in partial or total loss of functionality. Where means exist to inform the flight crew that functionality has been degraded, this should be known and the consequences understood;

6. radio signals not associated with the intended flight profile (e.g. ILS glide path transmissions from an adjacent runway) may cause false alerts;

7. inaccurate or low accuracy aircraft position data could lead to false or non-annunciation of terrain or obstacles ahead of the aircraft; and

8. minimum equipment list (MEL) restrictions should be applied in the event of the TAWS becoming partially or completely unserviceable. (It should be noted that basic GPWS has no forward-looking capability.)

E. TAWS inhibits. Objective: To verify that the pilot is aware of the conditions under which certain functions of a TAWS are inhibited. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate knowledge and an understanding of the various TAWS inhibits, including the following:

1. a means of silencing voice alerts;

2. a means of inhibiting ILS glide path signals (as may be required when executing an ILS back beam approach);

3. a means of inhibiting flap position sensors (as may be required when executing an approach with the flaps not in a normal position for landing);

4. a means of inhibiting the FLTA and PDA functions; and

5. a means of selecting or deselecting the display of terrain information, together with appropriate annunciation of the status of each selection.

b. Operating procedures. The pilot should demonstrate the knowledge required to operate TAWS avionics and to interpret the information presented by a TAWS. This training should address the following topics:

i. Use of controls. Objective: To verify that the pilot can properly operate all TAWS controls and inhibits. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate the proper use of controls, including the following:

A. the means by which, before flight, any equipment self-test functions can be initiated;

B. the means by which TAWS information can be selected for display; and

C. the means by which all TAWS inhibits can be operated and what the consequent annunciations mean with regard to loss of functionality.

ii. Display interpretation. Objective: To verify that the pilot understands the meaning of all information that can be annunciated or displayed by a TAWS. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate the ability to properly interpret information annunciated or displayed by a TAWS, including the following:

A. knowledge of all visual and aural indications that may be seen or heard;

B. response required on receipt of a caution;

C. response required on receipt of a warning; and

D. response required on receipt of a notification that partial or total failure of the TAWS has occurred (including annunciation that the present aircraft position is of low accuracy).

iii. Use of basic GPWS or use of the FLTA function only. Objective: To verify that the pilot understands what functionality will remain following loss of the GPWS or of the FLTA function. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate knowledge of the following:

A. how to recognise un-commanded loss of the GPWS function, or how to isolate this function and how to recognise the level of the remaining controlled flight into terrain (CFIT) protection (essentially, this is the FLTA function); and

B. how to recognise un-commanded loss of the FLTA function, or how to isolate this function and how to recognise the level of the remaining CFIT protection (essentially, this is the basic GPWS).

iv. Crew co-ordination. Objective: To verify that the pilot adequately briefs other flight crew members on how TAWS alerts will be handled. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate that the pre-flight briefing addresses procedures that will be used in preparation for responding to TAWS cautions and warnings, including the following:

A. the action to be taken, and by whom, in the event that a TAWS caution and/or warning is issued; and

B. how multi-function displays will be used to depict TAWS information at take-off, in the cruise and for the descent, approach, landing (and any go-around). This will be in accordance with procedures specified by the operator, who will recognise that it may be more desirable that other data is displayed at certain phases of flight and that the terrain display has an automatic 'pop-up' mode in the event that an alert is issued.

v. Reporting requirements. Objective: To verify that the pilot is aware of the requirements for reporting alerts to the controller and other authorities. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate knowledge of the following:

A. when, following recovery from a TAWS alert or caution, a transmission of information should be made to the appropriate air traffic control unit; and

B. the type of written report which is required, how it is to be compiled, and whether any cross reference should be made in the aircraft technical log and/or voyage report (in accordance with procedures specified by the operator), following a flight in which the aircraft flight path has been modified in response to a TAWS alert, or if any part of the equipment appears not to have functioned correctly.

vi. Alert thresholds. Objective: To demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing cautions and warnings. Criteria: The pilot should be able to demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by a TAWS to issue cautions and warnings and the general criteria for the issuance of these alerts, including:

A. awareness of the modes associated with basic GPWS, including the input data associated with each; and

B. awareness of the visual and aural annunciations that can be issued by TAWS and how to identify which are cautions and which are warnings.

c. TAWS manoeuvre training. The pilot should demonstrate the knowledge required to respond correctly to TAWS cautions and warnings. This training should address the following topics:

i. Response to cautions:

A. Objective: To verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to cautions. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate an understanding of the need, without delay:

1. to initiate action required to correct the condition which has caused the TAWS to issue the caution and to be prepared to respond to a warning, if this should follow; and

2. if a warning does not follow the caution, to notify the controller of the new position, heading and/or altitude/flight level of the aircraft, and what the commander intends to do next.

B. The correct response to a caution might require the pilot:

1. to reduce a rate of descent and/or to initiate a climb;

2. to regain an ILS glide path from below, or to inhibit a glide path signal if an ILS is not being flown;

3. to select more flap, or to inhibit a flap sensor if the landing is being conducted with the intent that the normal flap setting will not be used;

4. to select gear down; and/or

5. to initiate a turn away from the terrain or obstacle ahead and towards an area free of such obstructions if a forward-looking terrain display indicates that this would be a good solution and the entire manoeuvre can be carried out in clear visual conditions.

ii. Response to warnings. Objective: To verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to warnings. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate an understanding of the following:

A. The need, without delay, to initiate a climb in the manner specified by the operator.

B. The need, without delay, to maintain the climb until visual verification can be made that the aircraft will clear the terrain or obstacle ahead or until above the appropriate sector safe altitude (if certain about the location of the aircraft with respect to terrain) even if the TAWS warning stops. If, subsequently, the aircraft climbs up through the sector safe altitude, but the visibility does not allow the flight crew to confirm that the terrain hazard has ended, checks should be made to verify the location of the aircraft and to confirm that the altimeter subscale settings are correct.

C. When the workload permits, that the flight crew should notify the air traffic controller of the new position and altitude/flight level, and what the commander intends to do next.

D. That the manner in which the climb is made should reflect the type of aircraft and the method specified by the aircraft manufacturer (which should be reflected in the operations manual) for performing the escape manoeuvre. Essential aspects will include the need for an increase in pitch attitude, selection of maximum thrust, confirmation that external sources of drag (e.g. spoilers/speed brakes) are retracted, and respect of the stick shaker or other indication of eroded stall margin.

E. That TAWS warnings should never be ignored. However, the pilot's response may be limited to that which is appropriate for a caution, only if:

1. the aircraft is being operated by day in clear, visual conditions; and

2. it is immediately clear to the pilot that the aircraft is in no danger in respect of its configuration, proximity to terrain or current flight path.

d. TAWS initial evaluation:

i. The flight crew member's understanding of the academic training items should be assessed by means of a written test.

ii. The flight crew member's understanding of the manoeuvre training items should be assessed in a FSTD equipped with TAWS visual and aural displays and inhibit selectors similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft which the pilot will fly. The results should be assessed by a flight simulation training instructor, synthetic flight examiner, type rating instructor or type rating examiner.

iii. The range of scenarios should be designed to give confidence that proper and timely responses to TAWS cautions and warnings will result in the aircraft avoiding a CFIT accident. To achieve this objective, the pilot should demonstrate taking the correct action to prevent a caution developing into a warning and, separately, the escape manoeuvre needed in response to a warning. These demonstrations should take place when the external visibility is zero, though there is much to be learnt if, initially, the training is given in 'mountainous' or 'hilly' terrain with clear visibility. This training should comprise a sequence of scenarios, rather than be included in line orientated flying training (LOFT).

iv. A record should be made, after the pilot has demonstrated competence, of the scenarios that were practised.

e. TAWS recurrent training:

i. TAWS recurrent training ensures that pilots maintain the appropriate TAWS knowledge and skills. In particular, it reminds pilots of the need to act promptly in response to cautions and warnings, and of the unusual attitude associated with flying the escape manoeuvre.

ii. An essential item of recurrent training is the discussion of any significant issues and operational concerns that have been identified by the operator. Recurrent training should also address changes to TAWS logic, parameters or procedures and to any unique TAWS characteristics of which pilots should be aware.

f. Reporting procedures:

i. Verbal reports. Verbal reports should be made promptly to the appropriate air traffic control unit:

A. whenever any manoeuvre has caused the aircraft to deviate from an air traffic clearance;

B. when, following a manoeuvre which has caused the aircraft to deviate from an air traffic clearance, the aircraft has returned to a flight path which complies with the clearance; and/or

C. when an air traffic control unit issues instructions which, if followed, would cause the pilot to manoeuvre the aircraft towards terrain or obstacle or it would appear from the display that a potential CFIT occurrence is likely to result.

ii. Written reports. Written reports should be submitted in accordance with the operator's occurrence reporting scheme and they also should be recorded in the aircraft technical log:

A. whenever the aircraft flight path has been modified in response to a TAWS alert (false, nuisance or genuine);

B. whenever a TAWS alert has been issued and is believed to have been false; and/or

C. if it is believed that a TAWS alert should have been issued, but was not.

iii. Within this GM, and with regard to reports:

A. the term 'false' means that the TAWS issued an alert which could not possibly be justified by the position of the aircraft in respect to terrain and it is probable that a fault or failure in the system (equipment and/or input data) was the cause;

B. the term 'nuisance' means that the TAWS issued an alert which was appropriate, but was not needed because the flight crew could determine by independent means that the flight path was, at that time, safe;

C. the term 'genuine' means that the TAWS issued an alert which was both appropriate and necessary; and

D. the report terms described in3.f.iii above are only meant to be assessed after the occurrence is over, to facilitate subsequent analysis, the adequacy of the equipment and the programmes it contains. The intention is not for the flight crew to attempt to classify an alert into any of these three categories when visual and/or aural cautions or warnings are annunciated.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.295 Use of airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS II)

GENERAL

1. The ACAS operational procedures and training programmes established by the operator should take into account this Guidance Material. It incorporates advice contained in:

   a. ICAO Annex 10, Volume IV;

   b. ICAO PANS-OPS, Volume 1;

   c. ICAO PANS-ATM; and

   d. ICAO guidance material “ACAS Performance-Based Training Objectives” (published under Attachment E of State Letter AN 7/1.3.7.2-97/77).

2. Additional guidance material on ACAS may be referred to, including information available from such sources as EUROCONTROL.

ACAS FLIGHT CREW TRAINING PROGRAMMES

1. During the implementation of ACAS, several operational issues were identified which had been attributed to deficiencies in flight crew training programmes. As a result, the issue of flight crew training has been discussed within the ICAO, which has developed guidelines for operators to use when designing training programmes.

2. This Guidance Material contains performance-based training objectives for ACAS II flight crew training. Information contained in this paper related to traffic advisories (TAs) is also applicable to ACAS I and ACAS III users. The training objectives cover five areas: theory of operation; pre-flight operations; general in-flight operations; response to TAs; and response to resolution advisories (RAs).

3. The information provided is valid for version 7 and 7.1 (ACAS II). Where differences arise, these are identified.

4. The performance-based training objectives are further divided into the areas of: academic training; manoeuvre training; initial evaluation and recurrent qualification. Under each of these four areas, the training material has been separated into those items which are considered essential training items and those which are considered desirable. In each area, objectives and acceptable performance criteria are defined.

5. ACAS academic training

   a. This training is typically conducted in a classroom environment. The knowledge demonstrations specified in this section may be completed through the successful completion of written tests or through providing correct responses to non-real-time computer-based training (CBT) questions.

   b. Essential items

      i. Theory of operation. The flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of ACAS II operation and the criteria used for issuing TAs and RAs. This training should address the following topics:

         A. System operation

            Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of how ACAS functions.

            Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of the following functions:

            1. Surveillance

               a. ACAS interrogates other transponder-equipped aircraft within a nominal range of 14 NM.

               b. ACAS surveillance range can be reduced in geographic areas with a large number of ground interrogators and/or ACAS II-equipped aircraft.

               c. If the operator's ACAS implementation provides for the use of the Mode S extended squitter, the normal surveillance range may be increased beyond the nominal 14 NM. However, this information is not used for collision avoidance purposes.

            2. Collision avoidance

               a. TAs can be issued against any transponder-equipped aircraft which responds to the ICAO Mode C interrogations, even if the aircraft does not have altitude reporting capability.

               b. RAs can be issued only against aircraft that are reporting altitude and in the vertical plane only.

               c. RAs issued against an ACAS-equipped intruder are co-ordinated to ensure complementary RAs are issued.

               d. Failure to respond to an RA deprives own aircraft of the collision protection provided by own ACAS.

               e. Additionally, in ACAS-ACAS encounters, it also restricts the choices available to the other aircraft's ACAS and thus renders the other aircraft's ACAS less effective than if own aircraft were not ACAS equipped.

         B. Advisory thresholds

Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing TAs and RAs.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by ACAS to issue TAs and RAs and the general criteria for the issuance of these advisories, including the following:

1. ACAS advisories are based on time to closest point of approach (CPA) rather than distance. The time should be short and vertical separation should be small, or projected to be small, before an advisory can be issued. The separation standards provided by ATS are different from the miss distances against which ACAS issues alerts.
2. Thresholds for issuing a TA or an RA vary with altitude. The thresholds are larger at higher altitudes.
3. A TA occurs from 15 to 48 seconds and an RA from 15 to 35 seconds before the projected CPA.
4. RAs are chosen to provide the desired vertical miss distance at CPA. As a result, RAs can instruct a climb or descent through the intruder aircraft's altitude.

C. ACAS limitations

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the limitations of ACAS.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge and understanding of ACAS limitations, including the following:

1. ACAS will neither track nor display non-transponder-equipped aircraft, nor aircraft not responding to ACAS Mode C interrogations.
2. ACAS will automatically fail if the input from the aircraft’s barometric altimeter, radio altimeter or transponder is lost.
   a. In some installations, the loss of information from other on board systems such as an inertial reference system (IRS) or attitude heading reference system (AHRS) may result in an ACAS failure. Individual operators should ensure that their flight crews are aware of the types of failure which will result in an ACAS failure.
   b. ACAS may react in an improper manner when false altitude information is provided to own ACAS or transmitted by another aircraft. Individual operators should ensure that their flight crew are aware of the types of unsafe conditions which can arise. Flight crew members should ensure that when they are advised, if their own aircraft is transmitting false altitude reports, an alternative altitude reporting

source is selected, or altitude reporting is switched off.

3. Some aeroplanes within 380 ft above ground level (AGL) (nominal value) are deemed to be ‘on ground’ and will not be displayed. If ACAS is able to determine an aircraft below this altitude is airborne, it will be displayed.

4. ACAS may not display all proximate transponder-equipped aircraft in areas of high density traffic.

5. The bearing displayed by ACAS is not sufficiently accurate to support the initiation of horizontal manoeuvres based solely on the traffic display.

6. ACAS will neither track nor display intruders with a vertical speed in excess of 10 000 ft/min. In addition, the design implementation may result in some short-term errors in the tracked vertical speed of an intruder during periods of high vertical acceleration by the intruder.

7. Ground proximity warning systems/ground collision avoidance systems (GPWSs/GCASs) warnings and wind shear warnings take precedence over ACAS advisories. When either a GPWS/GCAS or wind shear warning is active, ACAS aural annunciations will be inhibited and ACAS will automatically switch to the 'TA only' mode of operation.

D. ACAS inhibits

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the conditions under which certain functions of ACAS are inhibited.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the various ACAS inhibits, including the following:

1. "Increase Descent" RAs are inhibited below 1 450 ft AGL;

2. "Descend" RAs are inhibited below 1 100 ft AGL;

3. all RAs are inhibited below 1 000 ft AGL;

4. all TA aural annunciations are inhibited below 500 ft AGL; and

5. altitude and configuration under which "Climb" and "Increase Climb" RAs are inhibited. ACAS can still issue "Climb" and "Increase Climb" RAs when operating at the aeroplane's certified ceiling. (In some aircraft types, "Climb" or "Increase Climb" RAs are never inhibited.)

ii. Operating procedures

The flight crew member should demonstrate the knowledge required to operate the ACAS avionics and interpret the information presented by ACAS. This training should address the following:

A. Use of controls

Objective: to verify that the pilot can properly operate all ACAS and display controls.

Criteria: demonstrate the proper use of controls including:

1. aircraft configuration required to initiate a self-test;
2. steps required to initiate a self-test;
3. recognising when the self-test was successful and when it was unsuccessful. When the self-test is unsuccessful, recognising the reason for the failure and, if possible, correcting the problem;
4. recommended usage of range selection. Low ranges are used in the terminal area and the higher display ranges are used in the en-route environment and in the transition between the terminal and en-route environment;
5. recognising that the configuration of the display does not affect the ACAS surveillance volume;
6. selection of lower ranges when an advisory is issued, to increase display resolution;
7. proper configuration to display the appropriate ACAS information without eliminating the display of other needed information;
8. if available, recommended usage of the above/below mode selector. The above mode should be used during climb and the below mode should be used during descent; and
9. if available, proper selection of the display of absolute or relative altitude and the limitations of using this display if a barometric correction is not provided to ACAS.

B. Display interpretation

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member understands the meaning of all information that can be displayed by ACAS. The wide variety of display implementations require the tailoring of some criteria. When the training programme is developed, these criteria should be expanded to cover details for the operator's specific display implementation.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate the ability to properly interpret information displayed by ACAS, including the following:

1. other traffic, i.e. traffic within the selected display range that is not proximate traffic, or causing a TA or RA to be issued;
2. proximate traffic, i.e. traffic that is within 6 NM and ±1 200 ft;

3. non-altitude reporting traffic;
4. no bearing TAs and RAs;
5. off-scale TAs and RAs: the selected range should be changed to ensure that all available information on the intruder is displayed;
6. TAs: the minimum available display range which allows the traffic to be displayed should be selected, to provide the maximum display resolution;
7. RAs (traffic display): the minimum available display range of the traffic display which allows the traffic to be displayed should be selected, to provide the maximum display resolution;
8. RAs (RA display): flight crew members should demonstrate knowledge of the meaning of the red and green areas or the meaning of pitch or flight path angle cues displayed on the RA display. Flight crew members should also demonstrate an understanding of the RA display limitations, i.e. if a vertical speed tape is used and the range of the tape is less than 2 500 ft/min, an increase rate RA cannot be properly displayed; and
9. if appropriate, awareness that navigation displays oriented on "Track-Up" may require a flight crew member to make a mental adjustment for drift angle when assessing the bearing of proximate traffic.

C. Use of the TA only mode

Objective: to verify that a flight crew member understands the appropriate times to select the TA only mode of operation and the limitations associated with using this mode.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate the following:

1. Knowledge of the operator's guidance for the use of TA only.
2. Reasons for using this mode. If TA only is not selected when an airport is conducting simultaneous operations from parallel runways separated by less than 1 200 ft, and to some intersecting runways, RAs can be expected. If for any reason TA only is not selected and an RA is received in these situations, the response should comply with the operator's approved procedures.
3. All TA aural annunciations are inhibited below 500 ft AGL. As a result, TAs issued below 500 ft AGL may not be noticed unless the TA display is included in the routine instrument scan.

D. Crew co-ordination

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member understands how ACAS advisories will be handled.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge of the crew procedures that should be used when responding to TAs and RAs, including the following:

1. task sharing between the pilot flying and the pilot monitoring;
2. expected call-outs; and
3. communications with ATC.

E. Phraseology requirements

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the requirements for reporting RAs to the controller.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate the following:

1. the use of the phraseology contained in ICAO PANS-OPS;
2. an understanding of the procedures contained in ICAO PANS-ATM and ICAO Annex 2; and
3. the understanding that verbal reports should be made promptly to the appropriate ATC unit:
   a. whenever any manoeuvre has caused the aeroplane to deviate from an air traffic clearance;
   b. when, subsequent to a manoeuvre that has caused the aeroplane to deviate from an air traffic clearance, the aeroplane has returned to a flight path that complies with the clearance; and/or
   c. when air traffic issue instructions that, if followed, would cause the crew to manoeuvre the aircraft contrary to an RA with which they are complying.

F. Reporting requirements

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the requirements for reporting RAs to the operator.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge of where information can be obtained regarding the need for making written reports to various states when an RA is issued. Various states have different reporting requirements and the material available to the flight crew member should be tailored to the operator’s operating environment. For operators involved in commercial operations, this responsibility is satisfied by the flight crew member reporting to the operator according to the applicable reporting requirements.

c. Non-essential items: advisory thresholds

Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing TAs and RAs.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by ACAS to issue TAs and RAs and the general criteria for the issuance of these advisories, including the following:

i. the minimum and maximum altitudes below/above which TAs will not be issued;

ii. when the vertical separation at CPA is projected to be less than the ACAS-desired separation, a corrective RA which requires a change to the existing vertical speed will be issued. This separation varies from 300 ft at low altitude to a maximum of 700 ft at high altitude;

iii. when the vertical separation at CPA is projected to be just outside the ACAS-desired separation, a preventive RA that does not require a change to the existing vertical speed will be issued. This separation varies from 600 to 800 ft; and

iv. RA fixed range thresholds vary between 0.2 and 1.1 NM.

6. ACAS manoeuvre training

a. Demonstration of the flight crew member's ability to use ACAS displayed information to properly respond to TAs and RAs should be carried out in a full flight simulator equipped with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft. If a full flight simulator is utilised, CRM should be practised during this training.

b. Alternatively, the required demonstrations can be carried out by means of an interactive CBT with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft. This interactive CBT should depict scenarios in which real-time responses should be made. The flight crew member should be informed whether or not the responses made were correct. If the response was incorrect or inappropriate, the CBT should show what the correct response should be.

c. The scenarios included in the manoeuvre training should include: corrective RAs; initial preventive RAs; maintain rate RAs; altitude crossing RAs; increase rate RAs; RA reversals; weakening RAs; and multi-aircraft encounters. The consequences of failure to respond correctly should be demonstrated by reference to actual incidents such as those publicised in EUROCONROL ACAS II 'safety flash' Bulletins.

i. TA responses

Objective: to verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to TAs.

Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate the following:

A. Proper division of responsibilities between the pilot flying and the pilot monitoring. The pilot flying should fly the aircraft using any type-specific procedures and be prepared to respond to any RA that might follow. For aircraft without an RA pitch display, the pilot flying should consider the likely magnitude of an appropriate pitch change. The pilot monitoring should provide updates on the traffic location shown on the ACAS display, using this information to help visually acquire the intruder.

B. Proper interpretation of the displayed information. Flight crew members should confirm that the aircraft they have visually acquired is that which has caused the TA to be issued. Use should be made of all information shown on the display, note being taken of the bearing and range of the intruder (amber circle), whether it is above or below (data tag), and its vertical speed direction (trend arrow).

C. Other available information should be used to assist in visual acquisition, including ATC "party-line" information, traffic flow in use, etc..

D. Because of the limitations described, the pilot flying should not manoeuvre the aircraft based solely on the information shown on the ACAS display. No attempt should be made to adjust the current flight path in anticipation of what an RA would advise, except that if own aircraft is approaching its cleared level at a high vertical rate with a TA present, vertical rate should be reduced to less than 1 500 ft/min.

E. When visual acquisition is attained, and as long as no RA is received, normal right of way rules should be used to maintain or attain safe separation. No unnecessary manoeuvres should be initiated. The limitations of making manoeuvres based solely on visual acquisition, especially at high altitude or at night, or without a definite horizon should be demonstrated as being understood.

ii. RA responses

Objective: to verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to RAs.

Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate the following:

A. Proper response to the RA, even if it is in conflict with an ATC instruction and even if the pilot believes that there is no threat present.

B. Proper task sharing between the pilot flying and the pilot monitoring. The pilot flying should respond to a corrective RA with appropriate control inputs. The pilot monitoring should monitor the response to the RA and should provide updates on the traffic location by checking the traffic display. Proper crew resource management (CRM) should be used.

C. Proper interpretation of the displayed information. The pilot should recognise the intruder causing the RA to be issued (red square on display). The pilot should respond appropriately.

D. For corrective RAs, the response should be initiated in the proper direction within five seconds of the RA being displayed. The change in vertical speed should be accomplished with an acceleration of approximately ¼ g (gravitational acceleration of 9.81 m/sec²).

E. Recognition of the initially displayed RA being modified. Response to the modified RA should be properly accomplished, as follows:

1. For increase rate RAs, the vertical speed change should be started within two and a half seconds of the RA being displayed. The change in vertical speed should be accomplished with an acceleration of approximately ⅓ g.
2. For RA reversals, the vertical speed reversal should be started within two and a half seconds of the RA being displayed. The change in vertical speed should be accomplished with an acceleration of approximately ⅓ g.
3. For RA weakenings, the vertical speed should be modified to initiate a return towards the original clearance.
4. An acceleration of approximately ¼ g will be achieved if the change in pitch attitude corresponding to a change in vertical speed of 1 500 ft/min is accomplished in approximately five seconds, and of ⅓ g if the change is accomplished in approximately three seconds. The change in pitch attitude required to establish a rate of climb or descent of 1 500 ft/min from level flight will be approximately 6° when the true airspeed (TAS) is 150 kt, 4° at 250 kt, and 2° at 500 kt. (These angles are derived from the formula: 1 000 divided by TAS.).

F. Recognition of altitude crossing encounters and the proper response to these RAs.

G. For preventive RAs, the vertical speed needle or pitch attitude indication, should remain outside the red area on the RA display.

H. For maintain rate RAs, the vertical speed should not be reduced. Pilots should recognise that a maintain rate RA may result in crossing through the intruder's altitude.

I. When the RA weakens, or when the green 'fly to' indicator changes position, the pilot should initiate a return towards the original clearance, and when "clear of conflict" is annunciated, the pilot should complete the return to the original clearance.

J. The controller should be informed of the RA as soon as time and workload permit, using the standard phraseology.

K. When possible, an ATC clearance should be complied with while responding to an RA. For example, if the aircraft can level at the assigned altitude while responding to RA (an "adjust vertical speed" RA (version 7) or “level off” (version 7.1) it should be done; the horizontal (turn) element of an ATC instruction should be followed.

L. Knowledge of the ACAS multi-aircraft logic and its limitations, and that ACAS can optimise separations from two aircraft by climbing or descending towards one of them. For example, ACAS only considers intruders which it considers to be a threat when selecting an RA. As such, it is possible for ACAS to issue an RA against one intruder which results in a manoeuvre towards another intruder which is not classified as a threat. If the second intruder becomes a threat, the RA will be modified to provide separation from that intruder.

7. ACAS initial evaluation

   a. The flight crew member’s understanding of the academic training items should be assessed by means of a written test or interactive CBT that records correct and incorrect responses to phrased questions.

   b. The flight crew member’s understanding of the manoeuvre training items should be assessed in a full flight simulator equipped with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft the flight crew member will fly, and the results assessed by a qualified instructor, inspector, or check airman. The range of scenarios should include: corrective RAs; initial preventive RAs; maintain rate RAs; altitude crossing RAs; increase rate RAs; RA reversals; weakening RAs; and multi-threat encounters. The scenarios should also include demonstrations of the consequences of not responding to RAs, slow or late responses, and manoeuvring opposite to the direction called for by the displayed RA.

   c. Alternatively, exposure to these scenarios can be conducted by means of an interactive CBT with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft the pilot will fly. This interactive CBT should depict scenarios in which real-time responses should be made and a record made of whether or not each response was correct.

8. ACAS recurrent training

   a. ACAS recurrent training ensures that flight crew members maintain the appropriate ACAS knowledge and skills. ACAS recurrent training should be integrated into and/or conducted in conjunction with other established recurrent training programmes. An essential item of recurrent training is the discussion of any significant issues and operational concerns that have been identified by the operator. Recurrent training should also address changes to ACAS logic, parameters or procedures and to any unique ACAS characteristics which flight crew members should be made aware of.

   b. It is recommended that operator's recurrent training programmes using full flight simulators include encounters with conflicting traffic when these simulators are equipped with ACAS. The full range of likely scenarios may be spread over a two-year period. If a full flight simulator, as described above, is not available, use should be made of an interactive CBT that is capable of presenting scenarios to which pilot responses should be made in real-time.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.300 Approach and landing conditions

IN-FLIGHT DETERMINATION OF THE LANDING DISTANCE

The in-flight determination of the landing distance should be based on the latest available meteorological or runway state report, preferably not more than 30 minutes before the expected landing time.

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.305(f) Commencement and continuation of approach

EXPLANATION OF THE TERM "RELEVANT"

"Relevant" in this context means that part of the runway used during the high-speed phase of the landing down to a speed of approximately 60 knots (kt).

GM1-CAT.OP.AH.315 Flight hours reporting - helicopters

FLIGHT HOURS REPORTING

1. The requirement in CAT.OP.AH.315 may be achieved by making available either:
   a. the flight hours flown by each helicopter – identified by its serial number and registration mark - during the previous calendar year; or
   b. the total flight hours of each helicopter – identified by its serial number and registration mark – on the 31^{st} of December of the previous calendar year.
2. Where possible, the operator should have available, for each helicopter, the breakdown of hours for CAT operations. If the exact hours for the functional activity cannot be established, the estimated proportion will be sufficient.

AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.305(d) Commencement and continuation of approach

VISUAL REFERENCES FOR INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS

1. NPA, APV and CAT I operations

   At DH or MDH, at least one of the visual references specified below should be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot:
   a. elements of the approach light system;
   b. the threshold;
   c. the threshold markings;
   d. the threshold lights;
   e. the threshold identification lights;
   f. the visual glide slope indicator;
   g. the touchdown zone or touchdown zone markings;
   h. the touchdown zone lights;
   i. runway edge lights; or
   j. other visual references specified in the operations manual.
2. LTS CAT I operations

   At DH, the visual references specified below should be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot:
   a. a segment of at least three consecutive lights, being the centreline of the approach lights, or touchdown zone lights, or runway centreline lights, or runway edge lights, or a combination of these;

b. this visual reference should include a lateral element of the ground pattern, such as an approach light crossbar or the landing threshold or a barrette of the touchdown zone light unless the operation is conducted utilising an approved HUDLS usable to at least 150 ft.

3. CAT II or OTS CAT II operations

At DH, the visual references specified below should be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot:

a. a segment of at least three consecutive lights being the centreline of the approach lights, or touchdown zone lights, or runway centreline lights, or runway edge lights, or a combination of these;

b. this visual reference should include a lateral element of the ground pattern, such as an approach light crossbar or the landing threshold or a barrette of the touchdown zone light unless the operation is conducted utilising an approved HUDLS to touchdown.

4. CAT III operations

a. For CAT IIIA operations and for CAT IIIB operations conducted either with fail-passive flight control systems or with the use of an approved HUDLS: at DH, a segment of at least three consecutive lights being the centreline of the approach lights, or touchdown zone lights, or runway centreline lights, or runway edge lights, or a combination of these is attained and can be maintained by the pilot.

b. For CAT IIIB operations conducted either with fail-operational flight control systems or with a fail-operational hybrid landing system using a DH: at DH, at least one centreline light is attained and can be maintained by the pilot.

c. For CAT IIIB operations with no DH there is no requirement for visual reference with the runway prior to touchdown.

5. Approach operations utilising EVS

a. At DH or MDH, the following visual references should be displayed and identifiable to the pilot on the EVS:

   i. elements of the approach light; or

   ii. the runway threshold, identified by at least one of the following: the beginning of the runway landing surface, the threshold lights, the threshold identification lights; and the touchdown zone, identified by at least one of the following: the runway touchdown zone landing surface, the touchdown zone lights, the touchdown zone markings or the runway lights.

b. At 100 ft above runway threshold elevation at least one of the visual references specified below should be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot without reliance on the EVS:

   i. the lights or markings of the threshold; or

   ii. the lights or markings of the touchdown zone.

Subpart C – Aircraft performance and operating limitations

Section 1 – Aeroplanes

Chapter 1 - General requirements

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.105 General

LANDING - REVERSE THRUST CREDIT

Landing distance data included in the AFM (or pilot's operating handbook (POH) etc.) with credit for reverse thrust can only be considered to be approved for the purpose of showing compliance with the applicable requirements if it contains a specific statement from the Agency that it complies with a recognised airworthiness code (e.g. FAR 23/25, CS 23/25 or equivalent).

Chapter 2 - Performance class A

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.200 General

WET AND CONTAMINATED RUNWAY DATA

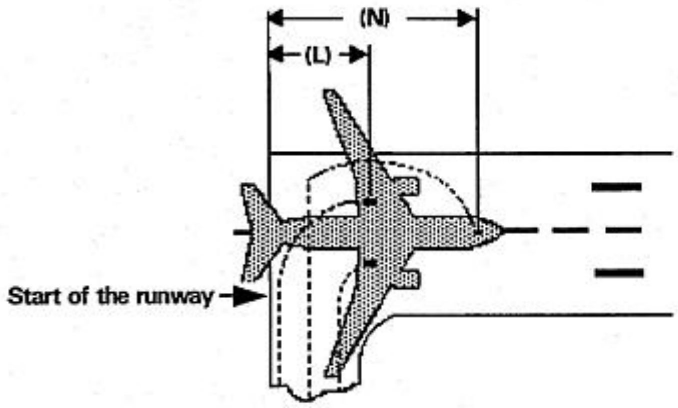
If the performance data has been determined on the basis of measured runway friction coefficient, the operator should use a procedure correlating the measured runway friction coefficient and the effective braking coefficient of friction of the aeroplane type over the required speed range for the existing runway conditions.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.205 Take-off

LOSS OF RUNWAY LENGTH DUE TO ALIGNMENT

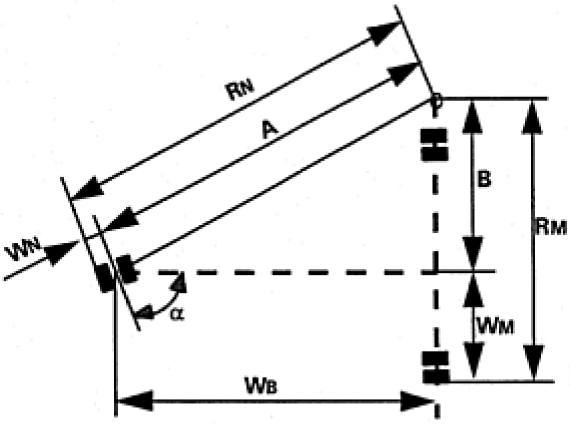
1. The length of the runway which is declared for the calculation of take-off distance available (TODA), accelerate-stop distance available (ASDA) and take-off run available (TORA) does not account for line-up of the aeroplane in the direction of take-off on the runway in use. This alignment distance depends on the aeroplane geometry and access possibility to the runway in use. Accountability is usually required for a 90° taxiway entry to the runway and 180° turnaround on the runway. There are two distances to be considered:
   a. the minimum distance of the main wheels from the start of the runway for determining TODA and TORA,"L"; and
   b. the minimum distance of the most forward wheel(s) from the start of the runway for determining ASDA,"N".

Figure 1: Line-up of the aeroplane in the direction of take-off - L and N



Where the aeroplane manufacturer does not provide the appropriate data, the calculation method given in 2. below may be used to determine the alignment distance.

2. Alignment distance calculation



The distances mentioned in 1.a and 1.b above are:

	90° ENTRY	180° TURNAROUND
L=	RM + X	RN + Y
N=	RM + X + WB	RN + Y + WB

where:

RN = A + WN = WB/cos(90°-α) + WN

RM = B + WM = WB tan(90°-α) + WM

X = safety distance of outer main wheel during turn to the edge of the runway

Y = safety distance of outer nose wheel during turn to the edge of the runway

NOTE: Minimum edge safety distances for X and Y are specified in FAA AC 150/5300-13 and ICAO Annex 14, 3.8.3

RN = radius of turn of outer nose wheel

RM = radius of turn of outer main wheel

WN = distance from aeroplane centre-line to outer nose wheel

WM = distance from aeroplane centre-line to outer main wheel

WB = wheel base

α = steering angle.

GM1-CAT.POL.A.205 Take-off

RUNWAY SURFACE CONDITION

1. Operation on runways contaminated with water, slush, snow or ice implies uncertainties with regard to runway friction and contaminant drag and therefore to the achievable performance and control of the aeroplane during take-off, since the actual conditions may not completely match the assumptions on which the performance information is based. In the case of a contaminated runway, the first option for the commander is to wait until the runway is cleared. If this is impracticable, he may consider a take-off, provided that he has applied the applicable performance adjustments, and any further safety measures he considers justified under the prevailing conditions.
2. An adequate overall level of safety will only be maintained if operations in accordance with AMC 25.1591 or equivalent are limited to rare occasions. Where the frequency of such operations on contaminated runways is not limited to rare occasions, the operator should provide additional measures ensuring an equivalent level of safety. Such measures could include special crew training, additional distance factoring and more restrictive wind limitations.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance

TAKE-OFF OBSTACLE CLEARANCE

1. In accordance with the definitions used in preparing the take-off distance and take-off flight path data provided in the AFM:
   a. The net take-off flight path is considered to begin at a height of 35 ft above the runway or clearway at the end of the take-off distance determined for the aeroplane in accordance with (b) below.
   b. The take-off distance is the longest of the following distances:
      i. 115 % of the distance with all engines operating from the start of the take-off to the point at which the aeroplane is 35 ft above the runway or clearway;
      ii. the distance from the start of the take-off to the point at which the aeroplane is 35 ft above the runway or clearway assuming failure of the

critical engine occurs at the point corresponding to the decision speed (V_1) for a dry runway; or

iii. if the runway is wet or contaminated, the distance from the start of the take-off to the point at which the aeroplane is 15 ft above the runway or clearway assuming failure of the critical engine occurs at the point corresponding to the decision speed (V_1) for a wet or contaminated runway.

2. The net take-off flight path, determined from the data provided in the AFM in accordance with 1.a. and 1.b. above, should clear all relevant obstacles by a vertical distance of 35 ft. When taking off on a wet or contaminated runway and an engine failure occurs at the point corresponding to the decision speed (V_1) for a wet or contaminated runway, this implies that the aeroplane can initially be as much as 20 ft below the net take-off flight path in accordance with 1. above and, therefore, may clear close-in obstacles by only 15 ft. When taking off on wet or contaminated runways, the operator should exercise special care with respect to obstacle assessment, especially if a take-off is obstacle-limited and the obstacle density is high.

EFFECT OF BANK ANGLES

1. The AFM generally provides a climb gradient decrement for a 15° bank turn. For bank angles of less than 15°, a proportionate amount should be applied, unless the manufacturer or AFM has provided other data.
2. Unless otherwise specified in the AFM or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, acceptable adjustments to assure adequate stall margins and gradient corrections are provided by the following table:

Table 1: Effect of bank angles

BANK	SPEED	GRADIENT CORRECTION
15°	V_2	1 x AFM 15° gradient loss
20°	V_2 + 5 kt	2 x AFM 15° gradient loss
25°	V_2 + 10 kt	3 x AFM 15° gradient loss

REQUIRED NAVIGATIONAL ACCURACY

1. Flight-deck systems

   The obstacle accountability semi-widths of 300 m and 600 m may be used if the navigation system under OEI conditions provides a two standard deviation accuracy of 150 m and 300 m respectively.

2. Visual course guidance

   a. The obstacle accountability semi-widths of 300 m and 600 m may be used where navigational accuracy is ensured at all relevant points on the flight path by use of external references. These references may be considered visible from the flight deck if they are situated more than 45° either side of the intended track and with a depression of not greater than 20° from the horizontal.

b. For visual course guidance navigation, the operator should ensure that the weather conditions prevailing at the time of operation, including ceiling and visibility, are such that the obstacle and/or ground reference points can be seen and identified. The operations manual should specify, for the aerodrome(s) concerned, the minimum weather conditions which enable the flight crew to continuously determine and maintain the correct flight path with respect to ground reference points, so as to provide a safe clearance with respect to obstructions and terrain as follows:

   i. the procedure should be well defined with respect to ground reference points so that the track to be flown can be analysed for obstacle clearance requirements;

   ii. the procedure should be within the capabilities of the aeroplane with respect to forward speed, bank angle and wind effects;

   iii. a written and/or pictorial description of the procedure should be provided for crew use; and

   iv. the limiting environmental conditions (such as wind, the lowest cloud base, ceiling, visibility, day/night, ambient lighting, obstruction lighting) should be specified.

GM1-CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance

CONTINGENCY PROCEDURES FOR OBSTACLES CLEARANCES

If compliance with CAT.POL.A.210 is based on an engine failure route that differs from the all engine departure route or SID normal departure, a "deviation point" can be identified where the engine failure route deviates from the normal departure route. Adequate obstacle clearance along the normal departure route with failure of the critical engine at the deviation point will normally be available. However, in certain situations the obstacle clearance along the normal departure route may be marginal and should be checked to ensure that, in case of an engine failure after the deviation point, a flight can safely proceed along the normal departure route.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.215 En-route – one-engine-inoperative (OEI)

ROUTE ANALYSIS

1. The high terrain or obstacle analysis required may be carried out by a detailed analysis of the route.

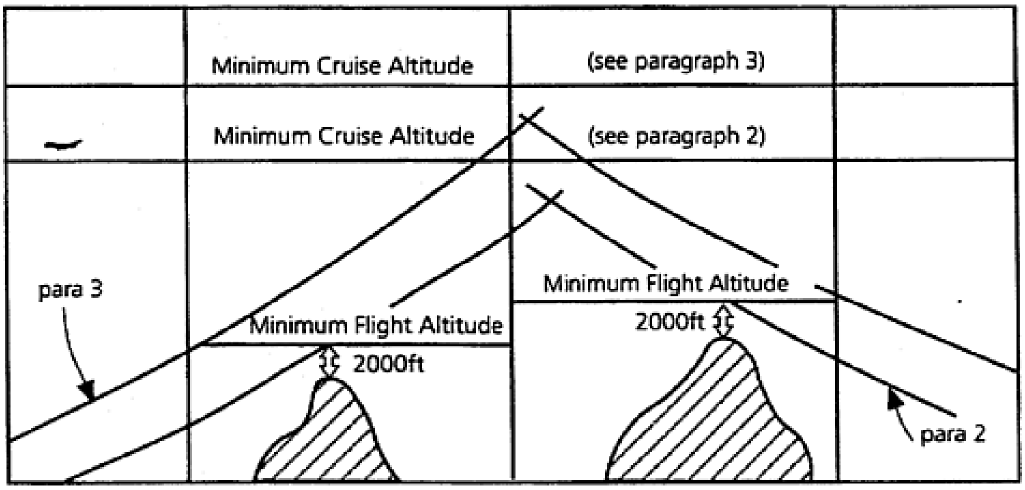
2. A detailed analysis of the route should be made using contour maps of the high terrain and plotting the highest points within the prescribed corridor's width along the route. The next step is to determine whether it is possible to maintain level flight with OEI 1 000 ft above the highest point of the crossing. If this is not possible, or if the associated weight penalties are unacceptable, a driftdown procedure should be worked out, based on engine failure at the most critical point and clearing critical obstacles during the driftdown by at least 2 000 ft. The minimum cruise altitude is determined by the intersection of the two driftdown

paths, taking into account allowances for decision making (see Figure 1). This method is time-consuming and requires the availability of detailed terrain maps.

3. Alternatively, the published minimum flight altitudes (minimum en-route altitude, MEA, or minimum off-route altitude, MORA) may be used for determining whether OEI level flight is feasible at the minimum flight altitude, or if it is necessary to use the published minimum flight altitudes as the basis for the driftdown construction (see Figure 1). This procedure avoids a detailed high terrain contour analysis, but may be more penalising than taking the actual terrain profile into account as in 2. above.

4. In order to comply with CAT.POL.A.215(c), one means of compliance is the use of MORA and, with CAT.POL.A.215(d), MEA provided that the aeroplane meets the navigational equipment standard assumed in the definition of MEA.

Figure 1: Intersection of the two driftdown paths



Note: MEA or MORA normally provide the required 2 000 ft obstacle clearance for driftdown. However, at and below 6 000 ft altitude, MEA and MORA cannot be used directly as only 1 000 ft clearance is ensured.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.225 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

MISSED APPROACH

1. The required missed approach gradient may not be achieved by all aeroplanes when operating at or near maximum certificated landing mass and in engine-out conditions.

2. The operator of such aeroplanes should consider mass, altitude and temperature limitations and wind for the missed approach.

3. The operator may use an increase in the DH/A or MDH/A and/or a contingency procedure providing a safe route and avoiding obstacles.

ALTITUDE MEASURING

The operator should use either pressure altitude or geometric altitude for his operation and this should be reflected in the operations manual.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.230 Landing – dry runways

FACTORING OF AUTOMATIC LANDING DISTANCE PERFORMANCE DATA

In those cases where the landing requires the use of an automatic landing system, and the distance published in the AFM includes safety margins equivalent to those contained in CAT.POL.A.230(a)(1) and CAT.POL.A.235, the landing mass of the aeroplane should be the lesser of:

1. the landing mass determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.230(a)(1) or CAT.POL.A.235 as appropriate; or
2. the landing mass determined for the automatic landing distance for the appropriate surface condition, as given in the AFM or equivalent document. Increments due to system features such as beam location or elevations, or procedures such as use of overspeed, should also be included.

LANDING MASS

1. CAT.POL.A.230 establishes two considerations in determining the maximum permissible landing mass at the destination and alternate aerodromes.
2. Firstly, the aeroplane mass will be such that on arrival the aeroplane can be landed within 60 % or 70 % (as applicable) of the landing distance available (LDA) on the most favourable (normally the longest) runway in still air. Regardless of the wind conditions, the maximum landing mass for an aerodrome/aeroplane configuration at a particular aerodrome cannot be exceeded.
3. Secondly, consideration should be given to anticipated conditions and circumstances. The expected wind, or ATC and noise abatement procedures, may indicate the use of a different runway. These factors may result in a lower landing mass than that permitted under 2. above, in which case dispatch should be based on this lesser mass.
4. The expected wind referred to in 3. is the wind expected to exist at the time of arrival.

Chapter 3 - Performance class B

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off

RUNWAY SURFACE CONDITION

1. Unless otherwise specified in the AFM or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, the variables affecting the take-off performance and the associated factors that should be applied to the AFM data are shown in Table 1 below. They should be applied in addition to the operational factors as prescribed in CAT.POL.A.305.

Table 1: Runway surface condition - Variables

SURFACE TYPE	CONDITION	FACTOR
Grass (on firm soil)	Dry	1.2
up to 20 cm long	Wet	1.3
Paved	Wet	1.0

2. The soil should be considered firm when there are wheel impressions but no rutting.
3. When taking off on grass with a single-engined aeroplane, care should be taken to assess the rate of acceleration and consequent distance increase.
4. When making a rejected take-off on very short grass which is wet and with a firm subsoil, the surface may be slippery, in which case the distances may increase significantly.

RUNWAY SLOPE

Unless otherwise specified in the AFM, or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, the take-off distance should be increased by 5 % for each 1 % of upslope except that correction factors for runways with slopes in excess of 2 % should only be applied when the operator has demonstrated to the competent authority that the necessary data in the AFM or the operations manual contain the appropriated procedures and the crew is trained to take-off in runway with slopes in excess of 2 %.

GM1-CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off

RUNWAY SURFACE CONDITION

1. Due to the inherent risks, operations from contaminated runways are inadvisable, and should be avoided whenever possible. Therefore, it is advisable to delay the take-off until the runway is cleared.
2. Where this is impracticable, the commander should also consider the excess runway length available including the criticality of the overrun area.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes

TAKE-OFF FLIGHT PATH – VISUAL COURSE GUIDANCE NAVIGATION

1. In order to allow visual course guidance navigation, the operator should ensure that the weather conditions prevailing at the time of operation, including ceiling and visibility, are such that the obstacle and/or ground reference points can be seen and identified.
2. The operations manual should specify, for the aerodrome(s) concerned, the minimum weather conditions which enable the flight crew to continuously determine and maintain the correct flight path with respect to ground reference points, so as to provide a safe clearance with respect to obstructions and terrain as follows:

a. the procedure should be well defined with respect to ground reference points so that the track to be flown can be analysed for obstacle clearance requirements;

b. the procedure should be within the capabilities of the aeroplane with respect to forward speed, bank angle and wind effects;

c. a written and/or pictorial description of the procedure should be provided for crew use; and

d. the limiting environmental conditions should be specified (e.g. wind, cloud, visibility, day/night, ambient lighting, obstruction lighting).

AMC2-CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes

TAKE-OFF FLIGHT PATH CONSTRUCTION

1. For demonstrating that the aeroplane clears all obstacles vertically, a flight path should be constructed consisting of an all-engines segment to the assumed engine failure height, followed by an engine-out segment. Where the AFM does not contain the appropriate data, the approximation given in 2. below may be used for the all-engines segment for an assumed engine failure height of 200 ft, 300 ft, or higher.

2. Flight path construction

a. All-engines segment (50 ft to 300 ft)

The average all-engines gradient for the all-engines flight path segment starting at an altitude of 50 ft at the end of the take-off distance ending at or passing through the 300 ft point is given by the following formula:

$$Y_{300} = \frac{0{\cdot}57(Y_{ERC})}{1+(V_{ERC}^{\ 2} - V_2^{\ 2})/5647}$$

The factor of 0.77 as required by CAT.POL.A.310 is already included where:

Y_{300} = average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 300 ft;

Y_{ERC} = scheduled all engines en-route gross climb gradient;

V_{ERC} = en-route climb speed, all engines knots true airspeed (TAS);

V_2 = take-off speed at 50 ft, knots TAS;

b. All-engines segment (50 ft to 200 ft)

This may be used as an alternative to a. above where weather minima permits. The average all-engines gradient for the all-engines flight path segment starting at an altitude of 50 ft at the end of the take-off distance ending at or passing through the 200 ft point is given by the following formula:

$$Y_{200} = \frac{0{\cdot}51(Y_{ERC})}{1+(V_{ERC}^{\ 2} - V_2^{\ 2})/3388}$$

The factor of 0.77 as required by CAT.POL.A.310 is already included where:

Y_{200} = average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 200 ft;

Y_{ERC} = scheduled all engines en-route gross climb gradient;

V_{ERC} = en-route climb speed, all engines, knots TAS;

V_2 = take-off speed at 50 ft, knots TAS.

c. All-engines segment (above 300 ft)

The all-engines flight path segment continuing from an altitude of 300 ft is given by the AFM en-route gross climb gradient, multiplied by a factor of 0.77.

d. The OEI flight path

The OEI flight path is given by the OEI gradient chart contained in the AFM.

GM1-CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes

OBSTACLE CLEARANCE IN LIMITED VISIBILITY

1. Unlike the airworthiness codes applicable for performance class A aeroplanes, those for performance class B aeroplanes do not necessarily provide for engine failure in all phases of flight. It is accepted that performance accountability for engine failure need not be considered until a height of 300 ft is reached.
2. The weather minima given up to and including 300 ft imply that if a take-off is undertaken with minima below 300 ft an OEI flight path should be plotted starting on the all-engines take-off flight path at the assumed engine failure height. This path should meet the vertical and lateral obstacle clearance specified in CAT.POL.A.310. Should engine failure occur below this height, the associated visibility is taken as being the minimum which would enable the pilot to make, if necessary, a forced landing broadly in the direction of the take-off. At or below 300 ft, a circle and land procedure is extremely inadvisable. The weather minima requirements specify that, if the assumed engine failure height is more than 300 ft, the visibility should be at least 1 500 m and, to allow for manoeuvring, the same minimum visibility should apply whenever the obstacle clearance criteria for a continued take-off cannot be met.

GM2-CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes

TAKE-OFF FLIGHT PATH CONSTRUCTION

1. This GM provides examples to illustrate the method of take-off flight path construction given in AMC2-CAT.POL.A.310. The examples are based on an aeroplane for which the AFM shows, at a given mass, altitude, temperature and wind component the following performance data:

   factored take-off distance – 1 000 m;

   take-off speed, V_2 – 90 kt;

   en-route climb speed, V_{ERC} – 120 kt;

   en-route all-engines climb gradient, Y_{ERC} – 0.2;

   en-route OEI climb gradient, Y_{ERC}-1 – 0.032.

a. Assumed engine failure height 300 ft

The average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 300 ft may be read from Figure 1 or calculated with the following formula:

$$Y_{300} = \frac{0{\cdot}57(Y_{ERC})}{1 + (V_{ERC}^{\ 2} - V_2^{\ 2})/5647}$$

The factor of 0.77 as required by CAT.POL.A.310 is already included where:

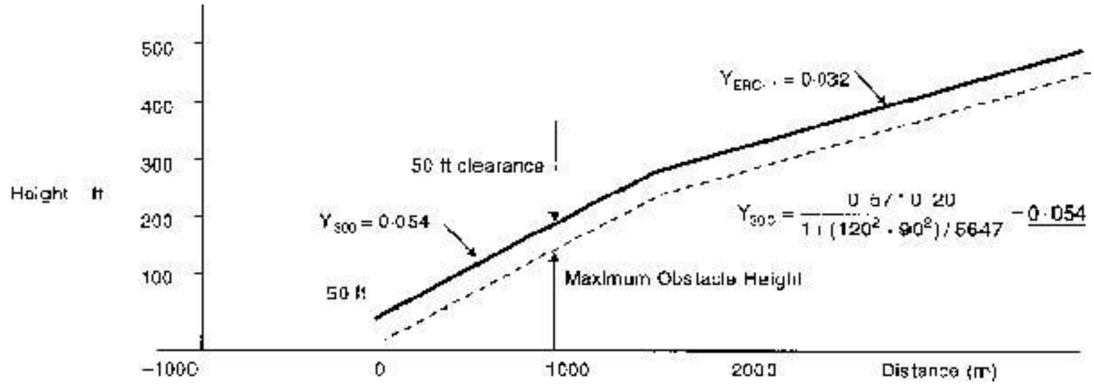
Y_{300} = average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 300 ft;

Y_{ERC} = scheduled all engines en-route gross climb gradient;

V_{ERC} = en-route climb speed, all engines knots TAS; and

V_2 = take-off speed at 50 ft, knots TAS.

Figure 1: Assumed engine failure height 300 ft



b. Assumed engine failure height 200 ft

The average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 200 ft may be read from Figure 2 or calculated with the following formula:

$$Y_{200} = \frac{0{\cdot}51(Y_{ERC})}{1 + (V_{ERC}^{\ 2} - V_2^{\ 2})/3388}$$

The factor of 0.77 as required by CAT.POL.A.310 is already included where:

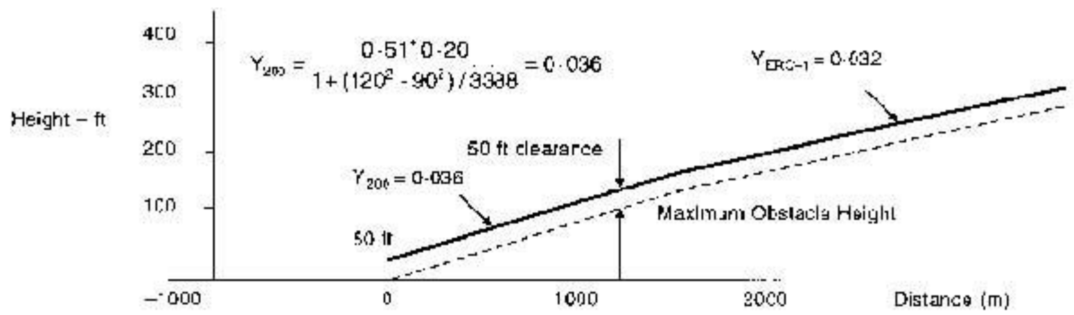
Y_{200} = average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 200 ft;

Y_{ERC} = scheduled all engines en-route gross gradient;

V_{ERC} = en-route climb speed, all engines, knots TAS; and

V_2 = take-off speed at 50 ft, knots TAS.

Figure 2: Assumed engine failure height 200 ft



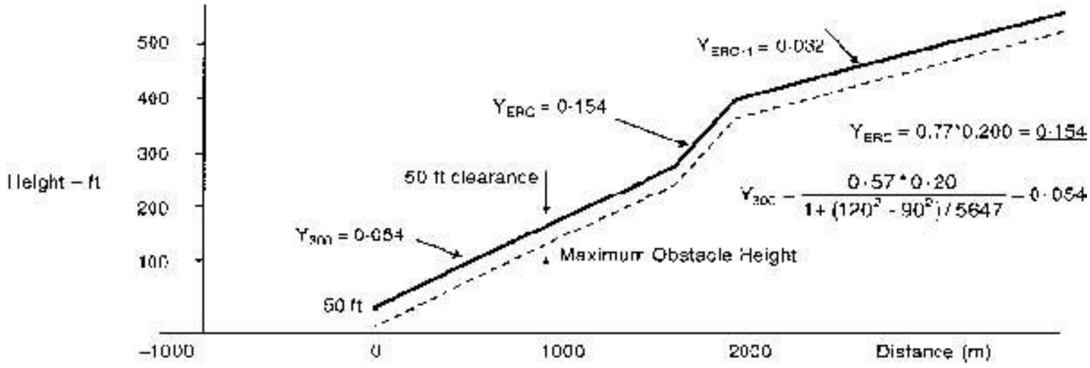
c. Assumed engine failure height less than 200 ft

Construction of a take-off flight path is only possible if the AFM contains the required flight path data.

d. Assumed engine failure height more than 300 ft.

The construction of a take-off flight path for an assumed engine failure height of 400 ft is illustrated below.

Figure 3: Assumed engine failure height less than 200 ft



GM1-CAT.POL.A.315 En-route – multi-engined aeroplanes

CRUISING ALTITUDE

1. The altitude at which the rate of climb equals 300 ft per minute is not a restriction on the maximum cruising altitude at which the aeroplane can fly in practise, it is merely the maximum altitude from which the driftdown procedure can be planned to start.
2. Aeroplanes may be planned to clear en-route obstacles assuming a driftdown procedure, having first increased the scheduled en-route OEI descent data by 0.5 % gradient.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.320 En-route - single-engine aeroplanes

ENGINE FAILURE

CAT.POL.A.320(a) requires the operator to ensure that in the event of an engine failure, the aeroplane should be capable of reaching a point from which a safe forced landing can be made. Unless otherwise specified by the competent authority, this point should be 1 000 ft above the intended landing area.

GM1-CAT.POL.A.320 En-route – single-engine aeroplanes

ENGINE FAILURE

1. In the event of an engine failure, single-engine aeroplanes have to rely on gliding to a point suitable for a safe forced landing. Such a procedure is clearly incompatible with flight above a cloud layer that extends below the relevant minimum safe altitude.

2. The operator should first increase the scheduled engine-inoperative gliding performance data by 0.5 % gradient when verifying the en-route clearance of obstacles and the ability to reach a suitable place for a forced landing.
3. The altitude at which the rate of climb equals 300 ft per minute is not a restriction on the maximum cruising altitude at which the aeroplane can fly in practise, it is merely the maximum altitude from which the engine-inoperative procedure can be planned to start.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.325 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

ALTITUDE MEASURING

The operator should use either pressure altitude or geometric altitude for his/her operation and this should be reflected in the operations manual.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.330 Landing – dry runways

LANDING DISTANCE CORRECTION FACTORS

1. Unless otherwise specified in the AFM, or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturers, the variable affecting the landing performance and the associated factor that should be applied to the AFM data is shown in the table below. It should be applied in addition to the operational factors as prescribed in CAT.POL.A.330(a).

Table 1: Landing distance correction factors

SURFACE TYPE	FACTOR
Grass (on firm soil up to 20 cm long)	1.15

2. The soil should be considered firm when there are wheel impressions but no rutting.

GM1-CAT.POL.A.330 Landing – dry runways

LANDING MASS

1. CAT.POL.A.330 establishes two considerations in determining the maximum permissible landing mass at the destination and alternate aerodromes.
2. Firstly, the aeroplane mass will be such that on arrival the aeroplane can be landed within 70 % of the LDA on the most favourable (normally the longest) runway in still air. Regardless of the wind conditions, the maximum landing mass for an aerodrome/aeroplane configuration at a particular aerodrome cannot be exceeded.
3. Secondly, consideration should be given to anticipated conditions and circumstances. The expected wind, or ATC and noise abatement procedures, may indicate the use of a different runway. These factors may result in a lower landing mass than that permitted under 2. above, in which case dispatch should be based on this lesser mass.

4. The expected wind referred to in 3. above is the wind expected to exist at the time of arrival.

GM1-CAT.POL.A.335 Landing - wet and contaminated runways

LANDING ON WET GRASS RUNWAYS

1. When landing on very short grass which is wet and with a firm subsoil, the surface may be slippery, in which case the distances may increase by as much as 60 % (1.60 factor).
2. As it may not be possible for a pilot to determine accurately the degree of wetness of the grass, particularly when airborne, in cases of doubt, the use of the wet factor (1.15) is recommended.

Chapter 4 – Performance class C

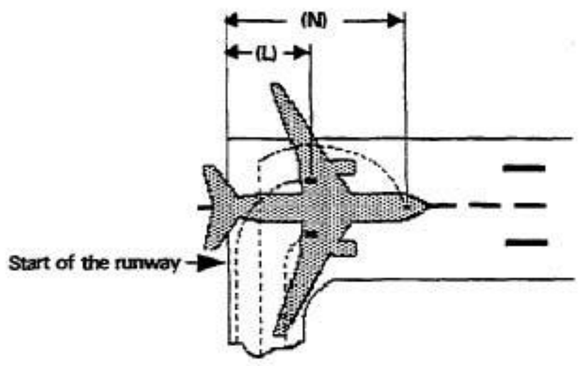
AMC1-CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off

LOSS OF RUNWAY LENGTH DUE TO ALIGNMENT

1 The length of the runway which is declared for the calculation of TODA, ASDA and TORA does not account for line-up of the aeroplane in the direction of take-off on the runway in use. This alignment distance depends on the aeroplane geometry and access possibility to the runway in use. Accountability is usually required for a 90° taxiway entry to the runway and 180° turnaround on the runway. There are two distances to be considered:

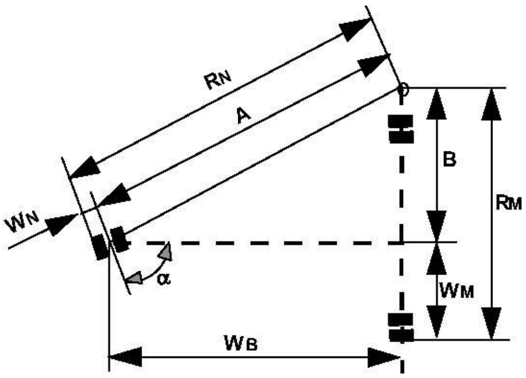
   a. the minimum distance of the main wheels from the start of the runway for determining TODA and TORA, "L"; and
   b. the minimum distance of the most forward wheel(s) from the start of the runway for determining ASDA, "N".

Figure 1: Line-up of the aeroplane in the direction of take-off – L and N



Where the aeroplane manufacturer does not provide the appropriate data, the calculation method given in 2. may be used to determine the alignment distance.

2. Alignment distance calculation



The distances mentioned in 1.a and 1.b above are:

	90° ENTRY	**180° TURNAROUND**
L =	RM + X	RN + Y
N =	RM + X + WB	RN + Y + WB

where:

RN = A + WN = $\frac{W_B}{\cos(90° - \alpha)}$

RM = B + WM = WB tan(90°-α) + WM

X = safety distance of outer main wheel during turn to the edge of the runway

Y = safety distance of outer nose wheel during turn to the edge of the runway

NOTE: Minimum edge safety distances for X and Y are specified in FAA AC 150/5300-13 and ICAO Annex 14, 3.8.3

RN = radius of turn of outer nose wheel

RM = radius of turn of outer main wheel

WN = distance from aeroplane centre-line to outer nose wheel

WM = distance from aeroplane centre-line to outer main wheel

WM = wheel base

α = steering angle.

RUNWAY SLOPE

Unless otherwise specified in the AFM, or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturers, the take-off distance should be increased by 5 % for each 1 % of upslope except that correction factors for runways with slopes in excess of 2 % should only be applied when the operator has demonstrated to the competent authority that the necessary data in the AFM or the operations manual contain the appropriated procedures and the crew is trained to take-off in runway with slopes in excess of 2 %.

GM1-CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off

RUNWAY SURFACE CONDITION

Operation on runways contaminated with water, slush, snow or ice implies uncertainties with regard to runway friction and contaminant drag and therefore to the achievable performance and control of the aeroplane during take-off, since the actual conditions may not completely match the assumptions on which the performance information is based. An adequate overall level of safety can, therefore, only be maintained if such operations are limited to rare occasions. In case of a contaminated runway the first option for the commander is to wait until the runway is cleared. If this is impracticable, he may consider a take-off, provided that he has applied the applicable performance adjustments, and any further safety measures he considers justified under the prevailing conditions.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.405 Take-off obstacle clearance

EFFECT OF BANK ANGLES

1. The AFM generally provides a climb gradient decrement for a 15° bank turn. Unless otherwise specified in the AFM or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, acceptable adjustments to assure adequate stall margins and gradient corrections are provided by the following:

Table 1: Effect of bank angles

BANK	**SPEED**	**GRADIENT CORRECTION**
15°	V_2	1 x AFM 15° gradient loss
20°	V_2 + 5 kt	2 x AFM 15° gradient loss
25°	V_2 + 10 kt	3 x AFM 15° gradient loss

2. For bank angles of less than 15°, a proportionate amount may be applied, unless the manufacturer or AFM has provided other data.

REQUIRED NAVIGATIONAL ACCURACY

1. Flight-deck systems

   The obstacle accountability semi-widths of 300 m and 600 m may be used if the navigation system under OEI conditions provides a two standard deviation accuracy of 150 m and 300 m respectively.

2. Visual course guidance

   a. The obstacle accountability semi-widths of 300 m and 600 m may be used where navigational accuracy is ensured at all relevant points on the flight path by use of external references. These references may be considered visible from the flight deck if they are situated more than 45° either side of the intended track and with a depression of not greater than 20° from the horizontal.

b. For visual course guidance navigation, the operator should ensure that the weather conditions prevailing at the time of operation, including ceiling and visibility, are such that the obstacle and/or ground reference points can be seen and identified. The operations manual should specify, for the aerodrome(s) concerned, the minimum weather conditions which enable the flight crew to continuously determine and maintain the correct flight path with respect to ground reference points, so as to provide a safe clearance with respect to obstructions and terrain as follows:

   i. the procedure should be well defined with respect to ground reference points so that the track to be flown can be analysed for obstacle clearance requirements;

   ii. the procedure should be within the capabilities of the aeroplane with respect to forward speed, bank angle and wind effects;

   iii. a written and/or pictorial description of the procedure should be provided for crew use; and

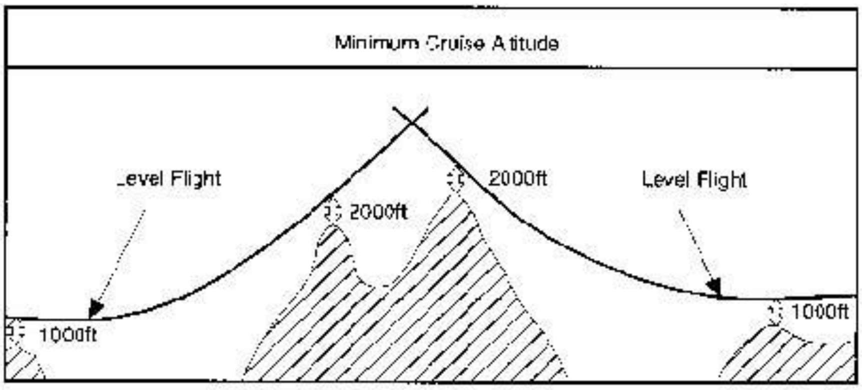
   iv. the limiting environmental conditions (such as wind, the lowest cloud base, ceiling, visibility, day/night, ambient lighting, obstruction lighting) should be specified.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.415 En-route – OEI

ROUTE ANALYSIS

The high terrain or obstacle analysis may be carried out by making a detailed analysis of the route using contour maps of the high terrain, and plotting the highest points within the prescribed corridor width along the route. The next step is to determine whether it is possible to maintain level flight with OEI 1 000 ft above the highest point of the crossing. If this is not possible, or if the associated weight penalties are unacceptable, a driftdown procedure must be evaluated, based on engine failure at the most critical point, and must show obstacle clearance during the driftdown by at least 2 000 ft. The minimum cruise altitude is determined from the drift-down path, taking into account allowances for decision making, and the reduction in the scheduled rate of climb (See Figure 1).

Figure 1: Intersection of the driftdown paths



AMC1-CAT.POL.A.425 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

ALTITUDE MEASURING

THE OPERATOR SHOULD USE EITHER PRESSURE ALTITUDE OR GEOMETRIC ALTITUDE FOR HIS/HER OPERATION AND THIS SHOULD BE REFLECTED IN THE OPERATIONS MANUAL.

AMC1-CAT.POL.A.430 Landing – dry runways

LANDING DISTANCE CORRECTION FACTORS

1. Unless otherwise specified in the AFM or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturers, the variables affecting the landing performance and the associated factors to be applied to the AFM data are shown in the table below. It should be applied in addition to the factor specified in CAT.POL.A.430.

Table 1: Landing distance correction factor

SURFACE TYPE	FACTOR
Grass (on firm soil up to 20 cm long)	1.2

2. The soil should be considered firm when there are wheel impressions but no rutting.

RUNWAY SLOPE

Unless otherwise specified in the AFM, or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, the landing distances required should be increased by 5 % for each 1 % of downslope.

GM1-CAT.POL.A.430 Landing - dry runways

LANDING MASS

1. CAT.POL.A.430 establishes two considerations in determining the maximum permissible landing mass at the destination and alternate aerodromes.
2. Firstly, the aeroplane mass will be such that on arrival the aeroplane can be landed within 70 % of the LDA on the most favourable (normally the longest) runway in still air. Regardless of the wind conditions, the maximum landing mass for an aerodrome/aeroplane configuration at a particular aerodrome cannot be exceeded.
3. Secondly, consideration should be given to anticipated conditions and circumstances. The expected wind, or ATC and noise abatement procedures, may indicate the use of a different runway. These factors may result in a lower landing mass than that permitted under 2. above, in which case dispatch should be based on this lesser mass.
4. The expected wind referred to in 3. is the wind expected to exist at the time of arrival.

Section 2 - Helicopters

Chapter 1 - General requirements

GM1-CAT.POL.H.110(a)(2)(i) Obstacle accountability

COURSE GUIDANCE

Standard course guidance includes automatic direction finder (ADF) and VHF omnidirectional radio range (VOR) guidance.

Accurate course guidance includes ILS, MLS or other course guidance providing an equivalent navigational accuracy.

Chapter 2 – Performance class 1

AMC1-CAT.POL.H.200&CAT.POL.H.300&CAT.POL.H.400 General

CATEGORY A AND CATEGORY B

1. Helicopters which have been certified according to any of the following standards are considered to satisfy the Category A criteria. Provided that they have the necessary performance information scheduled in the AFM, such helicopters are therefore eligible for performance class 1 or 2 operations:
   a. certification as Category A under CS-27 or CS-29;
   b. certification as Category A under JAR-27 or JAR-29;
   c. certification as Category A under FAR Part 29;
   d. certification as group A under BCAR Section G; and
   e. certification as group A under BCAR-29.
2. In addition to the above, certain helicopters have been certified under FAR Part 27 and with compliance with FAR Part 29 engine isolation requirements as specified in FAA Advisory Circular AC 27-1. These helicopters may be accepted as eligible for performance class 1 or 2 operations provided that compliance is established with the following additional requirements of CS-29:
   a. CS 29.1027(a) Independence of engine and rotor drive system lubrication;
   b. CS 29.1187(e);
   c. CS 29.1195(a) & (b) Provision of a one-shot fire extinguishing system for each engine*;
   d. CS 29.1197;
   e. CS 29.1199;
   f. CS 29.1201; and

g. CS 29.1323(c)(1) Ability of the airspeed indicator to consistently identify the take-off decision point.

* The requirement to fit a fire extinguishing system may be waived if the helicopter manufacturer can demonstrate equivalent safety, based on service experience for the entire fleet showing that the actual incidence of fires in the engine fire zones has been negligible.

3. Any properly certified helicopter is considered to satisfy the Category B criteria.

   If appropriately equipped (in accordance with CAT.IDE.H), such helicopters are therefore eligible for performance class 3 operations.

GM1-CAT.POL.H.200&CAT.POL.H.300&CAT.POL.H.400 General

CATEGORY A AND CATEGORY B

The performance operating rules of JAR-OPS 3, which were transposed into the Implementing Rules, were drafted in conjunction with the performance requirements of JAR-29 Issue 1 and FAR Part 29 at amendment 29-39. For helicopters certificated under FAR Part 29 at an earlier amendment, or under BCAR section G or BCAR-29, performance data will have been scheduled in the AFM according to these earlier requirements. This earlier scheduled data may not be fully compatible with these rules. Before performance class 1 or 2 operations are approved, it should be established that scheduled performance data is available which is compatible with the requirements of performance class 1 and 2 respectively.

AMC1-CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) Take-off

THE APPLICATION OF TODRH

The selected height should be determined with the use of AFM data, and be at least 10.7 m (35 ft) above:

1. the take-off surface; or
2. as an alternative, a level height defined by the highest obstacle in the take-off distance required.

GM1-CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) Take-off

THE APPLICATION OF TODRH

1. INTRODUCTION

   Original definitions for helicopter performance were derived from aeroplanes; hence the definition of take-off distance owes much to operations from runways. Helicopters on the other hand can operate from runways, confined and restricted areas and rooftop FATOs - all bounded by obstacles. As an analogy this is equivalent to a take-off from a runway with obstacles on and surrounding it.

   It can therefore be seen that unless the original definitions from aeroplanes are tailored for helicopters, the flexibility of the helicopter might be constrained by the language of operational performance.

   This GM concentrates on the critical term - take-off distance required (TODRH) - and describes the to achieve compliance with it and, in particular, the alternative procedure described in ICAO Annex 6 Attachment A 4.1.1.2(b):

a. the take-off distance required does not exceed the take-off distance available; or

b. as an alternative, the take-off distance required may be disregarded provided that the helicopter with the critical engine failure at the TDP can, when continuing the take-off, clear all obstacles between the end of the take-off distance available and the point at which it becomes established in a climb at V_{TOSS} by a vertical margin of 10.7 m (35 ft) or more. An obstacle is considered to be in the path of the helicopter if its distance from the nearest point on the surface below the intended line of flight does not exceed 30 m or 1.5 times the maximum dimension of the helicopter, whichever is greater.

2. DEFINITION OF TODRH

The definition of TODRH from Annex I is as follows:

'Take-off distance required (TODRH)' means the horizontal distance required from the start of the take-off to the point at which take-off safety speed (V_{TOSS}), a selected height and a positive climb gradient are achieved, following failure of the critical engine being recognised at the TDP, the remaining engines operating within approved operating limits.

In addition AMC1-CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) states:

The selected height should be determined with the use of AFM data, and be at least 10.7 m (35 ft) above:

(i) the take-off surface; or

(ii) as an alternative, a level defined by the highest obstacle in the take-off distance required.

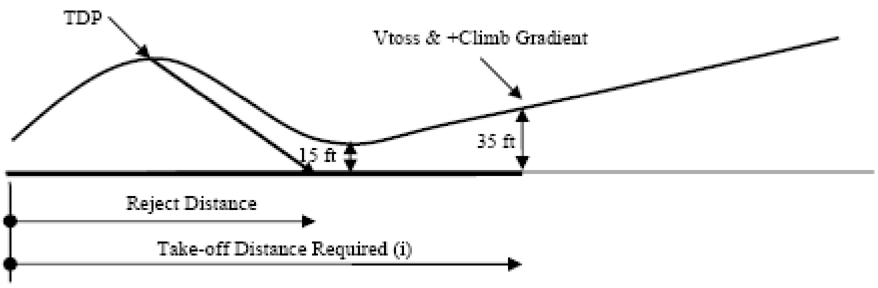
The original definition of TODRH was based only on the first part of this definition.

3. THE CLEAR AREA PROCEDURE (RUNWAY)

In the past, helicopters certificated in Category A would have had, at the least, a 'clear area' procedure. This procedure is analogous to an aeroplane Category A procedure and assumes a runway (either metaled or grass) with a smooth surface suitable for an aeroplane take-off (see Figure 1).

The helicopter is assumed to accelerate down the FATO (runway) outside of the height velocity (HV) diagram. If the helicopter has an engine failure before TDP, it must be able to land back on the FATO (runway) without damage to helicopter or passengers; if there is a failure at or after TDP the aircraft is permitted to lose height - providing it does not descend below a specified height above the surface (usually 15 ft if the TDP is above 15 ft). Errors by the pilot are taken into consideration but the smooth surface of the FATO limits serious damage if the error margin is eroded (e.g. by a change of wind conditions).

Figure 1 - Clear Area take-off



The operator only has to establish that the distances required are within the distance available (take-off distance and reject distance). The original definition of TODRH meets this case exactly.

From the end of the TODRH obstacle clearance is given by the climb gradient of the first or second climb segment meeting the requirement of CAT.POL.H.210 (or for PC2 - CAT.POL.H.315). The clearance margin from obstacles in the take-off flight path takes account of the distance travelled from the end of the take-off distance required and operational conditions (IMC or VMC).

4. CATEGORY A PROCEDURES OTHER THAN CLEAR AREA

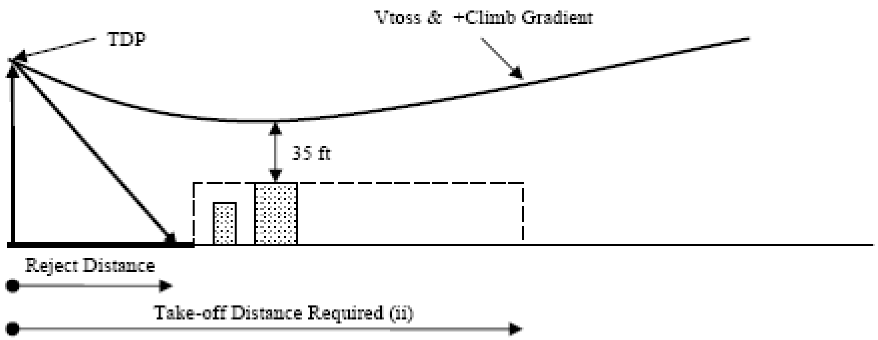
Procedures other than the clear area are treated somewhat differently. However, the short field procedure is somewhat of a hybrid as either part of the definition of TODRH can be utilised (the term 'helipad' is used in the following section to illustrate the principle only).

4.1 Limited area, restricted area and helipad procedures (other than elevated)

The exact names of the procedure used for other than clear area are as many as there are manufacturers. However, principles for obstacle clearance are generic and the name is unimportant.

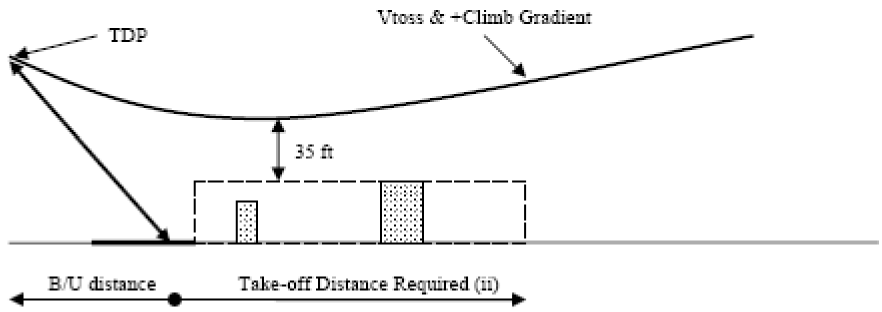
These procedures (see Figure 2 and Figure 3) are usually associated with an obstacle in the continued take-off area - usually shown as a line of trees or some other natural obstacle. As clearance above such obstacles is not readily associated with an accelerative procedure, as described in 3 above, a procedure using a vertical climb (or a steep climb in the forward, sideways or rearward direction) is utilised.

Figure 2 - Short Field take-off



With the added complication of a TDP principally defined by height together with obstacles in the continued take off area, a drop down to within 15 ft of the take-off surface is not deemed appropriate and the required obstacle clearance is set to 35 ft (usually called min-dip). The distance to the obstacle does not need to be calculated (provided it is outside the rejected distance required), as clearance above all obstacles is provided by ensuring that helicopter does not descend below the min-dip associated with a level defined by the highest obstacle in the continued take-off area.

Figure 3 - Helipad take-off



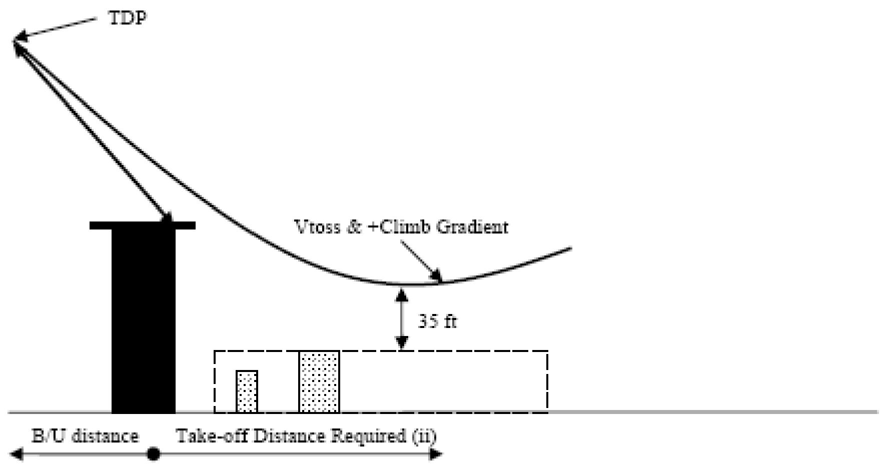
These procedures depend upon the alternative definition of TODRH.

As shown in Figure 3, the point at which V_{TOSS} and a positive rate of climb are met defines the TODRH. Obstacle clearance from that point is assured by meeting the requirement of CAT.POL.H.210 (or for PC2 - CAT.POL.H.315). Also shown in Figure 3 is the distance behind the helipad which is the back-up distance (B/U distance).

4.2 Elevated helipad procedures

The elevated helipad procedure (see Figure 4) is a special case of the ground level helipad procedure discussed above.

Figure 4 - Elevate Helipad take-off



The main difference is that drop down below the level of the take-off surface is permitted. In the drop down phase, the Category A procedure ensures deck-edge clearance but, once clear of the deck-edge, the 35 ft clearance from obstacles relies upon the calculation of drop down. The alternative definition of the TODRH is applied.

Although 35 ft is used throughout the requirements, it may be inadequate at particular elevated FATOs which are subject to adverse airflow effects, turbulence, etc.

AMC1-CAT.POL.H.205(e) Take-off

OBSTACLE CLEARANCE IN THE BACK-UP AREA

1. The requirement in CAT.POL.H.205(e) has been established in order to take into account the following factors:

   a. in the back-up: the pilot has few visual cues and has to rely upon the altimeter and sight picture through the front window (if flight path guidance is not provided) to achieve an accurate rearward flight path;

   b. in the rejected take-off: the pilot has to be able to manage the descent against a varying forward speed whilst still ensuring an adequate clearance from obstacles until the helicopter gets in close proximity for landing on the FATO; and

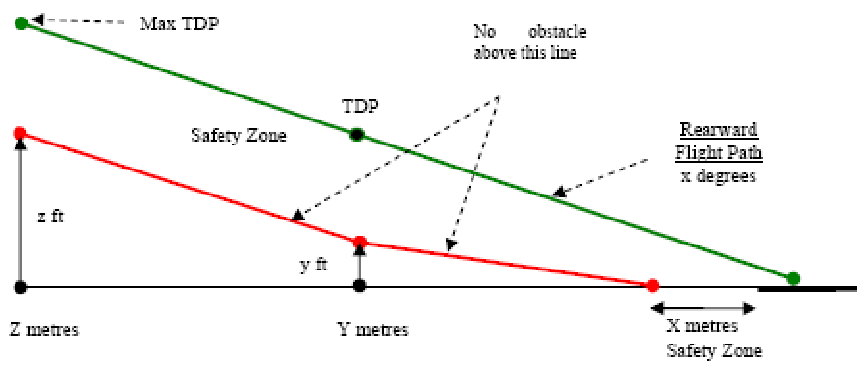
   c. in the continued take-off; the pilot has to be able to accelerate to V_{TOSS} (take-off safety speed for Category A helicopters) whilst ensuring an adequate clearance from obstacles.

2. The requirements of CAT.POL.H.205 (e) may be achieved by establishing that:

   a. in the backup area no obstacles are located within the safety zone below the rearward flight path when described in the aircraft flight manual (see Figure 1); (in the absence of such data in the AFM, the operator should contact the manufacturer in order to define a safety zone); or

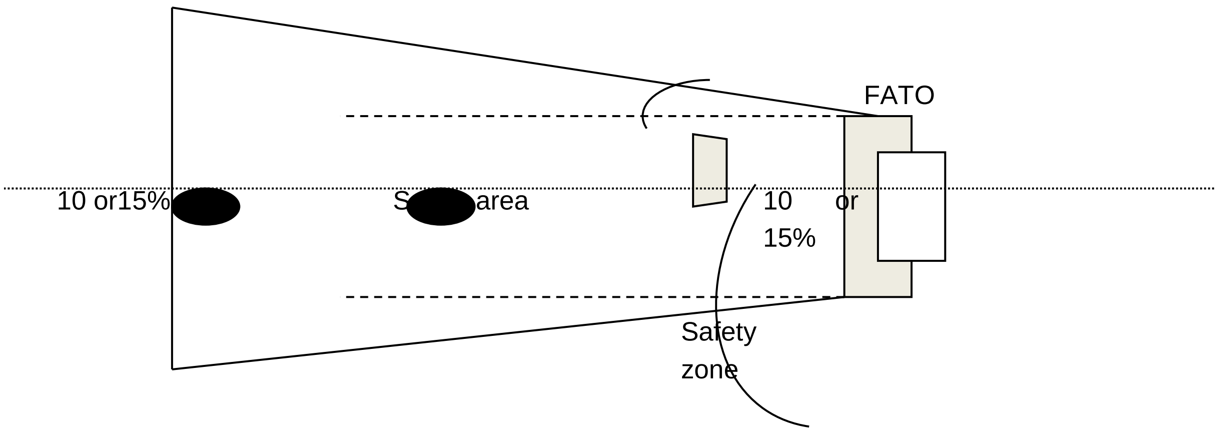
   b. during the backup, the rejected take-off and the continued take-off manoeuvres, obstacle clearance is demonstrated to the competent authority.

Figure 1: Rearward flight path



3. An obstacle, in the backup area, is considered if its lateral distance from the nearest point on the surface below the intended flight path is not further than half of the minimum FATO (or the equivalent term used in the AFM) width defined in the AFM (or, when no width is defined 0.75 D, where D is the largest dimension of the helicopter when the rotors are turning), plus 0.25 times D (or 3 m, whichever is greater); plus 0.10 for VFR day, or 0.15 for VFR night, of the distance travelled from the back of the FATO (see Figure 2).

Figure 2: Obstacle accountability



AMC1-CAT.POL.H.205&CAT.POL.H.220 Take-off and landing

APPLICATION FOR ALTERNATIVE TAKE-OFF AND LANDING PROCEDURES

1. A reduction in the size of the take-off surface_may be applied when the operator has demonstrated to the competent authority that compliance with the requirements of CAT.POL.H.205, 210 and 220 can be assured with:

   a. a procedure based upon an appropriate Category A take-off and landing profile scheduled in the AFM;

   b. a take-off or landing mass not exceeding the mass scheduled in the AFM for a hover out of ground effect one-engine-inoperative (HOGE OEI) ensuring that:

      i. following an engine failure at or before TDP, there are adequate external references to ensure that the helicopter can be landed in a controlled manner; and

      ii. following an engine failure at or after the LDP there are adequate external references to ensure that the helicopter can be landed in a controlled manner.

2. An upwards shift of the TDP and LDP may be applied when the operator has demonstrated to the competent authority that compliance with the requirements of CAT.POL.H.205, 210 and 220 can be assured with:

   a. a procedure based upon an appropriate Category A take-off and landing profile scheduled in the AFM;

   b. a take-off or landing mass not exceeding the mass scheduled in the AFM for a hover-out-of-ground-effect (HOGE) OEI ensuring that:

      i. following an engine failure at or after TDP compliance with the obstacle clearance requirements of CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) and CAT.POL.H.210 can be met; and

      ii. following an engine failure at or before the LDP the balked landing obstacle clearance requirements of CAT.POL.H.220(b) and CAT.POL.H.210 can be met.

3. The Category A ground level surface area requirement may be applied at a specific elevated FATO when the operator can demonstrate to the competent authority that the usable cue environment at that aerodrome/operating site would permit such a reduction in size.

GM1-CAT.POL.H.205&CAT.POL.H.220 Take-off and landing

APPLICATION FOR ALTERNATIVE TAKE-OFF AND LANDING PROCEDURES

Introduction

A manufacturer's Category A procedure defines profiles and scheduled data for take-off, climb, performance at minimum operating speed and landing, under specific environmental conditions and masses.

Associated with these profiles and conditions are minimum operating surfaces, take-off distances, climb performance and landing distances; these are provided (usually in graphic form) with the take-off and landing masses and the take-off decision point (TDP) and landing decision point (LDP).

The landing surface and the height of the TDP are directly related to the ability of the helicopter - following an engine failure before or at TDP - to reject onto the surface under forced landing conditions. The main considerations in establishing the minimum size of the landing surface are the scatter during flight testing of the reject manoeuvre, with the remaining engine operating within approved limits, and the required usable cue environment.

Hence, an elevated site with few visual cues - apart from the surface itself - would require a greater surface area in order that the helicopter can be accurately positioned during the reject manoeuvre within the specified area. This usually results in the stipulation of a larger surface for an elevated site than for a ground level site (where lateral cues may be present).

This could have the unfortunate side-effect that a FATO which is built 3 m above the surface (and therefore elevated by definition) might be out of operational scope for some helicopters - even though there might be a rich visual cue environment where rejects are not problematical. The presence of elevated sites where ground level surface requirements might be more appropriate could be brought to the attention of the competent authority.

It can be seen that the size of the surface is directly related to the requirement of the helicopter to complete a rejected take-off following an engine failure. If the helicopter has sufficient power such that a failure before or at TDP will not lead to a requirement for rejected take-off, the need for large surfaces is removed; sufficient power for the purpose of this GM is considered to be the power required for hover-out-of-ground-effect (HOGE) one-engine-inoperative (OEI).

Following an engine failure at or after the TDP, the continued take-off path provides OEI clearance from the take-off surface and the distance to reach a point from where climb performance in the first, and subsequent segments, is assured.

If HOGE OEI performance exists at the height of the TDP, it follows that the continued take-off profile, which has been defined for a helicopter with a mass such that a rejected take-off would be required following an engine failure at or before TDP, would provide the same, or better, obstacle clearance and the same, or less, distance to reach a point where climb performance in the first, and subsequent segments, is assured.

If the TDP is shifted upwards, provided that the HOGE OEI performance is established at the revised TDP, it will not affect the shape of the continued take-off profile but should shift the min-dip upwards by the same amount that the revised TDP has been increased - with respect to the basic TDP.

Such assertions are concerned only with the vertical or the back-up procedures and can be regarded as achievable under the following circumstances:

1 When the procedure is flown, it is based upon a profile contained in the AAFM - with the exception of the necessity to perform a rejected take-off.

2 The TDP, if shifted upwards (or upwards and backward in the back-up procedure) will be the height at which the HOGE OEI performance is established.

3 If obstacles are permitted in the back-up area they should continue to be permitted with a revised TDP.

GM1-CAT.POL.H.215(b)(3)En-route - critical engine inoperative

FUEL JETTISON

The presence of obstacles along the en-route flight path may preclude compliance with CAT.POL.H.215(a)(1) at the planned mass at the critical point along the route. In this case fuel jettison at the most critical point may be planned, provided that the procedures in AMC1-CAT.OP.AH.150, 'Planning criteria – helicopter' 3. are complied with.

GM1-CAT.POL.H.225 Helicopter operations to/from a public interest site

THE PUBLIC INTEREST SITE PHILOSOPHY

1 General

The original JAA Appendix 1 to JAR-OPS 3.005(i) - containing alleviations for public interest sites - was introduced in January 2002 to address problems that had been encountered by Member States at hospital (and lighthouse) sites due to the applicable performance requirements of JAR-OPS 3 Subparts G and H. These problems were enumerated in ACJ to Appendix 1 to JAR-OPS 3.005(d) paragraph 8, part of which is reproduced below.

> "8 Problems with hospital sites
>
> During implementation of JAR-OPS 3, it was established that a number of States had encountered problems with the impact of performance rules where helicopters were operated for HEMS. Although States accept that progress should be made towards operations where risks associated with a critical power unit failure are eliminated, or limited by the exposure time concept, a number of landing sites exist which do not (or never can) allow operations to performance class 1 or 2 requirements.
>
> These sites are generally found in a congested hostile environment:
>
> - in the grounds of hospitals; or
> - on hospital buildings;

The problem of hospital sites is mainly historical and, whilst the Authority could insist that such sites not be used - or used at such a low weight that critical power unit failure performance is assured, it would seriously curtail a number of existing operations.

Even though the rule for the use of such sites in hospital grounds for HEMS operations (Appendix 1 to JAR-OPS 3.005(d) sub-paragraph (c)(2)(i)(A)) attracts alleviation until 2005, it is only partial and will still impact upon present operations.

Because such operations are performed in the public interest, it was felt that the Authority should be able to exercise its discretion so as to allow continued use of such sites provided that it is satisfied that an adequate level of safety can be maintained - notwithstanding that the site does not allow operations to performance class 1 or 2 standards. However, it is in the interest of continuing improvements in safety that the alleviation of such operations be constrained to existing sites, and for a limited period."

As stated in this ACJ and embodied in the text of the appendix, the solution was short term (until 31 December 2004). During the comment period of JAA NPA 18, representations were made to the JAA that the alleviation should be extended to 2009. The review committee, in not accepting this request, had in mind that this was a short-term solution to address an immediate problem, and a permanent solution should be sought.

2. Public Interest Sites after 1 January 2005

Although elimination of such sites would remove the problem, it is recognized that phasing out, or rebuilding existing hospital and lighthouse sites, is a long-term goal which may not be cost-effective, or even possible, in some Member States.

It should be noted however that CAT.POL.H.225 (a) limits the problem by confining approvals to public interest sites established before 1 July 2002 (established in this context means either: built before that date; or brought into service before that date – this precise wording was used to avoid problems associated with a ground level aerodrome/operating site where no building would be required). Thus the problem of these sites is contained and reducing in severity. This date was set approximately 6 months after the intended implementation of the original JAR-OPS 3 appendix.

EASA adopted the JAA philosophy that, from 1st January 2005 the approval of a public interest site would be confined to those sites where a CAT A procedure alone cannot solve the problem. The determination of whether the helicopter can or cannot be operated in accordance with performance class 1 should be established with the helicopter at a realistic payload and fuel to complete the mission. However, in order to reduce the risk at those sites, the application of the requirements contained in CAT.POL.H.225paragraph (b) should be applied.

Additionally and in order to promote understanding of the problem, the text contained in CAT.POL.H.225 paragraph (c) had been amended to refer to the performance class and not to Annex 14 as in the original appendix. Thus Part C of the operations manual should reflect the non-conformance with performance class 1, as well as the site specific procedures (approach and departure paths) to minimize the danger to third parties in the event of an incident.

The following paragraph explain the problem and solutions.

3. The problem associated with public interest sites

There are a number of problems: some of which can be solved with the use of appropriate helicopters and procedures; and others which, because of the size of the aerodrome/operating site or the obstacle environment, cannot. They consist of:

a. The size of the surface of the aerodrome/operating site (smaller than that required by the manufacturer's procedure);

b. An obstacle environment that prevents the use of the manufacturer's procedure (obstacles in the back-up area)

c. An obstacle environment that does not allow recovery following an engine failure in the critical phase of take-off (a line of buildings requiring a demanding gradient of climb) at a realistic payload and fuel to complete the mission.

3.1 Problems associated with a.; the inability to climb and conduct a rejected landing back to the aerodrome/operating site following an engine failure before the Decision Point (DP).

3.2 Problems associated with b.; as in a.

3.3 Problems associated with c; climb into an obstacle following an engine failure after DP.

Problems cannot be solved in the immediate future but can, when mitigated with the use of the latest generation of helicopters (operated at a weight that can allow useful payloads and endurance), minimise exposure to risk.

4. Long Term Solution

Although not offering a complete solution, it was felt that a significant increase in safety could be achieved by applying an additional performance margin to such operations. This solution allowed the time restriction of 2004 to be removed.

The required performance level of 8 % climb gradient in the first segment, reflects ICAO Annex 14 Volume II in Table 4-3 – Dimensions and slopes of obstacle limitations surfaces for performance class 2.

The performance delta is achieved without the provision of further manufacturer's data by using existing graphs to provide the reduced take-off mass (RTOM).

If the solution in relation to the original problem is examined, the effects can be seen.

4.1 Solution with relation to a.; although the problem still exists, the safest procedure is a dynamic take-off reducing the time taken to achieve V_{stayup} and thus allowing VFR recovery – if the failure occurs at or after V_y and 200 feet, an IFR recovery is possible.

4.2 Solution with relation to b.; as in a. above.

4.3 Solution with relation to c.; once again this does not give a complete solution, however the performance delta minimises the time during which a climb over the obstacle cannot be achieved.

AMC1-CAT.POL.H.225(b)(2) Helicopter operations at a public interest site

HELICOPTER MASS LIMITATION FOR OPERATIONS AT A PUBLIC INTEREST SITE

1. The helicopter mass limitation at take-off or landing specified in CAT.POL.H.225 (b)(2) should be determined using the climb performance data from 35 ft to 200 ft at V_{TOSS} (first segment of the take-off flight path) contained in the Category A supplement of the AFM or equivalent manufacturer data acceptable to the competent authority in accordance with Annex I, definitions for 'Category A with respect to helicopters' and Category B with respect to helicopters'.
2. The first segment climb data to be considered is established for a climb at the take-off safety speed V_{TOSS}, with the landing gear extended (when the landing gear is retractable), with the critical engine inoperative and the remaining engines operating at an appropriate power rating (the 2 min 30 sec or 2 min OEI power rating, depending on the helicopter type certification). The appropriate V_{TOSS}, is the value specified in the Category A performance section of the AFM for vertical take-off and landing procedures (VTOL or Helipad or equivalent manufacturer terminology).
3. The ambient conditions at the public interest site (pressure-altitude and temperature) should be taken into account.
4. The data is usually provided in charts one of the following ways:
   a. Height gain in ft over a horizontal distance of 100 ft in the first segment configuration (35 ft to 200 ft, V_{TOSS}, 2 min 30 sec / 2 min OEI power rating). This chart should be entered with a height gain of 8 ft per 100 ft horizontally travelled, resulting in a mass value for every pressure-altitude/temperature combination considered.
   b. Horizontal distance to climb from 35 ft to 200 ft in the first segment configuration (V_{TOSS}, 2 min 30 sec / 2 min OEI power rating). This chart should be entered with a horizontally distance of 628 m (2 062 ft), resulting in a mass value for every pressure-altitude/temperature combination considered.
   c. Rate of climb in the first segment configuration (35 ft to 200 ft, V_{TOSS}, 2 min 30 sec / 2 min OEI power rating). This chart can be entered with a rate of climb equal to the climb speed (V_{TOSS}) value in knots (converted to true airspeed) multiplied by 8.1, resulting in a mass value for every pressure-altitude/temperature combination considered.

GM1-CAT.POL.H.225(a)(2) Helicopter operations at a Public Interest Site

IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM FOR PUBLIC INTEREST SITES

1. General

   Although it is accepted that there will be a number of public interest sites that will remain for some time, it is in the interest of safety that the numbers are reduced and eventually, as a goal, all sites eliminated. A reduction of sites can be achieved in two ways:

   a. by an improvement in the performance of helicopters such that HOGE OEI is possible at weights where the mission can be performed; and

b. by the use of a site improvement program: to take out of service those sites where the exposure is greatest; or by improving sites such that the performance requirement can be met.

2. Improvement in performance

The advent of more powerful modern twin-engine helicopters has put into reach the ability to achieve the aim stated in 1.a. above. Today most of these helicopters are almost at the point where HOGE OEI with mission payload is possible.

3. Improvement of sites

Where a site could be improved by redevelopment, for example by increasing the size of the FATO, it should be done; where the problems of a site are due to the obstacle environment, a program to re-site the facility or remove the obstacle(s) should be undertaken as a priority.

4. Summary

As stated in 1. above, it is in the interest of Member States to reduce the risk of an accident due to an engine failure on take-off or landing. This could be achieved with a combination of the following policies:

a. the use of more appropriate helicopters;

b. improvement by redevelopment of a site; or

c. the re-siting of facilities to alternative locations.

The improvement policy should be achieved in a reasonable time horizon – and this should be an element of the compliance program.

The approval to operate to public interest sites could be conditional upon such improvement programs being put into place. Unless such a policy is instituted, there will be no incentive for public interest sites to be eliminated in a reasonable time horizon.

Chapter 3 – Performance class 2

GM to Section 2, Chapter 3 performance class 2

OPERATIONS IN PERFORMANCE CLASS 2

1. INTRODUCTION

This GM describes performance class 2 as established in Part-CAT. It has been produced for the purpose of:

a. explaining the underlying philosophy of operations in performance class 2;

b. showing simple means of compliance; and

c. explaining how to determine - with examples and diagrams:

   i. the take-off and landing masses;

   ii. the length of the safe-forced-landing area;

   iii. distances to establish obstacle clearance; and

   iv. entry point(s) into performance class 1.

It explains the derivation of performance class 2 from ICAO Annex 6 Part III and describes an alleviation which may be approved in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305 following a risk assessment.

It examines the basic requirements; discusses the limits of operation, and considers the benefits of the use of performance class 2.

It contains examples of performance class 2 in specific circumstances, and explains how these examples may be generalised to provide the operators with methods of calculating landing distances and obstacle clearance.

2. DEFINITIONS USED IN THIS GM

The definitions for the following terms, used in this GM, are contained in Annex I and its AMC.:

a. distance DR

b. defined point after take-off (DPATO)

c. defined point before landing (DPBL)

d. landing distance available (LDAH)

e. landing distance required (LDRH)

f. performance class 2

g. safe forced landing (SFL)

h. take-off distance available (TODA).

The following terms which are not defined Annex I are used in this GM:

V_T. a target speed at which to aim at the point of minimum ground clearance (min-dip) during acceleration from TDP to V_{TOSS};

$V_{50.}$ a target speed and height utilised to establish an AFM distance (in compliance with the requirement of CS/JAR 29.63) from which climb out is possible; and

$V_{stay-up.}$ a colloquial term used to indicate a speed at which a descent would not result following an engine failure. This speed is several knots lower than V_{TOSS} at the equivalent take-off mass.

3. WHAT DEFINES PERFORMANCE CLASS 2

Performance class 2 can be considered as performance class 3 take-off or landing, and performance class 1 climb, cruise and descent. It comprises an all-engines-operating (AEO) obstacle clearance regime for the take-off or landing phases, and a OEI obstacle clearance regime for the climb, cruise, descent, approach and missed approach phases.

For the purpose of performance calculations in Part-CAT, the CS/JAR 29.67 Category A climb performance criteria is used:

a. 150 ft/min at 1 000 ft (at V_y);

and depending on the choice of DPATO:

b. 100 ft/min up to 200 ft (at V_{TOSS}),

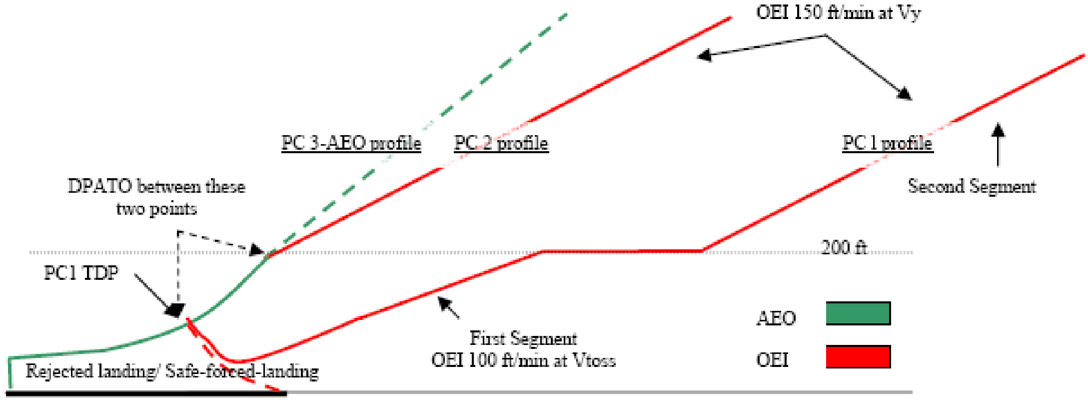
at the appropriate power settings.

3.1 Comparison of obstacle clearance in all performance classes

Figure 2 shows the profiles of the three performance classes - superimposed on one diagram.

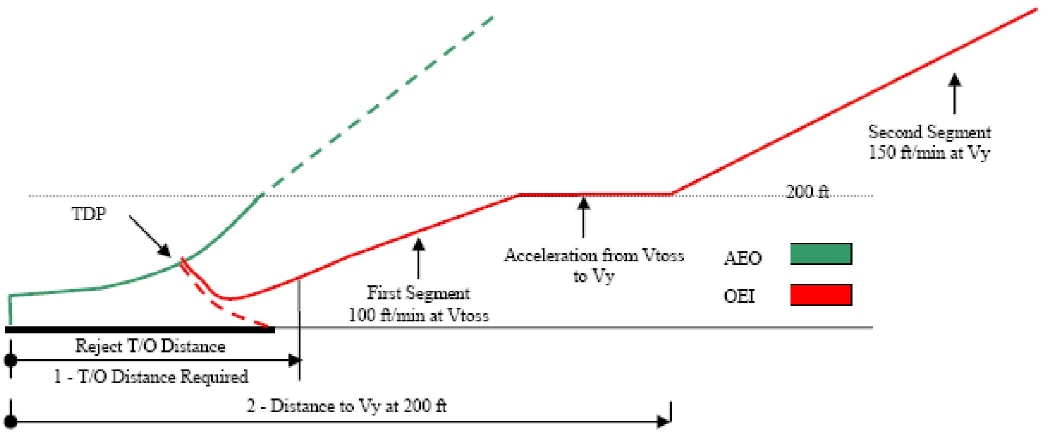
Performance class 1 (PC 1): from TDP, requires OEI obstacle clearance in all phases of flight; the construction of Category A procedures, provides for a flight path to the first climb segment, a level acceleration segment to V_y (which may be shown concurrent with the first segment), followed by the second climb segment from V_y at 200 ft (see Figure 1).

Figure 1 - All Performance Classes (a comparison)



- Performance class 2 (PC 2): requires AEO obstacle clearance to DPATO and OEI from then on. The take-off mass has the PC 1 second segment climb performance at its basis therefore, at the point where V_y at 200 ft is reached, Performance Class 1 is achieved (see also Figure 3).
- Performance class 3 (PC 3): requires AEO obstacle clearance in all phases.

Figure 2 - Performance Class 1 distances



3.2 Comparison of the discontinued take-off in all performance classes

a. PC 1 - requires a prepared surface on which a rejected landing can be undertaken (no damage); and

b. PC 2 and 3 - require a safe-forced-landing surface (some damage can be tolerated but there must be a reasonable expectancy of no injuries to persons in the aircraft or third parties on the surface).

4. THE DERIVATION OF PERFORMANCE CLASS 2

PC 2 is primarily based on the text of ICAO Annex 6 Part III Section II and its attachments - which provide for the following:

a. obstacle clearance before DPATO: the helicopter shall be able, with all engines operating, to clear all obstacles by an adequate margin until it is in a position to comply with b. below;

b. obstacle clearance after DPATO: the helicopter shall be able, in the event of the critical engine becoming inoperative at any time after reaching DPATO, to continue the take-off clearing all obstacles along the flight path by an adequate margin until it is able to comply with en-route clearances; and

c. engine failure before DPATO: before the DPATO, failure of the critical engine may cause the helicopter to force land; therefore a safe-forced-landing should be possible (this is analogous to the requirement for a reject in performance class 1 but where some damage to the helicopter can be tolerated.)

5. BENEFITS OF PERFORMANCE CLASS 2

Operations in performance class 2 permit advantage to be taken of an AEO procedure for a short period during take-off and landing - whilst retaining engine failure accountability in the climb, descent and cruise. The benefits include the:

a. ability to use (the reduced) distances scheduled for the AEO - thus permitting operations to take place at smaller aerodromes and allowing airspace requirements to be reduced;

b. ability to operate when the safe-forced-landing distance available is located outside the boundary of the aerodrome;

c. ability to operate when the take-off-distance required is located outside the boundary of the aerodome; and

d. ability to use existing Category A profiles and distances when the surface conditions are not adequate for a reject but are suitable for a safe-forced-landing (for example when the ground is waterlogged).

Additionally, following a risk assessment when the use of exposure is approved by the competent authority the:

i. ability to operate when a safe-forced landing is not assured in the take-off phase; and

ii. ability to penetrate the HV curve for short periods during take-off or landing.

6 IMPLEMENTATION OF PERFORMANCE CLASS 2 IN PART-CAT

The following sections explain the principles of the implementation of performance class 2.

6.1 Does ICAO spell it all out?

ICAO Annex 6 does not give guidance on how DPATO should be calculated nor does it require that distances be established for the take-off. However, it does require that, up to DPATO AEO, and from DPATO OEI, obstacle clearance is established (see Figure 3 and Figure 4 which are simplified versions of the diagrams contained in Annex 6 Part III, Attachment A).

(ICAO Annex 8 – Airworthiness of Aircraft (Part IV, Chapter 2.2.1.3.4) requires that an AEO distance be scheduled for all helicopters operating in Performance Classes 2 & 3. ICAO Annex 6 is dependent upon the scheduling of the AEO distances, required in Annex 8, to provide data for the location of DPATO.)

When showing obstacle clearance, the divergent obstacle clearance height required for IFR is - as in performance class 1 - achieved by the application of the additional obstacle clearance of 0.01 distance DR (the distance from the end of 'take-off-distance-available' - see the pictorial representation in Figure 4 and the definition in Annex I).

As can also be seen from Figure 4, flight must be conducted in VFR until DPATO has been achieved (and deduced that if an engine failure occurs before DPATO, entry into IFR is not permitted (as the OEI climb gradient will not have been established)).

Figure 3 - Performance Class 2 Obstacle Clearance

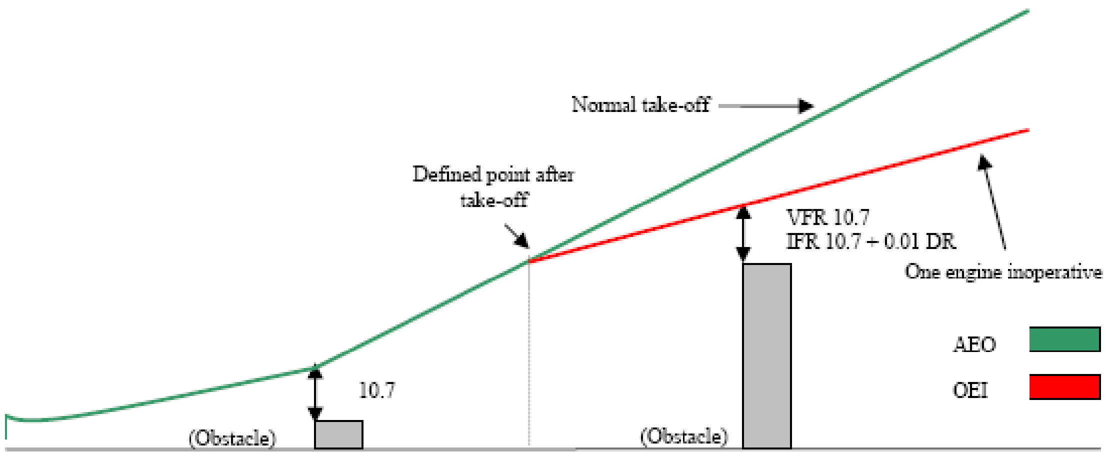
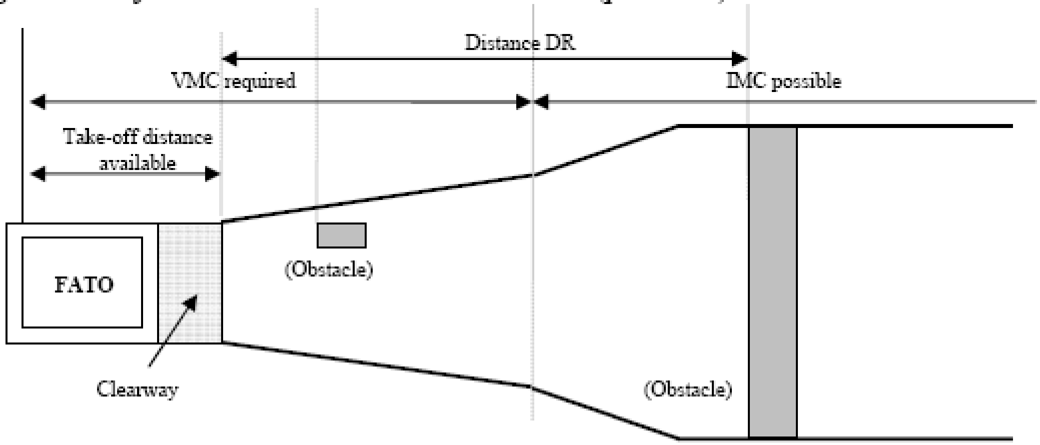


Figure 4 - Performance Class 2 Obstacle Clearance (plan view)



6.2 Function of DPATO

From the preceding paragraphs it can be seen that DPATO is germane to PC 2. It can also be seen that, in view of the many aspects of DPATO, it has, potentially, to satisfy a number of requirements which are not necessarily synchronised (nor need to be).

It is clear that it is only possible to establish a single point for DPATO, satisfying the requirement of 4 b & 4 c above, when:

a. accepting the TDP of a Category A procedure; or

b. extending the safe-forced-landing requirement beyond required distances (if data is available to permit the calculation of the distance for a safe-forced-landing from the DPATO).

It could be argued that the essential requirement for DPATO is contained in section 4 b - OEI obstacle clearance. From careful examination of the flight path reproduced in Figure 3 above, it may be reasonably deduced that DPATO is the point at which adequate climb performance is established (examination of Category A procedures would indicate that this could be (in terms of mass, speed and height above the take-off surface) the conditions at the start of the first or second segments - or any point between.)

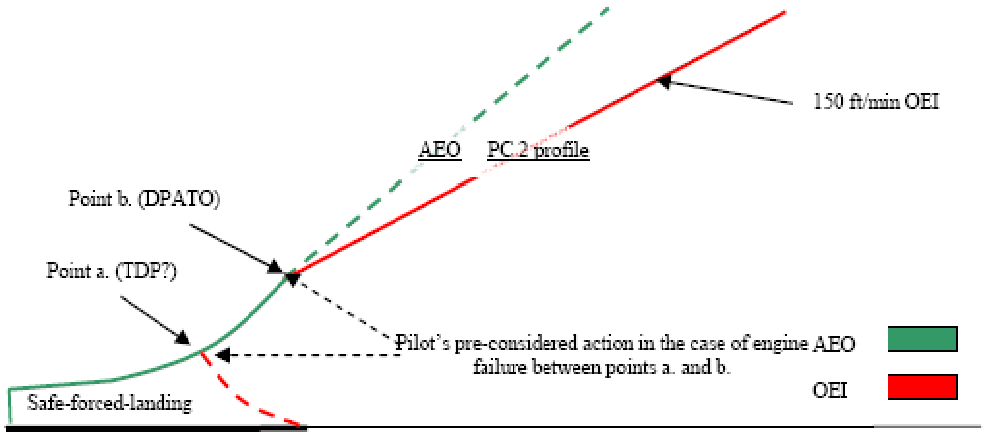
(The diagrams in Attachment A of ICAO Annex 6, do not appear to take account of drop down - permitted under Category A procedures; similarly with helideck departures, the potential for acceleration in drop down below deck level (once the deck edge has been cleared) is also not shown. These omissions could be regarded as a simplification of the diagram, as drop down is discussed and accepted in the accompanying ICAO text.)

It may reasonably be argued that, during the take-off and before reaching an appropriate climb speed (V_{TOSS} or V_y), V_{stayup} will already have been achieved (where V_{stayup} is the ability to continue the flight and accelerate without descent - shown in some Category A procedures as V_T or target speed) and where, in the event of an engine failure, no landing would be required.

It is postulated that, to practically satisfy all the requirements of sections 4 a, b and c above, DPATO does not need to be defined at one synchronised point; provisions can be met separately - i.e. defining the distance for a safe-forced-landing, and then establishing the OEI obstacle clearance flight path.

As the point at which the helicopter's ability to continue the flight safely, with the critical engine inoperative is the critical element, it is that for which DPATO is used in this text.

Figure 5 - The three elements in a PC 2 take-off



6.2.1 The three elements from the pilot's perspective

When seen from the pilot's perspective (see Figure 5), there are three elements of the PC 2 take-off - each with associated related actions which need to be considered in the case of an engine failure:

a. action in the event of an engine failure - up to the point where a forced-landing will be required;

b. action in the event of an engine failure - from the point where OEI obstacle clearance is established (DPATO); and

c. pre-considered action in the event of an engine failure - in the period between a. and b.

The action of the pilot in a. and b. is deterministic i.e. it remains the same for every occasion. For pre-consideration of the action at point c.; as is likely that the planned flight path will have to be abandoned (the point at which obstacle clearance using the OEI climb gradients not yet being reached) the pilot must (before take-off) have considered his options and the associated risks, and have in mind the course of action that will be pursued in the event of an engine failure during that short period. (As it is likely that any action will involve turning manoeuvres, the effect of turns on performance must be considered.)

Take-off mass for performance class 2

As previously stated, performance class 2 is an AEO take-off which, from DPATO, has to meet the requirement for OEI obstacle clearance in the climb and en-route phases. Take-off mass is therefore the mass that gives at least the minimum climb performance of 150 ft/min at V_y, at 1 000 ft above the take-off point, and obstacle clearance.

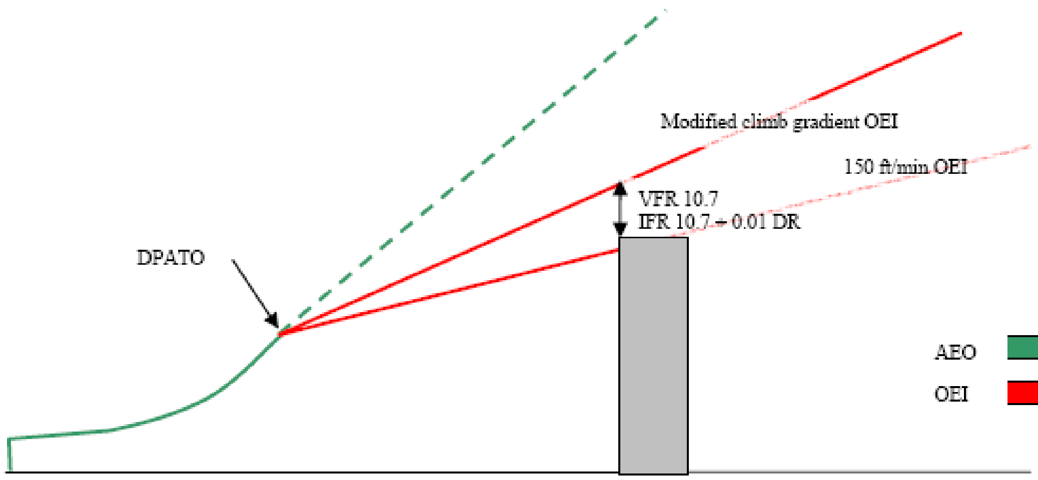
As can be seen in Figure 6 below, the take-off mass may have to be modified when it does not provide the required OEI clearance from obstacles in the take-off-flight path (exactly as in performance class 1). This could occur when taking off from an aerodrome/operating site where the flight path has to clear an obstacle such a ridge line (or line of buildings) which can neither be:

i. flown around using VFR and see and avoid; nor

ii. cleared using the minimum climb gradient given by the take-off mass (150 ft/min at 1 000 ft).

In this case, the take-off mass has to be modified (using data contained in the AFM) to give an appropriate climb gradient.

Figure 6 - Performance Class 2 (enhanced climb gradient)



6.4 Do distances have to be calculated?

Distances do not have to be calculated if, by using pilot judgement or standard practice, it can be established that:

a. a safe-forced-landing is possible following an engine failure (notwithstanding that there might be obstacles in the take-off path); and

b. obstacles can be cleared (or avoided) - AEO in the take-off phase and OEI in the climb.

If early entry (in the sense of cloud base) into IMC is expected, an IFR departure should be planned. However, standard masses and departures can be used when described in the operations manual.

6.5 The use of Category A data

In Category A procedures, TDP is the point at which either a rejected landing or a safe continuation of the flight, with OEI obstacle clearance, can be performed.

For PC 2 (when using Category A data), only the safe-forced-landing (reject) distance depends on the equivalent of the TDP; if an engine fails between TDP and DPATO the pilot has to decide what action is required - it is not necessary for a safe-forced-landing distance to be established from beyond the equivalent of TDP (see Figure 5 and discussion in section 6.2.1 above).

Category A procedures based on a fixed V_{TOSS} are usually optimized either for the reduction of the rejected take-off distance, or the take-off distance. Category A procedures based on a variable V_{TOSS} allow either a reduction in required distances (low V_{TOSS}) or an improvement in OEI climb capability (high V_{TOSS}). These optimisations may be beneficial in PC 2 to satisfy the dimensions of the take-off site.

In view of the different requirements for PC 2 (from PC 1), it is perfectly acceptable for the two calculations (one to establish the safe-forced-landing distance and the other to establish DPATO) to be based upon different Category A procedures. However, if this method is used, the mass resulting from the calculation cannot be more than the mass from the more limiting of the procedures.

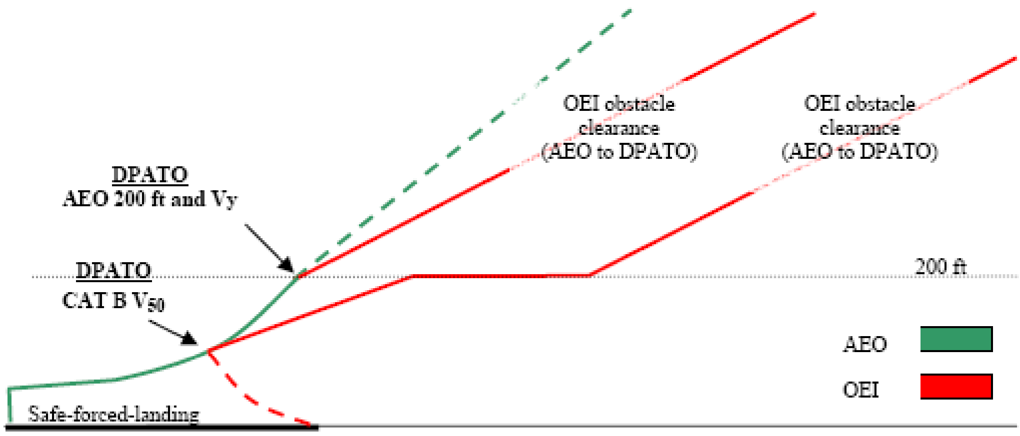
6.6 DPATO and obstacle clearance

If it is necessary for OEI obstacle clearance to be established in the climb, the starting point (DPATO) for the (obstacle clearance) gradient has to be established. Once DPATO is defined, the OEI obstacle clearance is relatively easy to calculate with data from the AFM.

6.6.1 DPATO based on AEO distance

In the simplest case; if provided, the scheduled AEO to 200 ft at V_y can be used (see Figure 7).

Figure 7 -Suggested AEO locations for DPATO

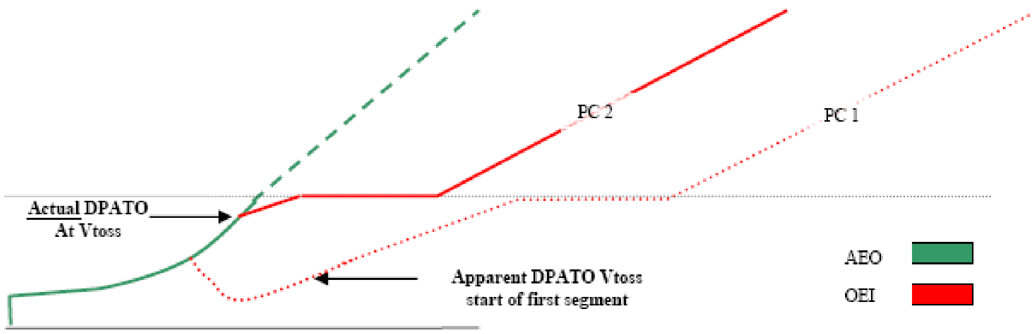


Otherwise, and if scheduled in the AFM, the AEO distance to 50 ft (V_{50}) – determined in accordance with CS/JAR 29.63 - can be used (see Figure 7). Where this distance is used, it will be necessary to ensure that the V_{50} climb out speed is associated with a speed and mass for which OEI climb data is available so that, from V_{50}, the OEI flight path can be constructed.

6.6.2 DPATO based on Category A distances

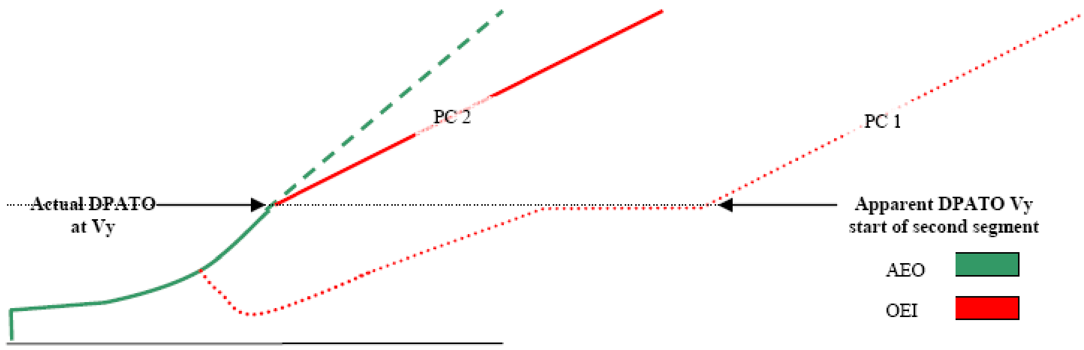
It is not necessary for specific AEO distances to be used (although for obvious reasons it is preferable); if they are not available, a flight path (with OEI obstacle clearance) can be established using Category A distances (see Figure 8 and Figure 9) - which will then be conservative.

Figure 8 - Using Cat A data; actual and apparent position of DPATO (Vtoss and start of first segment)



The apparent DPATO is for planning purposes only in the case where AEO data is not available to construct the take-off flight path. The actual OEI flight path will provide better obstacle clearance than the apparent one (used to demonstrate the minimum requirement) - as seen from the firm and dashed lines in the above figure.

Figure 9 - Using Cat A data; actual and apparent position of DPATO (Vy and start of second segment)



6.6.3 Use of most favourable Category A data

The use of AEO data is recommended for calculating DPATO. However, where an AEO distance is not provided in the flight manual, distance to V_y at 200 ft, from the most favourable of the Category A procedures, can be used to construct a flight path (provided it can be demonstrated that AEO distance to 200 ft at V_y is always closer to the take-off point than the CAT A OEI flight path).

In order to satisfy the requirement of CAT.POL.H.315, the last point from where the start of OEI obstacle clearance can be shown is at 200 ft.

6.7 The calculation of DPATO - a summary

DPATO should be defined in terms of speed and height above the take-off surface and should be selected such that AFM data (or equivalent data) is available to establish the distance from the start of the take-off up to the DPATO (conservatively if necessary).

6.7.1 First method

DPATO is selected as the AFM Category B take-off distance (V_{50} speed or any other take-off distance scheduled in accordance with CS/JAR 29.63) provided that within the distance the helicopter can achieve:

a. one of the V_{TOSS} values (or the unique V_{TOSS} value if it is not variable) provided in the AFM, selected so as to assure a climb capability according to Cat A criteria; or

b. V_y.

Compliance with CAT.POL.H.315 would be shown from V_{50} (or the scheduled Category B take-off distance).

6.7.2 Second method

DPATO is selected as equivalent to the TDP of a Category A clear area take-off procedure conducted in the same conditions.

Compliance with CAT.POL.H.315 would be shown from the point at which V_{TOSS}, a height of at least 35 ft above the take-off surface and a positive climb gradient are achieved (which is the Category A clear area take-off distance).

Safe-forced-landing areas should be available from the start of the take-off, to a distance equal to the Category A "clear area" rejected take-off distance.

6.7.3 Third method

As an alternative; DPATO could be selected such that AFM OEI data is available to establish a flight path initiated with a climb at that speed. This speed should then be:

a. One of the V_{TOSS} values (or the unique V_{TOSS} value if it is not variable) provided in the AFM, selected so as to assure a climb capability according to Category A criteria; or

b. V_y.

The height of the DPATO should be at least 35 ft and can be selected up to 200 ft. Compliance with CAT.POL.H.315 would be shown from the selected height.

6.8 Safe-forced-landing distance

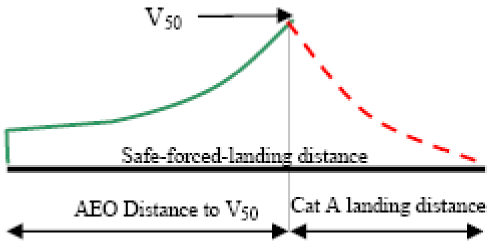
Except as provided in 6.7.2 above, the establishment of the safe-forced-landing distance could be problematical as it is not likely that PC 2 specific data will be available in the AFM.

By definition, the Category A reject distance may be used when the surface is not suitable for a reject, but may be satisfactory for a safe-force-landing (for example where the surface is flooded or is covered with vegetation).

Any Category A (or other accepted) data may be used to establish the distance – however, once established it remains valid only if the Category A mass (or the mass from the accepted data) is used and the Category A (or accepted) AEO profile to the TDP is flown. In view of these constraints, the likeliest Category A procedures are the clear area or the short field (restricted area/site) procedures.

From Figure 10, it can be seen that if the Category B V_{50} procedure is used to establish DPATO, the combination of the distance to 50 ft and the Category A 'clear area' landing distance, required by CS/JAR 29.81 (the horizontal distance required to land and come to a complete stop from a point 50 ft above the landing surface), will give a good indication of the maximum safe-forced-landing distance required (see also the explanation on V_{stayup} above).

Figure 10 - Category B (V_{50}) safe-forced-landing distance



6.9 Performance class 2 landing

For other than PC 2 operations to elevated FATOs or helidecks (see section 7.4.1 below), the principles for the landing case are much simpler. As the performance requirement for PC 1 and PC 2 landings are virtually identical, the condition of the landing surface is the main issue.

If the engine fails at any time during the approach, the helicopter must be able either: to perform a go-around meeting the requirements of CAT.POL.H.315; or perform a safe-forced-landing on the surface. In view of this, and if using PC 1 data, the LDP should not be lower that the corresponding TDP (particularly in the case of a variable TDP).

The landing mass will be identical to the take-off mass for the same site (with consideration for any reduction due to obstacle clearance - as shown in Figure 6 above).

In the case of a balked landing (i.e. the landing site becomes blocked or unavailable during the approach); the full requirement for take-off obstacle clearance must be met.

7. OPERATIONS IN PERFORMANCE CLASS 2 WITH EXPOSURE

The Implementing Rules offer an opportunity to discount the requirement for an assured safe-forced-landing area in the take-off or landing phase - subject to an approval from the competent authority. The following sections deals with this option:

7.1 Limit of exposure

As stated above, performance class 2 has to ensure AEO obstacle clearance to DPATO and OEI obstacle clearance from that point. This does not change with the application of exposure.

It can therefore be stated that operations with exposure are concerned only with alleviation from the requirement for the provision of a safe forced landing.

The absolute limit of exposure is 200 ft - from which point OEI obstacle clearance must be shown.

7.2 The principle of risk assessment

ICAO Annex 6 Part III Chapter 3.1.2 (Sixth Edition July 2007) states that:

"3.1.2 In conditions where the safe continuation of flight is not ensured in the event of a critical engine failure, helicopter operations shall be conducted in a manner that gives appropriate consideration for achieving a safe-forced-landing."

Although a safe-forced-landing may no longer be the (absolute) Standard, it is considered that risk assessment is obligatory to satisfy the amended requirement for 'appropriate consideration'.

Risk assessment used for fulfillment of this proposed Standard is consistent with principles described in 'AS/NZS 4360:1999'. erms used in this text and defined in the AS/NZS Standard are shown in Sentence Case e.g. risk assessment or risk reduction.

7.3 The application of risk assessment to performance class 2

Under circumstances where no risk attributable to engine failure (beyond that inherent in the safe-forced-landing) is present, operations in performance class 2 may be conducted in accordance with the non-alleviated requirements contained above - and a safe-forced-landing will be possible.

Under circumstances where such risk would be present i.e.: operations to an elevated FATO (deck edge strike); or, when permitted, operations from a site where a safe-forced-landing cannot be accomplished because the surface is inadequate; or where there is penetration into the HV curve for a short period during take-off or landing (a limitation in CS/JAR 29 AFMs), operations have to be conducted under a specific approval.

Provided such operations are risk assessed and can be conducted to an established safety target - they may be approved in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305.

7.3.1 The elements of the risk management

The approval process consists of an operational risk assessment and the application of four principles:

a. a safety target;

b. a helicopter reliability assessment;

c. continuing airworthiness; and

d. mitigating procedures.

7.3.2 The safety target

The main element of the risk assessment when exposure was initially introduced by the JAA into JAR-OPS 3 (NPA OPS-8), was the assumption that turbine engines in helicopters would have failure rates of about 1:100 000 per flying hour; which would permit (against the agreed safety target of 5×10^{-8} per event) an exposure of about 9 seconds for twins during the take-off or landing event. (When choosing this target it was assumed that the majority of current well maintained turbine powered helicopters would be capable of meeting the event target - it therefore represents the residual risk).

(Residual risk is considered to be the risk that remains when all mitigating procedures - airworthiness and operational - are applied (see sections 7.3.4 and 7.3.5 below)).

7.3.3 The reliability assessment

The reliability assessment was initiated to test the hypothesis (stated in 7.3.2 above) that the majority of turbine powered types would be able to meet the safety target. This hypothesis could only be confirmed by an examination of the manufacturers' power-loss data.

7.3.4 Mitigating procedures (airworthiness)

Mitigating procedures consist of a number of elements:

a. the fulfilment of all manufacturers' safety modifications;

b. a comprehensive reporting system (both failures and usage data); and

c. the implementation of a usage monitoring system (UMS).

Each of these elements is to ensure that engines, once shown to be sufficiently reliable to meet the safety target, will sustain such reliability (or improve upon it).

The monitoring system is felt to be particularly important as it had already been demonstrated that when such systems are in place it inculcates a more considered approach to operations. In addition the elimination of 'hot starts', prevented by the UMS, itself minimises the incidents of turbine burst failures.

7.3.5 Mitigating procedures (operations)

Operational and training procedures, to mitigate the risk - or minimise the consequences - are required of the operator. Such procedures are intended to minimise risk by ensuring that:

a. the helicopter is operated within the exposed region for the minimum time; and

b. simple but effective procedures are followed to minimise the consequence should an engine failure occur.

7.4 Operation with exposure

When operating with exposure, there is alleviation from the requirement to establish a safe-forced-landing area (which extends to landing as well as take-off); however, the requirement for obstacle clearance - AEO in the take-off and from DPATO OEI in the climb and en-route phases - remains (both for take-off and landing).

The take-off mass is obtained from the more limiting of the following:

a. the climb performance of 150 ft/min at 1000 ft above the take-off point; or

b. obstacle clearance (in accordance with 6.3 above); or

c. AEO hover out of ground effect (HOGE) performance at the appropriate power setting. (AEO HOGE is required to ensure acceleration when (near) vertical dynamic take-off techniques are being used. Additionally for elevated FATO or helidecks, it ensures a power reserve to offset ground cushion dissipation; and ensures that, during the landing manoeuvre, a stabilised HOGE is available - should it be required.)

7.4.1 Operations to elevated FATOs or helidecks

PC 2 operations to elevated FATOs and helidecks are a specific case of operations with exposure. In these operations, the alleviation covers the possibility of:

a. a deck-edge strike if the engine fails early in the take-off or late in the landing;

b. penetration into the HV Curve during take-off and landing; and

c. forced landing with obstacles on the surface (hostile water conditions) below the elevated FATO (helideck). The take-of mass is as stated above and relevant techniques are as described in GM1-CAT.POL.H.310(c)&CAT.POL.H.325(c).

It is unlikely that the DPATO will have to be calculated with operations to helidecks (due to the absence of obstacles in the take-off path).

7.4.2 Additional requirements for operations to helidecks in a hostile environment

For a number of reasons (e.g. the deck size, and the helideck environment – including obstacles and wind vectors), it was not anticipated that operations in PC 1 would be technically feasible or economically justifiable by the projected JAA deadline of 2010 (OEI HOGE could have provided a method of compliance but this would have resulted in a severe and unwarranted restriction on payload/range).

However, due to the severe consequences of an engine failure to helicopters involved in take-off and landings to helidecks located in hostile sea areas (such as the North Sea or the North Atlantic), a policy of risk reduction is called for. As a result, enhanced class 2 take-off and landing masses together with techniques that provide a high confidence of safety due to:

a. deck-edge avoidance; and

b. drop-down that provides continued flight clear of the sea,

are seen as practical measures.

For helicopters which have a Category A elevated helideck procedure, certification is satisfied by demonstrating a procedure and adjusted masses (adjusted for wind as well as temperature and pressure) which assure a 15 ft deck edge clearance on take-off and landing. It is therefore recommended that manufacturers, when providing enhanced PC2 procedures, use the provision of this deck-edge clearance as their benchmark.

As the height of the helideck above the sea is a variable, drop down has to be calculated; once clear of the helideck, a helicopter operating in PC1 would be expected to meet the 35 ft obstacle clearance. Under circumstances other than open sea areas and with less complex environmental conditions, this would not present difficulties. As the provision of drop down takes no account of operational circumstances, standard drop down graphs for enhanced PC2 - similar to those in existence for Category A procedures - are anticipated.

Under conditions of offshore operations, calculation of drop down is not a trivial matter - the following examples indicate some of the problems which might be encountered in hostile environments:

i. Occasions when tide is not taken into account and the sea is running irregularly - the level of the obstacle (i.e. - the sea) is indefinable making a true calculation of drop down impossible.

ii. Occasions when it would not be possible - for operational reasons - for the approach and departure paths to be clear of obstacles - the 'standard' calculation of drop-down could not be applied.

Under these circumstances, practicality indicates that drop-down should be based upon the height of the deck AMSL and the 35 ft clearance should be applied.

There are however, other and more complex issues which will also affect the deck-edge clearance and drop down calculations:

iii. When operating to moving decks on vessels, a recommended landing or take-off profile might not be possible because the helicopter might have to hover alongside in order that the rise and fall of the ship is mentally mapped; or, on take-off re-landing in the case of an engine failure might not be an option.

Under these circumstances, the commander might adjust the profiles to address a hazard more serious or more likely than that presented by an engine failure.

It is because of these and other (unforeseen) circumstances that a prescriptive requirement is not used. However, the target remains a 15 ft deck-edge clearance and a 35 ft obstacle clearance and data should be provided such that, where practically possible, these clearances can be planned.

As accident/incident history indicates that the main hazard is collision with obstacles on the helideck due to human error, simple and reproducible take-off and landing procedures are recommended.

In view of the reasons stated above, the future requirement for PC1 was replaced by the new requirement that the take-off mass takes into account:

A. the procedure;

B. deck-edge miss; and

C. drop down appropriate to the height of the helideck.

This will require calculation of take-off mass from information produced by manufacturers reflecting these elements. It is expected that such information will be produced by performance modelling/simulation using a model validated through limited flight testing.

7.4.3 Operations to helidecks for helicopters with an MPSC of more than 19

The original requirement for operations of helicopters with an MPSC of more than 19 was PC1 (as set out in CAT.POL.H.100(b)(2)).

However, when operating to helidecks, the problems enumerated in 7.4.2 above are equally applicable to these helicopters. In view of this, but taking into account that increased numbers are (potentially) being carried, such operations are permitted in PC2 (CAT.POL.H.100(b)(2)) but, in all helideck environments (both hostile and non-hostile), have to satisfy, the additional requirements, set out in 7.4.2 above.

AMC1-CAT.POL.H.305(b) Helicopter operations without an assured safe forced landing capability

POWERPLANT RELIABILITY STATISTICS

1. As part of the risk assessment prior to granting an approval under CAT.POL.H.305, the operator should provide appropriate engine reliability statistics available for the helicopter type and the engine type.

2. Except in the case of new engines, such data should show sudden power loss from the set of in-flight shutdown (IFSD) events not exceeding 1 per 100 000 engine hours in a 5 year moving window. However, a rate in excess of this value, but not exceeding 3 per 100 000 engine hours, may be accepted by the competent authority after an assessment showing an improving trend.

3. New engines should be assessed on a case-by-case basis.

4. After the initial assessment, updated statistics should be periodically reassessed; any adverse sustained trend will require an immediate evaluation to be

accomplished by the operator in consultation with the competent authority and the manufacturers concerned. The evaluation may result in corrective action or operational restrictions being applied.

5. The purpose of this paragraph is to provide guidance on how the in-service power plant sudden power loss rate is determined.

5.1. Share of roles between the helicopter and engine type certificate holders (TCH)

a) The provision of documents establishing the in-service sudden power loss rate for the helicopter/engine installation; the interface with the operational authority of the State of design should be the engine TCH or the helicopter TCH depending on the way they share the corresponding analysis work.

b) The engine TCH should provide the helicopter TCH with a document including: the list of in-service power loss events, the applicability factor for each event (if used), and the assumptions made on the efficiency of any corrective actions implemented (if used).

c) The engine or helicopter TCH should provide the operational Authority of the State of design or, where this authority does not take responsibility, the operational authority of the State of the operator, with a document that details the calculation results - taking into account:

   i. the events caused by the engine and the events caused by the engine installation;

   ii. the applicability factor for each event (if used), the assumptions made on the efficiency of any corrective actions implemented on the engine and on the helicopter (if used); and

   iii. the calculation of the powerplant power loss rate.

5.2 Documentation

The following documentation should be updated every year.

5.2.1 The document with detailed methodology and calculation as distributed to the authority of the State of design.

5.2.2 A summary document with results of computation as made available on request to any operational authority.

5.2.3 A service letter establishing the eligibility for such operation and defining the corresponding required configuration as provided to the operators.

5.3 Definition of the "sudden in-service power loss"

The sudden in-service power loss is an engine power loss:

a. larger than 30 % of the take-off power;

b. occurring during operation; and

c. without the occurrence of an early intelligible warning to inform and give sufficient time for the pilot to take any appropriate action.

5.4 Database documentation.

Each power loss event should be documented, by the engine and/or helicopter TCHs, as follows:

- incident report number;
- engine type;
- engine serial number;
- helicopter serial number;
- date;
- event type (demanded IFSD, un-demanded IFSD);
- presumed cause;
- applicability factor when used ; and
- reference and assumed efficiency of the corrective actions that will have to be applied (if any).

5.5 Counting methodology.

Various methodologies for counting engine power loss rate have been accepted by authorities. The following is an example of one of these methodologies:

5.5.1 The events resulting from:

a. unknown causes (wreckage not found or totally destroyed, undocumented or unproven statements);

b. where the engine or the elements of the engine installation have not been investigated (for example when the engine has not been returned by the customer); or

c. an unsuitable or non-representative use (operation or maintenance) of the helicopter or the engine,

are not counted as engine in-service sudden power loss and the applicability factor is 0 %.

5.5.2 The events caused by:

a. the engine or the engine installation; or

b. the engine or helicopter maintenance, when the applied maintenance was compliant with the maintenance manuals;

are counted as engine in-service sudden power loss and the applicability factor is 100 %.

5.5.3 For the events where the engine or an element of the engine installation has been submitted to investigation which did not allow to define a presumed cause the applicability factor is 50 %.

5.6. Efficiency of corrective actions.

The corrective actions made by the engine and helicopter manufacturers on the definition or maintenance of the engine or its installation could be defined as mandatory for specific operations. In this case the associated reliability improvement could be considered as mitigating factor for the event.

A factor defining the efficiency of the corrective action could be applied to the applicability factor of the concerned event.

5.7. Method of calculation of the powerplant power loss rate

The detailed method of calculation of the powerplant power loss rate should be documented by engine or helicopter TCH and accepted by the relevant authority.

AMC2-CAT.POL.H.305(b) Helicopter operations without an assured safe forced landing capability

IMPLEMENTATION OF THE SET OF CONDITIONS

To obtain an approval under CAT.POL.H.305(a), the operator conducting operations without an assured safe forced landing capability should implement the following:

1. Attain and then maintain the helicopter/engine modification standard defined by the manufacturer that has been designated to enhance reliability during the take-off and landing phases.

2. Conduct the preventive maintenance actions recommended by the helicopter or engine manufacturer as follows:

2.1 engine oil spectrometric and debris analysis - as appropriate;

2.2 engine trend monitoring, based on available power assurance checks;

2.3 engine vibration analysis (plus any other vibration monitoring systems where fitted); and

2.4 oil consumption monitoring.

3. The usage monitoring system should fulfil at least the following:

3.1 Recording of the following data:

- date and time of recording, or a reliable means of establishing these parameters;
- amount of flight hours recorded during the day plus total flight time;
- N_1 (gas producer RPM) cycle count;
- N_2 (power turbine RPM) cycle count (if the engine features a free turbine);
- turbine temperature exceedance: value, duration;
- power-shaft torque exceedance: value, duration (if a torque sensor is fitted);
- engine shafts speed exceedance: value, duration.

3.2 Data storage of the above parameters, if applicable, covering the maximum flight time in a day, and not less than 5 flight hours, with an appropriate sampling interval for each parameter.

3.3 The system should include a comprehensive self-test function with a malfunction indicator and a detection of power-off or sensor input disconnection.

3.4 A means should be available for downloading and analysis of the recorded parameters. Frequency of downloading should be sufficient to ensure data is not lost through over-writing.

3.5 The analysis of parameters gathered by the usage monitoring system, the frequency of such analysis and subsequent maintenance actions should be described in the maintenance documentation.

3.6 The data should be stored in an acceptable form and accessible to the competent authority for at least 24 months.

4. The training for flight crew should include the discussion, demonstration, use and practice of the techniques necessary to minimize the risks.

5. Report to the manufacturer any loss of power control, engine shutdown (precautionary or otherwise) or engine failure for any cause (excluding simulation of engine failure during training). The content of each report should provide:
   - date and time;
   - operator (and maintenance organisations where relevant);
   - type of helicopter and description of operations;
   - registration and serial number of airframe;
   - engine type and serial number;
   - power unit modification standard where relevant to failure;
   - engine position;
   - symptoms leading up to the event;
   - circumstances of engine failure including phase of flight or ground operation;
   - consequences of the event;
   - weather/environmental conditions;
   - reason for engine failure – if known;
   - in case of an in flight shut down (IFSD), nature of the IFSD (demanded/un-demanded);
   - procedure applied and any comment regarding engine restart potential;
   - engine hours and cycles (from new and last overhaul);
   - airframe flight hours;
   - rectification actions applied including, if any, component changes with part number and serial number of the removed equipment; and
   - any other relevant information.

GM1-CAT.POL.H.305(b) Helicopter operations without an assured safe forced landing capability

USE OF FULL AUTHORITY DIGITAL ENGINE CONTROL (FADEC)

Current technology increasingly allows for the recording function required inAMC2-CAT.POL.H.305(b) 3.1 to be incorporated in the full authority digital engine control (FADEC).

Where a FADEC is capable of recording some of the parameters required by paragraph 3.1 it is not intended that the recording of the parameters is to be duplicated.

Providing that the functions of paragraph 3 are satisfied, the FADEC may partially, or in whole, fulfill the requirement for recording and storing parameters in a usage monitoring system.

GM1-CAT.POL.H.310(c)&CAT.POL.H.325(c) Take-off and Landing

PROCEDURE FOR CONTINUED OPERATIONS TO HELIDECKS

1 Factors to be considered when taking off from or landing on a helideck

1.1 In order to take account of the considerable number of variables associated with the helideck environment, each take-off and landing may require a slightly different profile. Factors such as helicopter mass and centre of gravity, wind velocity, turbulence, deck size, deck elevation and orientation, obstructions, power margins, platform gas turbine exhaust plumes etc., will influence both the take-off and landing. In particular, for the landing, additional considerations such as the need for a clear go-around flight path, visibility and cloud base etc., will affect the Commander's decision on the choice of landing profile. Profiles may be modified, taking account of the relevant factors noted above and the characteristics of individual helicopter types.

2 Performance

2.1 To perform the following take-off and landing profiles, adequate all-engines-operating (AEO) hover performance at the helideck is required. In order to provide a minimum level of performance, data (derived from the AFM AEO out of ground effect (OGE)) should be used to provide the maximum take-off or landing mass. Where a helideck is affected by downdrafts or turbulence or hot gases, or where the take-off or landing profile is obstructed, or the approach or take-off cannot be made into wind, it may be necessary to decrease this take-off or landing mass by using a suitable calculation method. The helicopter mass should not exceed that required by CAT.POL.H.310 (a) or CAT.POL.H.325(a).

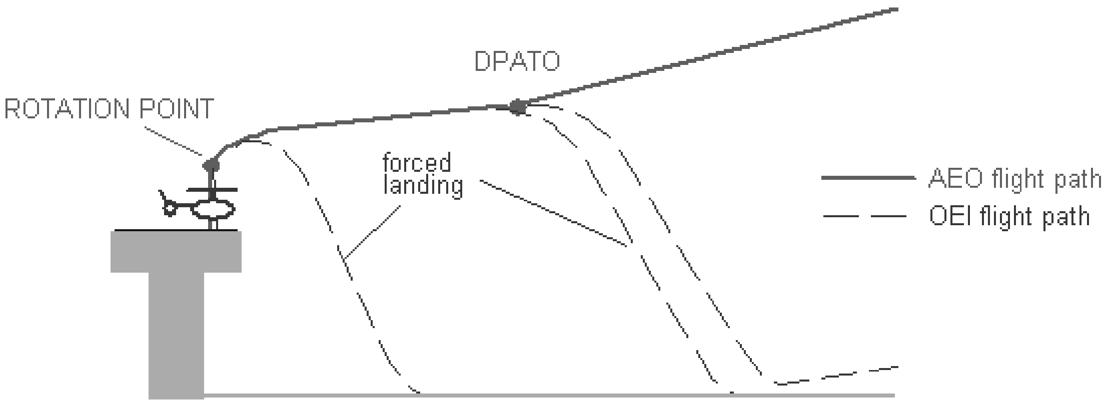
(For helicopter types no longer supported by the manufacturer, data may be established by the operator, provided they are acceptable to the competent authority.)

3 Take-off profile

3.1 The take-off should be performed in a dynamic manner ensuring that the helicopter continuously moves vertically from the hover to the rotation point (RP) and thence into forward flight. If the manoeuvre is too dynamic then there is an increased risk of losing spatial awareness (through loss of visual cues) in the event of a rejected take-off, particularly at night.

3.2 If the transition to forward flight is too slow, the helicopter is exposed to an increased risk of contacting the deck edge in the event of an engine failure at or just after the point of cyclic input (RP).

3.3 It has been found that the climb to RP is best made between 110 % and 120 % of the power required in the hover. This power offers a rate of climb which assists with deck-edge clearance following engine failure at RP, whilst minimising ballooning following a failure before RP. Individual types will require selection of different values within this range.



4 Selection of a lateral visual cue

4.1 In order to obtain the maximum performance in the event of an engine failure being recognised at or just after RP, the RP must be at its optimum value, consistent with maintaining the necessary visual cues. If an engine failure is recognised just before RP, the helicopter, if operating at a low mass, may 'balloon' a significant height before the reject action has any effect. It is, therefore, important that the pilot flying selects a lateral visual marker and maintains it until the RP is achieved, particularly on decks with few visual cues. In the event of a rejected take-off, the lateral marker will be a vital visual cue in assisting the pilot to carry out a successful landing.

5 Selection of the rotation point

5.1 The optimum RP should be selected to ensure that the take-off path will continue upwards and away from the deck with AEO, but minimising the possibility of hitting the deck edge due to the height loss in the event of an engine failure at or just after RP.

5.2 The optimum RP may vary from type to type. Lowering the RP will result in a reduced deck edge clearance in the event of an engine failure being recognised at or just after RP. Raising the RP will result in possible loss of visual cues, or a hard landing in the event of an engine failure just prior to RP.

6 Pilot reaction times

6.1 Pilot reaction time is an important factor affecting deck edge clearance in the event of an engine failure prior to or at RP. Simulation has shown that a delay of one second can result in a loss of up to 15 ft in deck edge clearance.

7 Variation of wind speed

7.1 Relative wind is an important parameter in the achieved take-off path following an engine failure; wherever practicable, take-off should be made into wind. Simulation has shown that a 10 kt wind can give an extra 5 ft deck edge clearance compared to a zero wind condition.

8 Position of the helicopter relative to the deck edge

8.1 It is important to position the helicopter as close to the deck edge (including safety nets) as possible whilst maintaining sufficient visual cues, particularly a lateral marker.

8.2 The ideal position is normally achieved when the rotor tips are positioned at the forward deck edge. This position minimises the risk of striking the deck edge following recognition of an engine failure at or just after RP. Any take-off heading which causes the helicopter to fly over obstructions below and beyond the deck edge should be avoided if possible. Therefore, the final take-off heading and position will be a compromise between the take-off path for least obstructions, relative wind, turbulence and lateral marker cue considerations.

9 Actions in the event of an engine failure at or just after RP

9.1 Once committed to the continued take-off, it is important, in the event of an engine failure, to rotate the aircraft to the optimum attitude in order to give the best chance of missing the deck edge. The optimum pitch rates and absolute pitch attitudes should be detailed in the profile for the specific type.

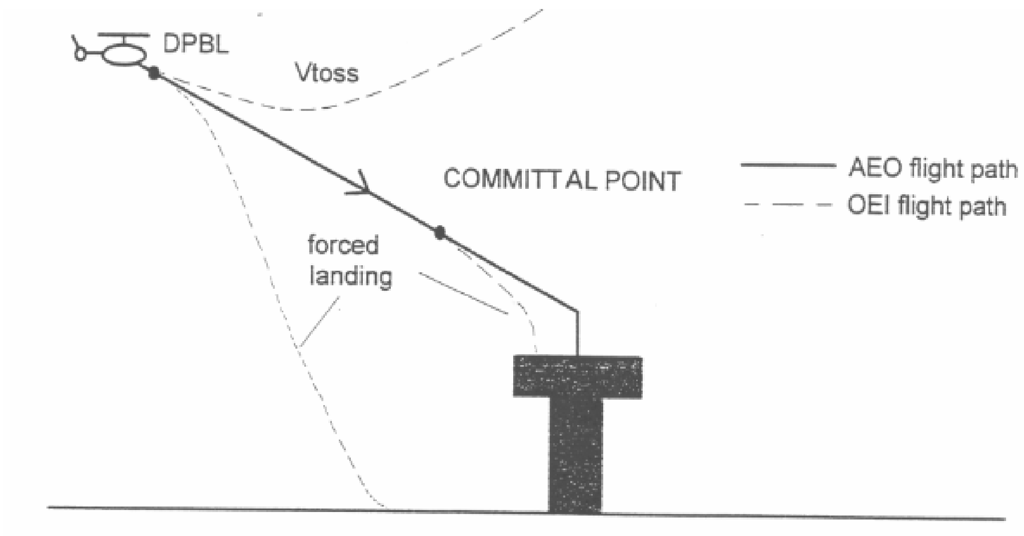
10 Take-off from helidecks which have significant movement

10.1 This technique should be used when the helideck movement and any other factors, e.g. insufficient visual cues, makes a successful rejected take-off unlikely. Weight should be reduced to permit an improved one engine inoperative capability, as necessary.

10.2 The optimum take-off moment is when the helideck is level and at its highest point, e.g. horizontal on top of the swell. Collective pitch should be applied positively and sufficiently to make an immediate transition to climbing forward flight. Because of the lack of a hover, the take-off profile should be planned and briefed prior to lift off from the deck.

11 Standard landing profile

11.1 The approach should be commenced into wind to a point outboard of the helideck. Rotor tip clearance from the helideck edge should be maintained until the aircraft approaches this position at the requisite height (type dependent) with approximately 10 kt of ground-speed and a minimal rate of descent. The aircraft is then flown on a flight path to pass over the deck edge and into a hover over the safe landing area.



12 Offset landing profile

12.1 If the normal landing profile is impracticable due to obstructions and the prevailing wind velocity, the offset procedure may be used. This should involve flying to a hover position, approximately 90° offset from the landing point, at the appropriate height and maintaining rotor tip clearance from the deck edge. The helicopter should then be flown slowly but positively sideways and down to position in a low hover over the landing point. Normally, CP will be the point at which helicopter begins to transition over the helideck edge.

13 Training

13.1 These techniques should be covered in the training required by Part-OR.

GM1-CAT.POL.H.310&CAT.POL.H.325 Take-off and Landing

TAKE-OFF AND LANDING TECHNIQUES

1 This GM describes three types of operation to/from helidecks and elevated FATOs by helicopters operating in performance class 2.

2 In two cases of take-off and landing, exposure time is used. During the exposure time (which is only approved for use when complying with CAT.POL.H.305) the probability of an engine failure is regarded as extremely remote. If an engine failure occurs during the exposure time a safe-forced-landing may not be possible.

3 Take-off - non-hostile environment (without an approval to operate with an exposure time) CAT.POL.H.310(b).

3.1 Figure 1 shows a typical take-off profile for performance class 2 operations from a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-hostile environment.

3.2 If an engine failure occurs during the climb to the rotation point, compliance with CAT.POL.H.310(b) will enable a safe landing or a safe forced landing on the deck.

3.3 If an engine failure occurs between the rotation point and the DPATO, compliance with CAT.POL.H.310(b) will enable a safe-forced-landing on the surface, clearing the deck edge.

3.4 At or after the DPATO, the OEI flight path should clear all obstacles by the margins specified in CAT.POL.H.315.

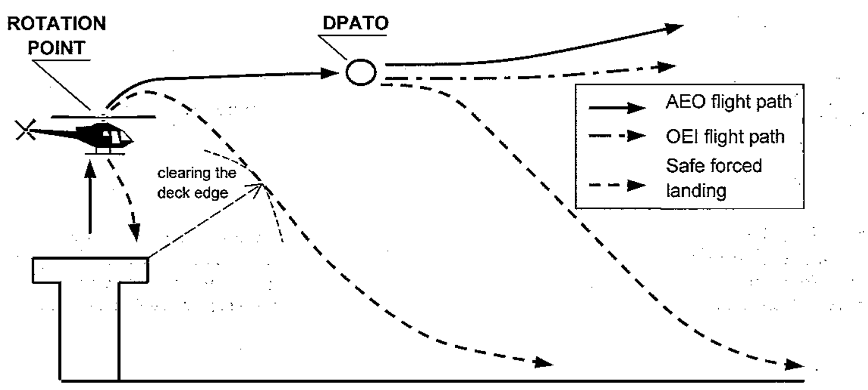


Figure 1

4 Take-off - non-hostile environment (with exposure time) CAT.POL.H.310(c)

4.1 Figure 2 shows a typical take-off profile for performance class 2 operations from a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-hostile environment (with exposure time).

4.2 If an engine failure occurs after the exposure time and before DPATO, compliance with CAT.POL.H.310(c) will enable a safe-forced-landing on the surface.

4.3 At or after the DPATO, the OEI flight path should clear all obstacles by the margins specified in CAT.POL.H.315.

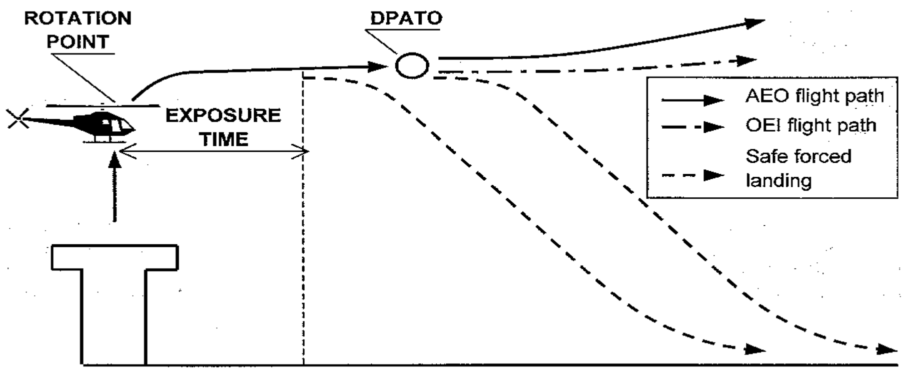


Figure 2

5 Take-off - non-congested hostile environment (with exposure time) CAT.POL.H.315(c)

5.1 Figure 3 shows a typical take off profile for performance class 2 operations from a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-congested hostile environment (with exposure time).

5.2 If an engine failure occurs after the exposure time the helicopter is capable of a safe-forced-landing or safe continuation of the flight.

5.3 At or after the DPATO, the OEI flight path should clear all obstacles by the margins specified in CAT.POL.H.315.

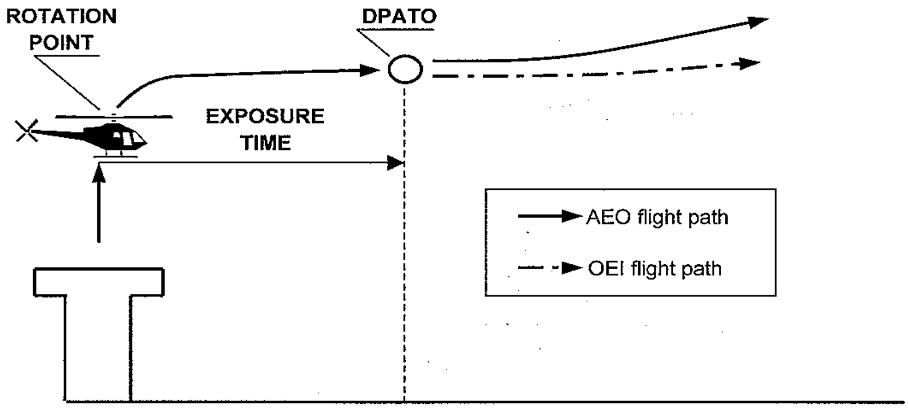


Figure 3

6. Landing - non-hostile environment (without an approval to operate with an exposure time) CAT.POL.H.325(b)

6.1 Figure 4 shows a typical landing profile for performance class 2 operations to a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-hostile environment.

6.2 The DPBL is defined as a "window" in terms of airspeed, rate of descent, and height above the landing surface. If an engine failure occurs before the DPBL, the pilot may elect to land or to execute a balked landing.

6.3 In the event of an engine failure being recognised after the DPBL and before the committal point, compliance with CAT.POL.H.325 (b) will enable a safe-forced-landing on the surface.

6.4 In the event of an engine failure at or after the commital point, compliance with CAT.POL.H.325(b) will enable a safe-forced-landing on the deck.

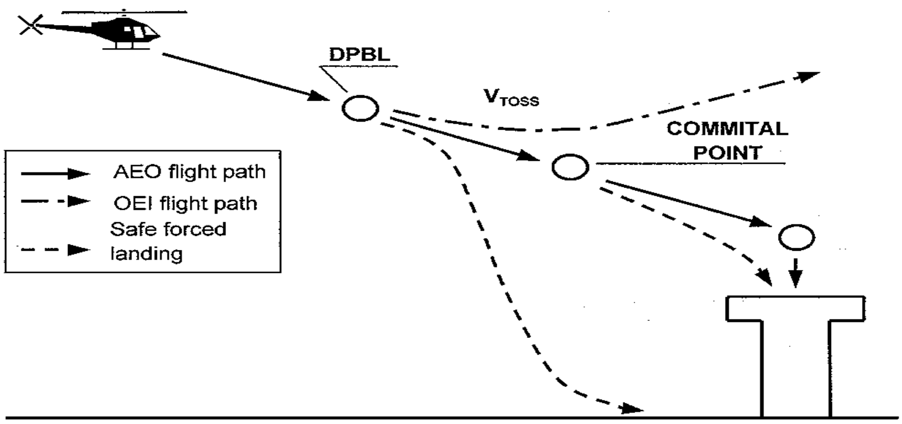


Figure 4

7 Landing - non-hostile environment (with exposure time) CAT.POL.H.325(c)

7.1 Figure 5 shows a typical landing profile for performance class 2 operations to a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-hostile environment (with exposure time).

7.2 The DPBL is defined as a "window" in terms of airspeed, rate of descent, and height above the landing surface. If an engine failure occurs before the DPBL, the pilot may elect to land or to execute a balked landing.

7.3 In the event of an engine failure being recognised before the exposure time compliance with CAT.POL.H.325(c) will enable a safe-forced-landing on the surface.

7.4 In the event of an engine failure after the exposure time, compliance with CAT.POL.H.325 (c) will enable a safe-forced-landing on the deck.

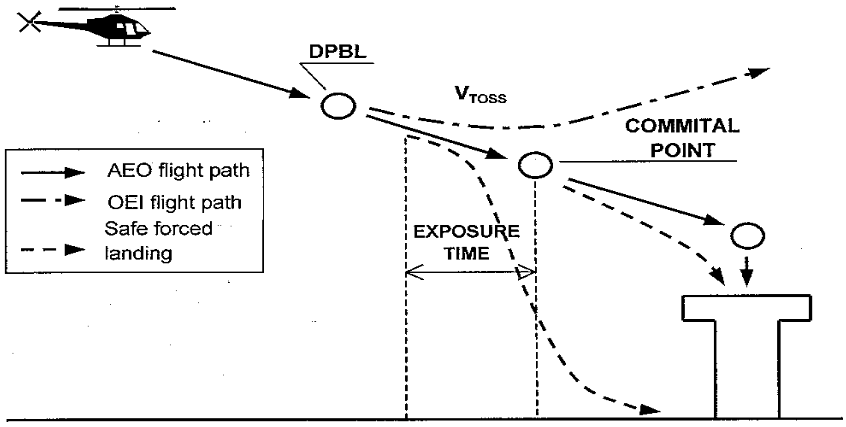


Figure 5

8. Landing - non-congested hostile environment (with exposure time) CAT.POL.H.325 (c)

8.1 Figure 6 shows a typical landing profile for performance class 2 operations to a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-congested hostile environment (with exposure time).

8.2 In the event of an engine failure at any point during the approach and landing phase up to the start of exposure time, compliance with CAT.POL.H.325 (b) will enable the helicopter, after clearing all obstacles under the flight path, to continue the flight.

8.3 In the event of an engine failure after the exposure time (i.e. at or after the committal point), a safe-forced-landing should be possible on the deck.

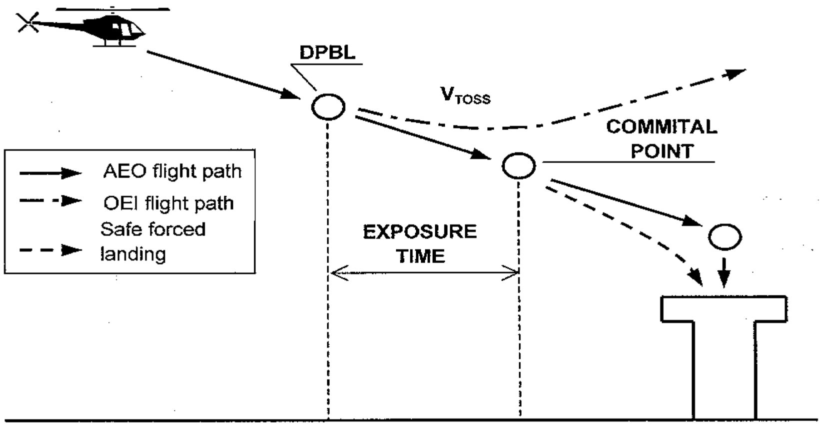


Figure 6

Chapter 4 – Performance class 3

GM1-CAT.POL.400(c) General

THE TAKE-OFF AND LANDING PHASES (PERFORMANCE CLASS 3)

1. To understand the use of ground level exposure in performance class 3, it is important first to be aware of the logic behind the use of 'take-off and landing phases'; once this is clear, it is easier to appreciate the aspects and limits of the use of ground level exposure. This GM shows the derivation of the term from the ICAO definition of the 'en-route phase' and then gives practical examples of the use, and limitations on the use, of ground level exposure in CAT.POL.400(c).

2. The take-off phase in performance class 1 and performance class 2 may be considered to be bounded by 'the specified point in the take-off' from which the take-off flight path begins.

2.1 In performance class 1 this specified point is defined as "the end of the take-off distance required".

2.2 In performance class 2 this specified point is defined as "DPATO or, as an alternative, no later than 200 ft above the take-off surface".

2.3 There is no simple equivalent point for bounding of the <u>landing</u> in performance class 1 & 2.

3. Take-off flight path is not used in performance class 3 and, consequently, the term 'take-off and landing phases' is used to bound the limit of exposure. For the purpose of performance class 3, the take-off and landing phases are considered to be bounded by:

   a. for the take-off no later than V_y (speed for best rate of climb) or 200 ft above the take-off surface; and

   b. for the landing 200 ft above the landing surface.

   (ICAO Annex 6 Part III, defines en-route phase as being "That part of the flight from the end of the take-off and initial climb phase to the commencement of the approach and landing phase." The use of take-off and landing phase in this text is used to distinguish the take-off from the initial climb, and the landing from the approach: they are considered to be complimentary and not contradictory.)

4. Ground level exposure – and exposure for elevated FATOs or helidecks in a non-hostile environment – is permitted for operations under an approval in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305. Exposure in this case is limited to the 'take-off and landing phases'.

   The practical effect of bounding of exposure can be illustrated with the following examples:

   a. <u>A clearing</u>: the operator may consider a take-off/landing in a clearing when there is sufficient power, with all engines operating, to clear all obstacles in the take-off path by an adequate margin (this, in ICAO, is meant to indicate 35 ft). Thus, the clearing may be bounded by bushes, fences, wires and, in the extreme, by power lines, high trees etc. Once the obstacle has been cleared – by using a steep or a vertical climb (which itself may infringe the height velocity (HV) diagram) - the helicopter reaches V_y or 200 ft, and from that point a safe forced landing must be possible. The effect is that whilst operation to a clearing is possible, operation to a clearing in the middle of a forest is not (except when operated in accordance with CAT.POL.H.420).

b. An aerodrome/operating site surrounded by rocks: the same applies when operating to a landing site that is surrounded by rocky ground. Once V_y or 200 ft has been reached, a safe forced landing must be possible.

c. An elevated FATO or helideck: when operating to an elevated FATO or helideck in performance class 3, exposure is considered to be twofold: firstly, to a deck-edge strike if the engine fails after the decision to transition has been taken; and secondly, to operations in the HV diagram due to the height of the FATO or helideck. Once the take-off surface has been cleared and the helicopter has reached the knee of the HV diagram, the helicopter should be capable of making a safe forced landing.

5. Operation in accordance with CAT.POL.400(b) does not permit excursions into a hostile environment per se and is specifically concerned with the absence of space to abort the take-off or landing when the take-off and landing space are limited; or when operating in the HV diagram.

6. Specifically, the use of this exception to the requirement for a safe forced landing (during take-off or landing) does not permit semi-continuous operations over a hostile environment such as a forest or hostile sea area.

GM1-CAT.POL.420 Helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area

THE INTENT OF THE APPROVAL

1. Introduction

The transposition of Appendix 1 to JAR-OPS 3.005(e) and the intent expressed in IEM to Appendix 1 to JAR-OPS 3.005(e) revealed some inconsistencies in the original text. These inconsistencies have caused uneven implementation throughout the JAA Member States. In order to better reflect the current state of operations, this GM is provided to explain under which circumstances such approval can be obtained by the operator.

2. Passenger seating configuration

The maximum passenger seating configuration of six has been set to limit the increased exposure to an engine-failure to a maximum number of passengers; this is also applicable to multi-engined helicopters.

3. Specified mountainous areas

Current generation twin-engined helicopters may not always be able to meet the performance class 1 or 2 requirements for the mission at the operational altitude. It is in these circumstances that the operator may obtain the approval from the competent authority to operate with a turbine powered helicopter at these operating altitudes without an assured safe forced landing capability.

Such operations should only be conducted in mountainous areas specified by the competent authority of the state responsible for that area, as specified in CAT.POL.420.H (a)(1).

4. Remote area

An example of a remote area is an arctic settlement, where the requirement to operate with an assured safe forced landing capability might not be economically justified or proportionate.

Section 5 - Mass and balance

Chapter 1 – Motor-powered aircraft

AMC1-CAT.POL.MAB.100(b) Mass and balance, loading

WEIGHING OF AN AIRCRAFT

1. New aircraft that have been weighed at the factory may be placed into operation without reweighing if the mass and balance records have been adjusted for alterations or modifications to the aircraft. Aircraft transferred from one EU operator to another EU operator do not have to be weighed prior to use by the receiving operator, unless more than four years have elapsed since the last weighing.
2. The mass and centre of gravity (CG) position of an aircraft should be revised whenever the cumulative changes to the dry operating mass exceed ± 0.5 % of the maximum landing mass or for aeroplanes the cumulative change in CG position exceeds 0.5 % of the mean aerodynamic chord. This may be done by weighing the aircraft or by calculation.
3. When weighing an aircraft, normal precautions should be taken consistent with good practices such as:
   a. checking for completeness of the aircraft and equipment;
   b. determining that fluids are properly accounted for;
   c. ensuring that the aircraft is clean; and
   d. ensuring that weighing is accomplished in an enclosed building.
4. Any equipment used for weighing should be properly calibrated, zeroed, and used in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Each scale should be calibrated either by the manufacturer, by a civil department of weights and measures or by an appropriately authorized organisation within two years or within a time period defined by the manufacturer of the weighing equipment, whichever is less. The equipment should enable the mass of the aircraft to be established accurately. One single accuracy criterion for weighing equipment cannot be given. However, the weighing accuracy is considered satisfactory if the accuracy criteria in Table1 are met by the individual scales/cells of the weighing equipment used:

Table 1: Accuracy criteria for weighing equipment

For a scale/cell load	An accuracy of
below 2 000 kg	± 1%
from 2 000 kg to 20 000 kg	± 20 kg
from 2 000 kg to 20 000 kg	± 0·1 %

FLEET MASS AND CG POSITION – AEROPLANES

1. For a group of aeroplanes of the same model and configuration, an average dry operating mass and CG position may be used as the fleet mass and CG position, provided that:

   a. the dry operating mass of an individual aeroplane does not differ by more than ±0.5 % of the maximum structural landing mass from the established dry operating fleet mass, or

   b. the CG position of an individual aeroplane does not differ by more than ±0.5 % of the mean aerodynamic chord from the established fleet CG.

2. The operator should verify that, after an equipment or configuration change or after weighing, the aeroplane falls within the tolerances above.

3. To add an aeroplane to a fleet operated with fleet values, the operator should verify by weighing or calculation that its actual values fall within the tolerances specified in 1.a and b.

4. To obtain fleet values, the operator should weigh, in the period between two fleet mass evaluations, a certain number of aeroplanes as specified in Table 2, where "n" is the number of aeroplanes in the fleet using fleet values. Those aeroplanes in the fleet which have not been weighed for the longest time should be selected first.

Table 2: Minimum number of weighings to obtain fleet values

Number of aeroplanes in the fleet	**Minimum number of weighings**
2 or 3	n
4 to 9	(n + 3)/2
10 or more	(n + 51)/10

5. The interval between two fleet mass evaluations should not exceed 48 months.

6. The fleet values should be updated at least at the end of each fleet mass evaluation.

7. Aeroplanes which have not been weighed since the last fleet mass evaluation maybe kept in a fleet operated with fleet values, provided that the individual values are revised by calculation and stay within the tolerances above. If these individual values no longer fall within the tolerances, the operator should determine new fleet values or operate aeroplanes not falling within the limits with their individual values.

8. If an individual aeroplane mass is within the dry operating fleet mass tolerance but its CG position exceeds the tolerance, the aeroplane may be operated under the applicable dry operating fleet mass but with an individual CG position.

9. Aeroplanes for which no mean aerodynamic chord has been published should be operated with their individual mass and CG position values. They may be operated under the dry operating fleet mass and CG position, provided that a risk assessment has been completed.

CENTRE OF GRAVITY LIMITS – OPERATIONAL CG ENVELOPE AND IN-FLIGHT CG

In the Certificate Limitations section of the aircraft flight manual, forward and aft CG limits are specified. These limits ensure that the certification stability and control criteria are met throughout the whole flight and allow the proper trim setting for take-off. The operator should ensure that these limits are respected by:

1. Defining and applying operational margins to the certified CG envelope in order to compensate for the following deviations and errors:
   a. Deviations of actual CG at empty or operating mass from published values due, for example, to weighing errors, unaccounted modifications and/or equipment variations;
   b. Deviations in fuel distribution in tanks from the applicable schedule;
   c. Deviations in the distribution of baggage and cargo in the various compartments as compared with the assumed load distribution as well as inaccuracies in the actual mass of baggage and cargo;
   d. Deviations in actual passenger seating from the seating distribution assumed when preparing the mass and balance documentation. Large CG errors may occur when 'free seating', i.e. freedom of passengers to select any seat when entering the aircraft, is permitted. Although in most cases reasonably even longitudinal passenger seating can be expected, there is a risk of an extreme forward or aft seat selection causing very large and unacceptable CG errors, assuming that the balance calculation is done on the basis of an assumed even distribution. The largest errors may occur at a load factor of approximately 50% if all passengers are seated in either the forward or aft half of the cabin. Statistical analysis indicates that the risk of such extreme seating adversely affecting the CG is greatest on small aircraft;
   e. Deviations of the actual CG of cargo and passenger load within individual cargo compartments or cabin sections from the normally assumed mid position;
   f. Deviations of the CG caused by gear and flap positions and by application of the prescribed fuel usage procedure, unless already covered by the certified limits;
   g. Deviations caused by in-flight movement of cabin crew, galley equipment and passengers; and
   h. On small aeroplanes, deviations caused by the difference between actual passenger masses and standard passengers masses when such masses are used.
2. Defining and applying operational procedures in order to:
   a. ensure an evenly distribution of passengers in the cabin;
   b. take into account any significant CG travel during flight caused by passenger/crew movement; and
   c. take into account any significant CG travel during flight caused by fuel consumption/transfer.

AMC1-CAT.POL.MAB.100(c) Mass and balance, loading

MASS VALUES FOR CREW

1. The operator should use the following mass values for crew to determine the dry operating mass:

   a Actual masses including any crew baggage; or

   b Standard masses, including hand baggage, of 85 kg for flight crew/technical crew members and 75kg for cabin crew members.

2. The operator should correct the dry operating mass to account for any additional baggage. The position of this additional baggage should be accounted for when establishing the centre of gravity of the aeroplane.

DRY OPERATING MASS

The dry operating mass includes:

1. crew and crew baggage;
2. catering and removable passenger service equipment; and
3. tank water and lavatory chemicals.

AMC1-CAT.POL.MAB.100(d) Mass and balance, loading

MASS VALUES FOR PASSENGERS AND BAGGAGE

1. When the number of passenger seats available is:

   a. less than 10 for aeroplanes; or

   b. less than 6 for helicopters;

   passenger mass may be calculated on the basis of a statement by, or on behalf of, each passenger, adding to it a predetermined mass to account for hand baggage and clothing.

   The predetermined mass for hand baggage and clothing should be established by the operator on the basis of studies relevant to his particular operation. In any case, it should not be less than:

   a. 4 kg for clothing; and

   b. 6 kg for hand baggage.

   The passengers' stated mass and the mass of passengers' clothing and hand baggage should be checked prior to boarding and adjusted, if necessary. The operator should establish a procedure in the operations manual when to select actual or standard masses and the procedure to be followed when using verbal statements.

2. When determining the actual mass by weighing, passengers' personal belongings and hand baggage should be included. Such weighing should be conducted immediately prior to boarding the aircraft.

3. When determining the mass of passengers by using standard mass values, the standard mass values in Tables 1 and 2 below should be used. The standard masses include hand baggage and the mass of any infant carried by an adult on one passenger seat. Infants occupying separate passenger seats should be considered as children for the purpose of this AMC. When the total number of passenger seats

available on an aircraft is 20 or more, the standard masses of male and female in Table 1 should be used. As an alternative, in cases where the total number of passenger seats available is 30 or more, the "All Adult" mass values in Table 1 may be used.

Table 1: Standard masses for passengers – aircraft with a total number of passenger seats of 20 or more

Passenger seats:	**20 and more**		**30 and more**
	Male	Female	All adult
All flights except holiday charters	88 kg	70 kg	84 kg
Holiday charters*	83 kg	69 kg	76 kg
Children	35 kg	35 kg	35 kg

* Holiday charter means a charter flight that is part of a holiday travel package. On such flights the entire passenger capacity is hired by one or more charterer(s) for the carriage of passengers who are travelling, all or in part by air, on a round- or circle-trip basis for holiday purposes. The holiday charter mass values apply provided that not more than 5 % of passenger seats installed in the aircraft are used for the non revenue carriage of certain categories of passengers. Categories of passengers such as company personnel, tour operators' staff, representatives of the press, authority officials etc. can be included within the 5% without negating the use of holiday charter mass values.

Table 2: Standard masses for passengers – aircraft with a total number of passenger seats of 19 or less

Passenger seats	**1 - 5**	**6 - 9**	**10 - 19**
Male	104 kg	96 kg	92 kg
Female	86 kg	78 kg	74 kg
Children	35 kg	35 kg	35 kg

On aeroplane flights with 19 passenger seats or less and all helicopter flights where no hand baggage is carried in the cabin or where hand baggage is accounted for separately, 6 kg may be deducted from male and female masses in Table 2. Articles such as an overcoat, an umbrella, a small handbag or purse, reading material or a small camera are not considered as hand baggage.

For helicopter operations in which a survival suit is provided to passengers, 3 kg should be added to the passenger mass value.

4. Mass values for baggage.

   a. Aeroplanes. When the total number of passenger seats available on the aeroplane is 20 or more, the standard mass values for checked baggage of Table 3 should be used.

   b. Helicopters. When the total number of passenger seats available on the helicopters is 20 or more, the standard mass value for checked baggage is 13 kg.

   c. For aircraft with 19 passenger seats or less, the actual mass of checked baggage should be determined by weighing.

Table 3: Standard masses for baggage – aeroplanes with a total number of passenger seats of 20 or more

Type of flight	Baggage standard mass
Domestic	11 kg
Within the European region	13 kg
Intercontinental	15 kg
All other	13 kg

   d. For the purpose of Table 3:

      i. domestic flight means a flight with origin and destination within the borders of one State.

      ii. flights within the European region means flights, other than domestic flights, whose origin and destination are within the area specified in paragraph (e).

      iii. Intercontinental flight means flights beyond the European region with origin and destination in different continents.

   e. Flights within the European region are flights conducted within the following area:

      – N7200 E04500
      – N4000 E04500
      – N3500 E03700
      – N3000 E03700
      – N3000 W00600
      – N2700 W00900
      – N2700 W03000
      – N6700 W03000

- N7200 W01000
- N7200 E04500

as depicted in Figure 1: European region

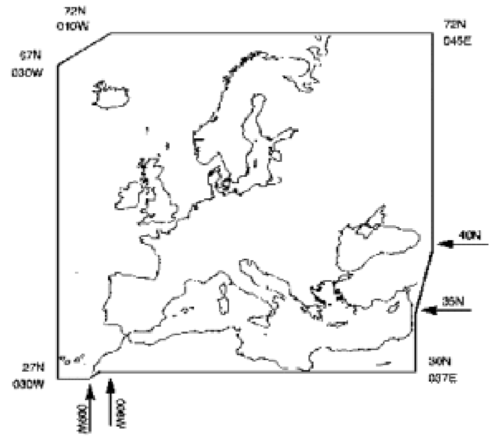


Figure 1 - European region

Figure 1: European region

5. Other standard masses may be used provided they are calculated on the basis of a detailed weighing survey plan and a reliable statistical analysis method is applied. The operator should advise the competent authority about the intent of the passenger weighing survey and explain the survey plan in general terms. The revised standard mass values should only be used in circumstances comparable with those under which the survey was conducted. Where the revised standard masses exceed those in Tables 1, 2 and 3 of, then such higher values should be used.
6. On any flight identified as carrying a significant number of passengers whose masses, including hand baggage, are expected to significantly deviate from the standard passenger mass, the operator should determine the actual mass of such passengers by weighing or by adding an adequate mass increment.
7. If standard mass values for checked baggage are used and a significant number of passengers checked baggage is expected to significantly deviate from the standard baggage mass, the operator should determine the actual mass of such baggage by weighing or by adding an adequate mass increment.

PROCEDURE FOR ESTABLISHING REVISED STANDARD MASS VALUES FOR PASSENGERS AND BAGGAGE

1. Passengers

   a. Weight sampling method. The average mass of passengers and their hand baggage should be determined by weighing, taking random samples. The selection of random samples should by nature and extent be representative of the passenger volume, considering the type of operation, the frequency of flights on various routes, in/outbound flights, applicable season and seat capacity of the aircraft.

   b. Sample size. The survey plan should cover the weighing of at least the greatest of:

i. A number of passengers calculated from a pilot sample, using normal statistical procedures and based on a relative confidence range (accuracy) of 1 % for all adult and 2 % for separate male and female average masses; and

ii. for aircraft:

A. with a passenger seating capacity of 40 or more, a total of 2000 passengers; or

B. with a passenger seating capacity of less than 40, a total number of 50 multiplied by the passenger seating capacity.

c. Passenger masses. Passenger masses should include the mass of the passengers' belongings which are carried when entering the aircraft. When taking random samples of passenger masses, infants should be weighted together with the accompanying adult.

d. Weighing location. The location for the weighing of passengers should be selected as close as possible to the aircraft, at a point where a change in the passenger mass by disposing of or by acquiring more personal belongings is unlikely to occur before the passengers board the aircraft.

e. Weighing machine. The weighing machine used for passenger weighing should have a capacity of at least 150 kg. The mass should be displayed at minimum graduations of 500 g. The weighing machine should have an accuracy of at least 0,5 % or 200 g whichever is greater.

f. Recording of mass values. For each flight included in the survey the mass of the passengers, the corresponding passenger category (i.e. male/female/children) and the flight number should be recorded.

2. Checked baggage. The statistical procedure for determining revised standard baggage mass values based on average baggage masses of the minimum required sample size should comply with 1.a and .b. For baggage, the relative confidence range (accuracy) should amount to 1 %. A minimum of 2000 pieces of checked baggage should be weighed.

3. Determination of revised standard mass values for passengers and checked baggage.

a. To ensure that, in preference to the use of actual masses determined by weighing, the use of revised standard mass values for passengers and checked baggage does not adversely affect operational safety, a statistical analysis should be carried out. Such an analysis should generate average mass values for passengers and baggage as well as other data.

b. On aircraft with 20 or more passenger seats, these averages apply as revised standard male and female mass values.

c. On aircraft with 19 passenger seats or less, the increments in Table 4 should be added to the average passenger mass to obtain the revised standard mass values:

Table 4: Increments for revised standard masses values

Number of passenger seats	Required mass increment
1 – 5 incl.	16 kg
6 – 9 incl.	8 kg
10 – 19 incl.	4 kg

Alternatively, all adult revised standard (average) mass values may be applied on aircraft with 30 or more passenger seats. Revised standard (average) checked baggage mass values are applicable to aircraft with 20 or more passenger seats.

d. The revised standard masses should be reviewed at intervals not exceeding 5 years.

e. All adult revised standard mass values should be based on a male/female ratio of 80/20 in respect of all flights except holiday charters which are 50/50. A different ratio on specific routes or flights may be used, provided supporting data shows that the alternative male/female ratio is conservative and covers at least 84 % of the actual male/female ratios on a sample of at least 100 representative flights.

f. The resulting average mass values should be rounded to the nearest whole number in kg. Checked baggage mass values should be rounded to the nearest 0,5 kg figure, as appropriate.

g. When operating on similar routes or networks, operators may pool their weighing surveys provided that in addition to the joint weighing survey results, results from individual operators participating in the joint survey are separately indicated in order to validate the joint survey results.

GM1-CAT.POL.MAB.100(d) Mass and balance, loading

ADJUSTMENT OF STANDARD MASSES

When standard mass values are used, paragraph6 of AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.100 (d) - MASS VALUES FOR PASSENGERS AND BAGGAGE, states that the operator should identify and adjust the passenger and checked baggage masses in cases where significant numbers of passengers or quantities of baggage are suspected of significantly deviating from the standard values. Therefore the operations manual should contain instructions to ensure that:

1. Check-in, operations and cabin staff and loading personnel report or take appropriate action when a flight is identified as carrying a significant number of passengers whose masses, including hand baggage, are expected to significantly deviate from the standard passenger mass, and/or groups of passengers carrying exceptionally heavy baggage (e.g. military personnel or sports teams); and

2. On small aircraft, where the risks of overload and/or CG errors are the greatest, pilots pay special attention to the load and its distribution and make proper adjustments.

GM2-CAT.POL.MAB.100(d) Mass and Balance, Loading

STATISTICAL EVALUATION OF PASSENGERS AND BAGGAGE DATA

1. Sample size.

   a. For calculating the required sample size it is necessary to make an estimate of the standard deviation on the basis of standard deviations calculated for similar populations or for preliminary surveys. The precision of a sample estimate is calculated for 95% reliability or 'significance', i.e. there is a 95% probability that the true value falls within the specified confidence interval around the estimated value. This standard deviation value is also used for calculating the standard passenger mass.

   b. As a consequence, for the parameters of mass distribution, i.e. mean and standard deviation, three cases have to be distinguished:

      i. μ, σ = the true values of the average passenger mass and standard deviation, which are unknown and which are to be estimated by weighing passenger samples.

      ii. μ', σ' = the 'a priori' estimates of the average passenger mass and the standard deviation, i.e. values resulting from an earlier survey, which are needed to determine the current sample size.

      iii. $\bar{x}$, s = the estimates for the current true values of m and s, calculated from the sample.

      The sample size can then be calculated using the following formula:

$$n \geq \frac{(1.96 * \sigma' * 100)^2}{(e'_r * \mu')^2}$$

      where:

      n = number of passengers to be weighed (sample size)

      e'_r = allowed relative confidence range (accuracy) for the estimate of μ by x (see also equation in paragraph 3). The allowed relative confidence range specifies the accuracy to be achieved when estimating the true mean. For example, if it is proposed to estimate the true mean to within ± 1%, then e'_r will be 1 in the above formula.

      1.96 = value from the Gaussian distribution for 95% significance level of the resulting confidence interval.

2. Calculation of average mass and standard deviation. If the sample of passengers weighed is drawn at random, then the arithmetic mean of the sample (x) is an unbiased estimate of the true average mass (μ) of the population.

   a. Arithmetic mean of sample where:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{n} x_j}{n}$$

x_j = mass values of individual passengers (sampling units).

b. Standard deviation where:

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - \bar{x})^2}{n-1}}$$

$x_j -$ = deviation of the individual value from the sample mean.

3. Checking the accuracy of the sample mean. The accuracy (confidence range) which can be ascribed to the sample mean as an indicator of the true mean is a function of the standard deviation of the sample which has to be checked after the sample has been evaluated. This is done using the formula:

$$e_r = \frac{1{\cdot}96 * s * 100}{\sqrt{n} * \bar{x}} (\%)$$

whereby e_r should not exceed 1% for an all adult average mass and 2% for an average male and/or female mass. The result of this calculation gives the relative accuracy of the estimate of μ at the 95% significance level. This means that with 95% probability, the true average mass μ lies within the interval:

$$\bar{x} \pm \frac{1{\cdot}96 * s}{\sqrt{n}}$$

4. Example of determination of the required sample size and average passenger mass.

a. Introduction. Standard passenger mass values for mass and balance purposes require passenger weighing programs be carried out. The following example shows the various steps required for establishing the sample size and evaluating the sample data. It is provided primarily for those who are not well versed in statistical computations. All mass figures used throughout the example are entirely fictitious.

b. Determination of required sample size. For calculating the required sample size, estimates of the standard (average) passenger mass and the standard deviation are needed. The 'a priori' estimates from an earlier survey may be used for this purpose. If such estimates are not available, a small representative sample of about 100 passengers should be weighed so that the required values can be calculated. The latter has been assumed for the example.

Step 1: estimated average passenger mass.

n	xj (kg)
1	79.9
2	68.1
3	77.9
4	74.5
5	54.1
6	X 62.2
7	89.3
8	108.7
.	.
85	63.2
86	75.4
$\sum_{j=1}^{86}$	6 071.6

$$\mu' = \bar{x} = \frac{\sum x_j}{n} = \frac{6071.6}{86}$$

$$= 70.6 \text{ kg}$$

Step 2: estimated standard deviation.

n	xj	(xj – x)	(xj – x)2
1	79.9	+9.3	86.49
2	68.1	–2.5	6.25
3	77.9	+7.3	53.29
4	74.5	+3.9	15.21
5	54.1	–16.5	272.25
6	62.2	–8.4	70.56
7	89.3	+18.7	349.69
8	108.7	+38.1	1 451.61
.	.	.	.
85	63.2	–7.4	54.76
86	75.4	–4.8	23.04
$\sum_{j=1}^{86}$	6071.6		34 683.40

$$\sigma' = \sqrt{\frac{\sum (x_j - \bar{x})^2}{n-1}}$$

$$\sigma' = \sqrt{\frac{34\ 683 \cdot 40}{86-1}}$$

σ' = 20.20 kg

Step 3: required sample size.

The required number of passengers to be weighed should be such that the confidence range, e'_r, does not exceed 1% as specified in paragraph 3.

$$n \geq \frac{(1 \cdot 96 * \sigma' * 100)^2}{(e'_r * \mu')^2}$$

$$n \geq \frac{(1 \cdot 96 * 20 \cdot 20 * 100)^2}{(1 * 70 \cdot 6)^2}$$

n ≥ 3145

The result shows that at least 3 145 passengers should be weighed to achieve the required accuracy. If e'_r is chosen as 2 % the result would be $n \geq 786$.

Step 4: after having established the required sample size a plan for weighing the passengers is to be worked out.

c. Determination of the passenger average mass.

Step 1: Having collected the required number of passenger mass values, the average passenger mass can be calculated. For the purpose of this example it has been assumed that 3 180 passengers were weighed. The sum of the individual masses amounts to 231 186.2 kg.

$n = 3180$

$$\sum_{j=1}^{3180} X_j = 231186 \cdot 2 \quad kg$$

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum x_j}{n} = \frac{231186 \cdot 2}{3180} \quad kg$$

$$\bar{x} = 72 \cdot 7 \quad kg$$

Step 2: calculation of the standard deviation.

For calculating the standard deviation the method shown in paragraph 4.2 step 2 should be applied.

$$\sum (x_j - \bar{x})^2 = 745\,145 \cdot 20$$

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum (x_j - \bar{x})^2}{n - 1}}$$

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{745\,145 \cdot 20}{3180 - 1}}$$

$$s = 15.31 \text{ kg}$$

Step 3: calculation of the accuracy of the sample mean.

$$e_r = \frac{1 \cdot 96 * s * 100}{\sqrt{n} * \bar{x}} \%$$

$$e_r = \frac{1 \cdot 96 * 15 \cdot 31 * 100}{\sqrt{3180} * 72 \cdot 7} \%$$

$e_r = 0.73$ %

Step 4: calculation of the confidence range of the sample mean.

$$\bar{x} \pm \frac{1 \cdot 96 * s}{\sqrt{n}}$$

$$\bar{x} \pm \frac{1 \cdot 96 * 15 \cdot 31}{\sqrt{3180}} \text{ kg}$$

72.7 ± 0.5 kg

The result of this calculation shows that there is a 95% probability of the actual mean for all passengers lying within the range 72.2 kg to 73.2 kg.

GM3-CAT.POL.MAB.100(d) mass and balance, loading

GUIDANCE ON PASSENGER WEIGHING SURVEYS

1. Detailed survey plan.
   a. The operator should establish and submit to the competent authority a detailed weighing survey plan that is fully representative of the operation, i.e. the network or route under consideration and the survey should involve the weighing of an adequate number of passengers.
   b. A representative survey plan means a weighing plan specified in terms of weighing locations, dates and flight numbers giving a reasonable reflection of the operator’s timetable and/or area of operation.
   c. The minimum number of passengers to be weighed is the highest of the following:
      i. The number that follows from the means of compliance that the sample should be representative of the total operation to which the results will be applied; this will often prove to be the overriding requirement; or

ii. The number that follows from the statistical requirement specifying the accuracy of the resulting mean values which should be at least 2% for male and female standard masses and 1% for all adult standard masses, where applicable. The required sample size can be estimated on the basis of a pilot sample (at least 100 passengers) or from a previous survey. If analysis of the results of the survey indicates that the requirements on the accuracy of the mean values for male or female standard masses or all adult standard masses, as applicable, are not met, an additional number of representative passengers should be weighed in order to satisfy the statistical requirements.

d. To avoid unrealistically small samples a minimum sample size of 2 000 passengers (males + females) is also required, except for small aircraft where in view of the burden of the large number of flights to be weighed to cover 2 000 passengers, a lesser number is considered acceptable.

2. Execution of weighing programme.

a. At the beginning of the weighing programme it is important to note, and to account for, the data requirements of the weighing survey report (see 6. below).

b. As far as is practicable, the weighing programme should be conducted in accordance with the specified survey plan.

c. Passengers and all their personal belongings should be weighed as close as possible to the boarding point and the mass, as well as the associated passenger category (male/female/child), should be recorded.

3. Analysis of results of weighing survey. The data of the weighing survey should be analysed as explained in this GM. To obtain an insight to variations per flight, per route etc. this analysis should be carried out in several stages, i.e. by flight, by route, by area, inbound/outbound, etc. Significant deviations from the weighing survey plan should be explained as well as their possible effect(s) on the results.

4. Results of the weighing survey.

a. The results of the weighing survey should be summarised. Conclusions and any proposed deviations from published standard mass values should be justified. The results of a passenger weighing survey are average masses for passengers, including hand baggage, which may lead to proposals to adjust the standard mass values given in AMC1CAT.POL.MAB.100 (d) Tables 1 and 2. These averages, rounded to the nearest whole number may, in principle, be applied as standard mass values for males and females on aircraft with 20 and more passenger seats. Because of variations in actual passenger masses, the total passenger load also varies and statistical analysis indicates that the risk of a significant overload becomes unacceptable for aircraft with less that 20 seats. This is the reason for passenger mass increments on small aircraft.

b. The average masses of males and females differ by some 15 kg or more and because of uncertainties in the male/female ratio the variation of the total passenger load is greater if all adult standard masses are used than when using separate male and female standard masses. Statistical analysis indicates that the use of all adult standard mass values should be limited to aircrafts with 30 passenger seats or more.

c. Standard mass values for all adults must be based on the averages for males and females found in the sample, taking into account a reference male/female ratio of 80/20 for all flights except holiday charters where a ratio of 50/50 applies. The operator may, based on the data from his weighing programme, or by proving a different male/female ratio, apply for approval of a different ratio on specific routes or flights.

5. Weighing survey report:

The weighing survey report, reflecting the content of paragraphs 1–4 above, should be prepared in a standard format as follows:

WEIGHING SURVEY REPORT

1 Introduction

Objective and brief description of the weighing survey.

2 Weighing survey plan

Discussion of the selected flight number, airports, dates, etc.

Determination of the minimum number of passengers to be weighed.

Survey plan.

3 Analysis and discussion of weighing survey results

Significant deviations from survey plan (if any).

Variations in means and standard deviations in the network.

Discussion of the (summary of) results.

4 Summary of results and conclusions

Main results and conclusions.

Proposed deviations from published standard mass values.

Attachment 1

Applicable summer and/or winter timetables or flight programmes.

Attachment 2

Weighing results per flight (showing individual passenger masses and sex); means and standard deviations per flight, per route, per area and for the total network.

GM1-CAT.POL.MAB.100(g) Mass and balance, loading

FUEL DENSITY

1. If the actual fuel density is not known, the operator may use standard fuel density values for determining the mass of the fuel load. Such standard values should be based on current fuel density measurements for the airports or areas concerned.

2. Typical fuel density values are:

a.	Gasoline (piston engine fuel)	–	0.71
b.	JET A1 (Jet fuel JP 1)	–	0.79
c.	JET B (Jet fuel JP 4)	–	0.76
d.	Oil	–	0.88

GM1-CAT.POL.MAB.100.H(i) Mass and balance, loading

IN-FLIGHT CHANGES IN LOADING - HELICOPTERS

In-flight changes in loading may occur in hoist operations.

AMC1-CAT.POL.MAB.105(a) Mass and balance data and documentation

CONTENTS AND SYSTEM

1. Mass and balance documentation
   a. Contents:
2. The mass and balance documentation should include advice to the commander whenever a non-standard method has been used for determining the mass of the load
3. The operator should verify the integrity of mass and balance data and documentation generated by a computerised mass and balance system, at intervals not exceeding 6 months. The operator should establish a system to check that amendments of its input data are incorporated properly in the system and that the system is operating correctly on a continuous basis.
4. Whenever the mass and balance documentation is sent to the aircraft via data link, a copy of the final mass and balance documentation as accepted by the commander should be available on the ground.
5. The person supervising the loading of the aircraft should confirm by hand signature or equivalent that the load and its distribution are in accordance with the mass and balance documentation given to the commander. The commander should indicate his/her acceptance by hand signature or equivalent.

GM1-CAT.POL.MAB.105(c) Mass and balance data and documentation

ON BOARD INTEGRATED MASS AND BALANCE COMPUTER SYSTEM.

An on board integrated mass and balance computer system may be an aircraft installed system capable of receiving input data either from other aircraft systems or from a mass and balance system on ground, in order to generate mass and balance data as an output.

STAND-ALONE COMPUTERISED MASS AND BALANCE SYSTEM

A stand-alone computerised mass and balance system may be a computer, either as a part of an electronic flight bag (EFB) system or solely dedicated to mass and balance purposes, requiring input from the user, in order to generate mass and balance data as an output.

Subpart D – Instrument, data, equipment

Section 1 – Aeroplanes

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.100(a) Instruments and equipment – General

APPROVED EQUIPMENT

The equipment approval in CAT.IDE.A.100 means that the equipment should have an authorisation (e.g. European Technical Standards Order (ETSO) authorisation) or an approval in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003.

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.100(c) Instruments and equipment – General

INSTRUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT THAT DO NOT NEED TO BE APPROVED IN ACCORDANCE WITHREGULATION (EC) NO 1702/2003, BUT ARE CARRIED ON A FLIGHT

1. The provision of this paragraph does not exempt the item of equipment from complying with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 if the instrument or equipment is installed in the aeroplane. In this case, the installation should be approved as required in Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 and should comply with the applicable airworthiness codes as required under the same Regulation.
2. The functionality of non-installed instruments and equipment required by this Part and that do not need an equipment approval should be checked against recognised industry standards appropriate to the intended purpose. The operator is responsible for ensuring the maintenance of these instruments and equipment.
3. The failure of additional non-installed instruments or equipment not required by this Part or by Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 or any applicable airspace requirements should not adversely affect the airworthiness and/or the safe operation of the aeroplane. Examples are the following:
    a. instruments supplying additional flight information (e.g. stand-alone global positioning system (GPS));
    b. mission dedicated equipment (e.g. radios); and
    c. non-installed passenger entertainment equipment.

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.100(d) Instruments and equipment - General

POSITIONING OF INSTRUMENTS

This requirement implies that whenever a single instrument is required to be installed in an aeroplane operated in a multi-crew environment, the instrument needs to be visible from each flight crew station.

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.110 Spare electrical fuses

FUSES

A spare electrical fuse means a replaceable fuse in the flight crew compartment, not an automatic circuit breaker, or circuit breakers in the electric compartments.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.120 Equipment to clear windshield

MEANS TO MAINTAIN A CLEAR PORTION OF THE WINDSHIELD DURING PRECIPITATION

The means used to maintain a clear portion of the windshield during precipitation should be windshield wipers or an equivalent.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.125&CAT.IDE.A.130 Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

INTEGRATED INSTRUMENTS

1. Individual equipment requirements may be met by combinations of instruments, by integrated flight systems or by a combination of parameters on electronic displays, provided that the information so available to each required pilot is not less than that required in the applicable operational requirements, and the equivalent safety of the installation has been shown during type certification approval of the aeroplane for the intended type of operation.
2. The means of measuring and indicating turn and slip, aeroplane attitude and stabilised aeroplane heading may be met by combinations of instruments or by integrated flight director systems, provided that the safeguards against total failure, inherent in the three separate instruments, are retained.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.125 Day VFR operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

LOCAL FLIGHTS

For flights that do not exceed 60 minutes' duration, that take off and land at the same aerodrome, and that remain within 50 NM of that aerodrome, an equivalent means of complying with CAT.IDE.A.125 (a)(6)(a) may be either a turn and slip indicator, or a turn coordinator, or both an attitude indicator and a slip indicator.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(1) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING MAGNETIC DIRECTION

The means of measuring and displaying magnetic direction should be a magnetic compass or equivalent.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(2)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(2) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING THE TIME

An acceptable means of compliance is a clock displaying hours, minutes and seconds, with a sweep-second pointer or digital presentation.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125 (a)(3)&CAT.IDE.A.130(b) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE MEANS FOR MEASURING AND DISPLAYING PRESSURE ALTITUDE

The instrument measuring and displaying pressure altitude should be of a sensitive type calibrated in feet (ft), with a sub-scale setting, calibrated in hectopascals/millibars, adjustable for any barometric pressure likely to be set during flight.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(4)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(3) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE INSTRUMENT INDICATING AIRSPEED

The instrument indicating airspeed should be calibrated in knots (kt).

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(5) IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

SLIP INDICATOR

If only slip indication is provided, the means of measuring and displaying standby attitude should be certified according to CS 25.1303(b)(4) or equivalent.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.130(b) IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

ALTIMETERS – IFR OR NIGHT OPERATIONS

Except for unpressurised aeroplanes operating below 10,000 feet, the altimeters of aeroplanes operating under IFR or at night should have counter drum-pointer or equivalent presentation.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.125(b)(1)&CAT.IDE.A.130 (c)(1) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF DISPLAYING OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE

1. The means of displaying outside air temperature should be calibrated in degrees Celsius.

2. The means of displaying outside air temperature may bean air temperature indicator that provides indications that are convertible to outside air temperature.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.125(c)&CAT.IDE.A.130(h) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MULTI-PILOT OPERATIONS - DUPLICATE INSTRUMENTS

Duplicate instruments include separate displays for each pilot and separate selectors or other associated equipment where appropriate.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.125(d)&CAT.IDE.A.130(d) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF PREVENTING MALFUNCTION DUE TO CONDENSATION OR ICING

The means of preventing malfunction due to either condensation or icing of the airspeed indicating system should be a heated pitot tube or equivalent.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.130(e) IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF INDICATING FAILURE OF THE AIRSPEED INDICATING SYSTEM'S MEANS OF PREVENTING MALFUNCTION DUE TO EITHER CONDENSATION OR ICING

A combined means of indicating failure of the airspeed indicating system's means of preventing malfunction due to either condensation or icing is acceptable provided that it is visible from each flight crew station and that there is a means to identify the failed heater in systems with two or more sensors.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.130(i) IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

STANDBY ATTITUDE

Means of measuring and displaying standby attitude should:

1. be powered continuously during normal operation and, in the event of a total failure of the normal electrical generating system, be powered from a source independent of the normal electrical generating system;
2. be capable of being used from either pilot's station;
3. operate independently of other means of measuring and displaying attitude;
4. be operative automatically after total failure of the normal electrical generating system;
5. provide reliable operation for a minimum of 30 minutes after total failure of the normal electrical generating system, taking into account other loads on the emergency power supply and operational procedures;

6. be appropriately illuminated during all phases of operation, except for aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less, already registered in a Member State on 1 April 1995, quipped with a standby attitude indicator in the left-hand instrument panel; and
7. be associated with a means to indicate to the flight crew when operating under its dedicated power supply.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.130(j) IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CHART HOLDER

An acceptable means of compliance with the chart holder requirement is to display a precomposed chart on an electronic flight bag (EFB).

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.125 &CAT.IDE.A.130 Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

GENERAL

Table 1: Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

SERIAL		**FLIGHTS UNDER VFR**		**FLIGHTS UNDER IFR OR AT NIGHT**	
INSTRUMENT		SINGLE PILOT	TWO PILOTS REQUIRED	SINGLE PILOT	TWO PILOTS REQUIRED
(a)		(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
1	Magnetic direction	1	1	1	1
2	Time	1	1	1	1
3	Pressure altitude	1	2	2 Note (5)	2 Note (5)
4	Indicated airspeed	1	2	1	2
5	Vertical speed	1	2	1	2
6	Turn and slip or turn coordinator	1 Note(1)	2 Note(1)& Note(2)	1 Note (4)	2 Note (4)
7	Attitude	1	2	1	2

SERIAL		FLIGHTS UNDER VFR		FLIGHTS UNDER IFR OR AT NIGHT	
		Note(1)	Note(1) & Note(2)		
8	Stabilised direction	1 Note(1)	2 Note(1) & Note(2)	1	2
9	Outside air temperature	1	1	1	1
10	Mach number indicator	See Note(3)			
11	• Airspeed icing protection	1 Note(6)	2 Note(6)	1	2
12	• Airspeed icing protection failure indicating			1 Note (7)	2 Note (7)
13	Static pressure source			2	2
14	Standby attitude indicator			1 Note(6)	1 Note(6)
15	Chart Holder			1 Note (6)	1 Note (6)

Note (1) For local flights (A to A, 50 NM radius, not more than 60 minutes' duration) the instruments at serials (a)(6) and (a)(8) may be replaced by either a turn and slip indicator, or a turn coordinator, or both an attitude indicator and a slip indicator.

Note (2) The substitute instruments permitted by Note (1) above should be provided at each pilot's station.

Note (3) A Mach number indicator is required for each pilot whenever compressibility limitations are not otherwise indicated by airspeed indicators.

Note (4) For IFR or at night, a turn and slip indicator, or a slip indicator and a third (standby) attitude indicator certified according to CS 25.1303(b)(4) or equivalent, is required.

Note (5) Except for unpressurised aeroplanes operating below 10 000 feet, neither three pointers, nor drum pointer altimeters satisfy the requirement.

Note (6) Applicable only to aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg, or with an MPSC of more than nine.

Note (7) The pitot heater failure annunciation applies to any aeroplane issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 April 1998. It also applies before that date when: the aeroplane has an MCTOM of more than 57 000 kg and an MPSC greater than nine.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.150 Terrain awareness warning system (TAWS)

EXCESSIVE DOWNWARDS GLIDE SLOPE DEVIATION WARNING FOR CLASS A TAWS

The requirement for a Class A TAWS to provide a warning to the flight crew for excessive downwards glide slope deviation should apply to all final approach glide slopes with angular vertical navigation (VNAV) guidance, whether provided by the instrument landing system (ILS), microwave landing system (MLS), satellite based augmentation system approach procedure with vertical guidance (SBAS APV (lateral precision with vertical guidance approach LPV)), ground based augmentation system (GBAS (GPS landing system, GLS) or any other systems providing similar guidance. The same requirement should not apply to systems providing vertical guidance based on barometric VNAV.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment

GENERAL

The airborne weather equipment should be an airborne weather radar, except for propeller-driven pressurised aeroplanes with an MCTOM not more than 5 700 kg and an MPSC of not more than nine, for which other equipment capable of detecting thunderstorms and other potentially hazardous weather conditions, regarded as detectable with airborne weather radar equipment are also acceptable.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.170 Flight crew interphone system

TYPE OF FLIGHT CREW INTERPHONE

The flight crew interphone system should not be of a handheld type.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.175 Crew member interphone system

SPECIFICATIONS

The crew member interphone system should:

1. operate independently of the public address system except for handsets, headsets, microphones, selector switches and signalling devices;
2. be readily accessible for use at required cabin crew member stations close to each separate or pair of floor level emergency exits, in the case of aeroplanes required to carry at least one cabin crew member;
3. have an alerting system incorporating aural or visual signals for use by flight and cabin crew, in the case of aeroplanes required to carry at least one cabin crew member;
4. have a means for the recipient of a call to determine whether it is a normal call or an emergency call which uses:
    a. lights of different colours;

   b. codes defined by the operator (e.g. different number of rings for normal and emergency calls); and
   c. any other indicating signal specified in the operations manual;

5. provide two-way communication between:
   a. the flight crew compartment and each passenger compartment, in the case of aeroplanes required to carry at least one cabin crew member;
   b. the flight crew compartment and each galley located other than on a passenger deck level, in the case of aeroplanes required to carry at least one cabin crew member;
   c. the flight crew compartment and each remote crew compartment and crew member station that is not on the passenger deck and is not accessible from a passenger compartment; and
   d. ground personnel and at least two flight crew members. This interphone system for use by the ground personnel should be, where practicable, so located that the personnel using the system may avoid detection from within the aeroplane; and
6. be readily accessible for use from each required flight crew station in the flight crew compartment.

AMC1.CAT.IDE.A.180 Public address system

SPECIFICATIONS

The public address system should:

1. operate independently of the interphone systems except for handsets, headsets, microphones, selector switches and signalling devices;
2. be readily accessible for immediate use from each required flight crew station;
3. have, for each floor level passenger emergency exit which has an adjacent cabin crew seat, a microphone operable by the seated cabin crew member, except that one microphone may serve more than one exit, provided the proximity of exits allows unassisted verbal communication between seated cabin crew members;
4. be operable within 10 seconds by a cabin crew member at each of those stations; and
5. be audible at all passenger seats, toilets, cabin crew seats and work stations.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.185 Cockpit voice recorder

GENERAL

The operational performance requirements for CVRs should be those laid down in European Organisation for Civil Aviation Equipment (EUROCAE) Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

LIST OF PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 2016

1. The FDR should record with reference to a timescale, the list of parameters in Table 1 and Table 2, as applicable.
2. The parameters to be recorded should meet the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and resolution in read-out) as defined in the relevant tables of the EUROCAE Document ED-112, dated March 2003.

Table 1: FDR – All aeroplanes

No.*	Parameter
1a	Time; or
1b	Relative time count
1c	Global navigation satellite system (GNSS) time synchronisation
2	Pressure altitude
3a	Indicated airspeed; or
3b	Calibrated airspeed
4	Heading (primary flight crew reference) - when true or magnetic heading can be selected, the primary heading reference, a discrete indicating selection, should be recorded
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying and CVR/FDR synchronisation reference.
9	Engine thrust/power
9a	Parameters required to determine propulsive thrust/power on each engine
9b	Flight crew compartment thrust/power lever position for aeroplanes with non-mechanically linked flight crew compartment - engine control
14	Total or outside air temperature (OAT)
16	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
17	Lateral acceleration
18	Primary flight control surface and primary flight control pilot input (for multiple or split surfaces, a suitable combination of inputs is acceptable in lieu of recording each surface separately. For

No.*	Parameter
	aeroplanes which have a flight control break-away capability that allows either pilot to operate the controls independently, record both inputs):
18a	pitch axis
18b	roll axis
18c	yaw axis
19	Pitch trim surface position
23	Marker beacon passage
24	Warnings - in addition to the master warning each "red" warning (including smoke warnings from other compartments) should be recorded when the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the CVR
25	Each navigation receiver frequency selection
27	Air - ground status and, if the sensor is installed, each landing gear
38	Selected barometric setting - to be recorded for the aeroplane in which the parameter is displayed electronically
44	Selected flight path (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the aeroplane in which the parameter is displayed electronically
45	Selected decision height - to be recorded for the aeroplane in which the parameter is displayed electronically
75	All flight crew compartment flight control input forces (for fly-by-wire flight control systems, where control surface position is a function of the displacement of the control input device only, it is not necessary to record this parameter):
75a	Control wheel
75b	Control column
75c	Rudder pedal flight crew compartment input forces

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE ED-112.

Table 2: FDR - Aeroplanes for which the information data source for the parameter is either used by aeroplane systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the aeroplane

No.*	Parameter
10	Flaps: Trailing edge flap position and flight crew compartment control selection
11	Slats: Leading edge flap (slat) position and flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse status
13 13a 13b 13c 13d	Ground spoiler and speed brake Ground spoiler position Ground spoiler selection Speed brake position Speed brake selection
15	Autopilot/autothrottle/automatic flight control system (AFCS) mode and engagement status
20	Radio altitude. For autoland/Category III operations, each radio altimeter should be recorded. It is acceptable to arrange them so that at least one is recorded every second.
21 21a 21b 21c	Vertical deviation - the approach aid in use should be recorded. For autoland/Category III operations, each system should be recorded. It is acceptable to arrange them so that at least one is recorded every second). ILS/GPS/GLS glide path MLS elevation GNSS approach path/IRNAV vertical deviation
22 22a 22b 22c	Horizontal deviation - the approach aid in use should be recorded. For auto land/Category III operations, each system should be recorded. It is acceptable to arrange them so that at least one is recorded every second). ILS/GPS/GLS localiser MLS azimuth GNSS approach path/IRNAV lateral deviation
26 26a 26b	Distance measuring equipment (DME) 1 and 2 distances Distance to runway threshold (GLS) Distance to missed approach Point (IRNAV/IAN)

No.*	Parameter
28	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)/terrain awareness warning system (TAWS)/ ground collision avoidance system (GCAS) status:
28a	Selection of terrain display mode, including pop-up display status
28b	Terrain alerts, including cautions and warnings and advisories
28c	On/off switch position
29	Angle of attack
30	Low pressure warning (each system):
30a	Hydraulic pressure
30b	Pneumatic pressure
31	Ground speed
32	Landing gear:
32a	Landing gear
32b	Gear selector position
33	Navigation data:
33a	Drift angle
33b	Wind speed
33c	Wind direction
33d	Latitude
33e	Longitude
33f	GNSS augmentation in use
34	Brakes:
34a	Left and right brake pressure
34b	Left and right brake pedal position
35	Additional engine parameters (if not already recorded in parameter 9 of Table 1 of AMC1-CAT.IDE.190.A and if the aeroplane is equipped with a suitable data source):
35a	Engine pressure ratio (EPR)
35b	N_1
35c	Indicated vibration level
35d	N_2
35e	Exhaust gas temperature (EGT)
35f	Fuel flow
35g	Fuel cut-off lever position

No.*	Parameter
35h	N_3
36	traffic alert and collision avoidance system (TCAS)/ airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) a suitable combination of discretes should be recorded to determine the status of the system:
36a	Combined control
36b	Vertical control
36c	Up advisory
36d	Down advisory
36e	Sensitivity level
37	Wind shear warning
38	Selected barometric setting
38a	Pilot selected barometric setting
38b	Co-pilot selected barometric setting
39	Selected altitude (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
40	Selected speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
41	Selected Mach (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
42	Selected vertical speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
43	Selected heading (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
44a	Course/desired track (DSTRK)
44b	Path angle
44c	Coordinates of final approach path (IRNAV/IAN)
46	Electronic flight instrument system (EFIS) display format:
46a	Pilot
46b	Co-pilot
47	Multi-function/engine/alerts display format
48	Alternating current (AC) electrical bus status - each bus
49	Direct current (DC) electrical bus status - each bus

No.*	Parameter
50	Engine bleed valve position
51	Auxiliary power unit (APU) bleed valve position
52	Computer failure - critical flight and engine control system
53	Engine thrust command
54	Engine thrust target
55	Computed centre of gravity (CG)
56	Fuel quantity or fuel quantity in CG trim tank
57	Head up display in use
58	Para visual display on
59	Operational stall protection, stick shaker and pusher activation
60 60a 60b 60c 60d 60e 60f	Primary navigation system reference: GNSS Inertial Navigational System (INS) VHF omnidirectional radio range (VOR) /distance measuring equipment (DME) MLS Loran C ILS
61	Ice detection
62	Engine warning - each engine vibration
63	Engine warning - each engine over temperature
64	Engine warning - each engine oil pressure low
65	Engine warning - each engine over speed
66	Yaw trim surface position
67	Roll trim surface position
68	Yaw or sideslip angle
69	De-icing and/or anti-icing systems selection
70	Hydraulic pressure - each system

No.*	Parameter
71	Loss of cabin pressure *
72	Flight crew compartment trim control input position pitch - when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, cockpit display trim positions or trim command should be recorded
73	Flight crew compartment trim control input position roll - when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, flight crew compartment display trim positions or trim command should be recorded
74	Flight crew compartment trim control input position yaw - when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, flight crew compartment display trim positions or trim command should be recorded
76	Event marker
77	Date
78	Actual navigation performance (ANP) or estimate of position error (EPE) or estimate of position uncertainty (EPU)

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE ED-112.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

LIST OF PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 APRIL 1998 AND BEFORE 1 JANUARY 2016

1. The FDR should record, with reference to a timescale:
   a. the parameters listed in Table 1a of AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.190 or Table 1b of AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.190 below, as applicable;
   b. the additional parameters listed in Table 2 below, for those aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 27 000 kg;
   c. any dedicated parameters relating to novel or unique design or operational characteristics of the aeroplane as determined by the competent authority; and
   d. the additional parameters listed in Table 3 below, for those aeroplanes equipped with electronic display systems.
2. When determined by the competent authority, the FDR of aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A before 20 August 2002 and equipped with an electronic display system does not need to record those parameters listed in Table 3 of AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.190 below for which:
   a. the sensor is not available;
   b. the aeroplane system or equipment generating the data needs to be modified; or
   c. the signals are incompatible with the recording system;

3. The FDR of aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 April 1998 but not later than 1 April 2001, is not required to comply with 1. above if:

   a. compliance with 1. cannot be achieved without extensive modification to the aeroplane system and equipment other than the flight recording system; and

   b. the FDR of the aeroplane can comply with AMC3-CAT.IDE.A.190 except that parameter 14 in Table 1 of AMC3-CAT.IDE.A.190 need not be recorded.

5. The parameters to be recorded should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (ranges, sampling intervals, accuracy limits, and resolution in read-out) defined in Table 1 of AMC3-CAT.IDE.A.190

6. For aeroplanes with novel or unique design or operational characteristics, the additional parameters should be those required in accordance with applicable Certification Specifications during type or supplemental certification or validation.

7. If recording capacity is available, as many as possible of the additional parameters specified in table II-A.1 of EUROCAE Document ED 112 dated March 2003 should be recorded.

Table 1a: FDR – Aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg

No.	**Parameter**
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying
9	Propulsive thrust/ power on each engine and flight crew compartment thrust/power lever position if applicable
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse status
13	Ground spoiler position and/or speed brake selection

No.	Parameter
14	Total or outside air temperature
15	Autopilot, autothrottle and AFCS mode and engagement status
16	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
17	Lateral acceleration

Table 1b: FDR – Aeroplanes with an MCTOM 5 700 kg or below

No.	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying
9	Propulsive thrust/ power on each engine and flight crew compartment thrust/power lever position if applicable
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse status
13	Ground spoiler position and/or speed brake selection
14	Total or outside air temperature
15	Autopilot/autothrottle engagement status
16	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
17	Angle of attack (if a suitable sensor is available)

Table 2: FDR – Additional parameters for aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 27 000 kg

No.	Parameter
18	Primary flight controls - control surface position and/or pilot input (pitch, roll, yaw)
19	Pitch trim position
20	Radio altitude
21	Vertical beam deviation (ILS glide path or MLS elevation)
22	Horizontal beam deviation (ILS localiser or MLS azimuth)
23	Marker beacon passage
24	Warnings
25	Reserved (Navigation receiver frequency selection is recommended)
26	Reserved (DME distance is recommended)
27	Landing gear squat switch status or air/ground status
28	Ground proximity warning system
29	Angle of attack
30	Low pressure warning (hydraulic and pneumatic power)
31	Groundspeed
32	Landing gear or gear selector position

Table 3: FDR – Aeroplanes equipped with electronic display systems

No.	Parameter
33	Selected barometric setting (Each pilot station)
34	Selected altitude
35	Selected speed
36	Selected mach
37	Selected vertical speed
38	Selected heading
39	Selected flight path

No.	Parameter
40	Selected decision height
41	EFIS display format
42	Multi function /Engine / Alerts display format

AMC3-CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 APRIL 1998 AND BEFORE 1 JANUARY 2016

Table 1: FDR

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
1a or 1b	Time Relative Time Count	24 hours 0 to 4 095	4 4	± 0.125 % per hour ± 0.125 % per hour	1 second	(a) UTC time preferred where available. (b) Counter increments every 4 seconds of system operation.
2	Pressure altitude	-1 000 ft to maximum certificated altitude of aircraft +5 000 ft	1	±100 ft to ±700 ft Refer to Table II-A.3 of EUROCAE Document ED-112	5 ft	Should be obtained from air data computer when installed.
3	Indicated airspeed	50 kt or minimum value installed pitot static system to Max V_{SO} Max V_{SO} to 1•2 V_d	1	±5 % ±3 %	1 kt (0.5 kt recommended)	Should be obtained from air data computer when installed. VSO: stalling speed or minimum steady flight speed in the landing configuration V_D design diving speed
4	Heading	360º	1	±2º	0.5º	
5	Normal acceleration	-3 g to +6 g	0.125	1 % of range excluding a datum error of 5 %	0.004 g	The recording resolution may be rounded from 0.004 g to 0.01 g provided that one sample is recorded at full resolution at least every 4 seconds.
6	Pitch attitude	±75º	0.25	±2º	0.5º	
7	Roll attitude	±180º	0.5	±2º	0.5º	

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
8	Manual radio transmission keying	Discrete	1	-	-	Preferably each crew member but one discrete acceptable for all transmissions provided that the replay of a recording made by any required recorder can be synchronised in time with any other required recording to within 1 second.
9a	Propulsive thrust / power on each engine	Full range	Each engine each second	±2 %	0.2 % of full range	Sufficient parameters e.g. EPR/N, or Torque/N_P as appropriate to the particular engine must be recorded to determine power in both normal and reverse thrust. A margin for possible overspeed should be provided.
9b	Flight crew compartment thrust / power lever position	Full range	Each lever each second	±2 % or sufficient to determine any gated position	2 % of full range	Parameter 9b must be recorded for aeroplanes with non-mechanically linked cockpit-engine controls, otherwise recommended.
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection	Full range or each discrete position	2	±3° or as pilot's indicator and sufficient to determine each discrete position	0.5 % of full range	Flap position and cockpit control may be sampled at 4 seconds intervals so as to give a data point each 2 seconds.
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew	Full range or each discrete position	1	±3° or as pilot's indicator and sufficient to determine each discrete position	0.5 % of full range	Left and right sides, or flap position and cockpit control may be sampled at 2 seconds intervals so as to give a data point each

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
	compartment control selection					second.
12	Thrust reverser status	Turbo-jet: stowed, in transit and reverse Turbo-prop: reverse	Each reverser each second	-	-	Turbo-jet: 2 discretes enable the 3 states to be determined Turbo-prop: 1 discrete
13	Ground spoiler and/or speed brake selection	Full range or each discrete position	0.5	±2º unless higher accuracy uniquely required	0.2 % of full range	Sufficient to determine use of the cockpit selector and the activation and positions of the surfaces
14	Outside air temperatures or total air temperature	-50°C to +90°C or available sensor range	2	±2ºC	0.3ºC	
15	Autopilot/ Autothrottle / AFCS mode and engagement status	A suitable combination of discretes	1	-	-	Discretes should show which systems are engaged and which primary modes are controlling the flight path and speed of the aircraft.
16	Longitudinal acceleration	± 1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of maximum range excluding a datum	0.004 g	The recording resolution may be rounded from 0.004 g to 0.01 g provided that one

No.	**Parameter**	**Range**	**Sampling interval in seconds**	**Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)**	**Recommended resolution in readout**	**Remarks**
	(Body axis)			error of ±5 %		sample is recorded at full resolution at least every 4 seconds.
17	Lateral acceleration	±1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of maximum range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	The recording resolution may be rounded from 0.004 g to 0.01 g provided that one sample is recorded at full resolution at least every 4 seconds.
18	Primary flight controls, control surface positions and/or* pilot input	Full range	1	±2º unless higher accuracy uniquely required	0.2 % of full range	*For aeroplanes that can demonstrate the capability of deriving either the control input or control movement (one from the other) for all modes of operation and flight regimes, the "or" applies. For aeroplanes with non-mechanical control systems the "and" applies. Where the input controls for each pilot can be operated independently, both inputs will need to be recorded. For multiple or split surfaces, a suitable combination of inputs is acceptable in lieu of recording each surface separately.
18a	Pitch axis		0.25			
18b	Roll axis		0.25			
18c	Yaw axis		0.5			
19	Pitch trim position	Full range	1	±3 % unless higher accuracy uniquely required	0.3 % of full range	Where dual surfaces are provided it is permissible to record each surface alternately.
20	Radio altitude	-20 ft to +2 500 ft	1	As installed ±2 ft or ±3 % whichever is greater below 500 ft and ±5 % above 500 ft recommended.	1 ft below 500 ft, 1 ft +0.5 % of full range above	For autoland/category III operations, each radio altimeter should be recorded, but arranged so that at least one is recorded each second.

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
					500 ft	
21	Vertical beam deviation		1	As installed ±3 % recommended	0.3 % of full range	Data from both the ILS and MLS systems need not to be recorded at the same time. The approach aid in use should be recorded. For autoland/ category III operations, each radio altimeter should be recorded, but arranged so that at least one is recorded each second.
21a	ILS glide path	±0.22 DDM or available sensor range as installed				
21b	MLS elevation	0.9° to 30°				
22	Horizontal beam deviation	Signal range	1	As installed ±3 % recommended	0.3 % of full range	See parameter 21 remarks.
22a	ILS Localizer	±0.22 DDM or available sensor range as installed				
22b	MLS Azimuth	±62°				
23	Marker beacon passage	Discrete	1	–	–	A single discrete is acceptable for all markers.
24	Warnings	Discretes	1	–	–	A discrete must be recorded for the master warning. Each "red" warning (including lavatory smoke) should be recorded when the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the cockpit voice

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
						recorder.
25	Reserved	–	–	–	–	
26	Reserved	–	–	–	–	
27	Landing gear squat switch status	Discrete(s)	1 (0.25 recommended for main gears)	–	–	Discretes should be recorded for the nose and main landing gears.
28	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)	Discrete	1	–	–	A suitable combination of discretes unless recorder capacity is limited in which case a single discrete for all modes is acceptable.
29	Angle of attack	As installed	0.5	As installed	0.3 % of full range	If left and right sensors are available, each may be recorded at 1 second intervals so as to give a data point each half second.
30a 30b	Hydraulic power Pneumatic power					
31	Groundspeed	As installed	1	Data should be obtained from the most accurate	1 kt	Additional recommended parameters are

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
				system		given in table II-A.1 of EUROCAE Document ED-112
30 30a 30b	Low pressure warning Hydraulic power Pneumatic power	Discrete(s) or available sensor range	2	–	0.5 % of full range	Each essential system to be recorded
31	Groundspeed	As installed	1	Data should be obtained from the most accurate system	1 kt	Additional recommended parameters are given in table II-A.1 of EUROCAE Document ED-112
32	Landing gear or gear selector position	Discrete(s)	4	-	–	A suitable combination of discretes should be recorded.
33	Selected barometric setting (each pilot station)	As installed	64	As installed	1 mb	Where practicable, a sampling interval of 4 seconds is recommended
33a	Pilot					

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
33b	Co-pilot					
34	Selected altitude	As installed	1	As installed	100 ft	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
34a	Manual					
34b	Automatic					
35	Selected speed	As installed	1	As installed	1 kt	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
35a	Manual					
35b	Automatic					
36	Selected Mach	As installed	1	As installed	0.01	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
36a	Manual					
36b	Automatic					
37	Selected vertical speed	As installed	1	As installed	100 ft/min	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
37a	Manual					
37b	Automatic					

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
38	Selected heading	360 degrees	1	As installed	1 degree	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
39	Selected flight path		1	As installed		Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
39a	Course/DSTRK	360 degrees				
39b	Path Angle	As installed				
40	Selected decision height	0-500 ft	64	As installed	1 ft	
41	EFIS display format	Discrete(s)	4	–	–	Discretes should show the display system status e.g. off, normal, fail, composite, sector, plan, rose, nav aids, wxr, range, copy.
41a	Pilot					
41b	Co-pilot					
42	Multifunction / Engine / Alerts display format	Discrete(s)	4	–	–	Discretes should show the display system status e.g. off, normal, fail, and the identity of display pages for emergency procedures and checklists. Information in checklists and procedures need not be recorded.

AMC4-CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

LIST OF PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 JUNE 1990 UP TO AND INCLUDING 31 MARCH 1998

1. The FDR should, with reference to a timescale, record:
   a. the parameters listed in Table 1 below; and
   b. the additional parameters listed in Table 2 below for those aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 27 000 kg.
2. When determined by the Agency, the FDR of aeroplanes having an MCTOM of 27 000 kg or below does not need to record parameters 14 and 15b of Table 1 below if any of the following conditions are met:
   a. the sensor is not readily available;
   b. sufficient capacity is not available in the flight recorder system; or
   c. a change is required in the equipment that generates the data.
3. When determined by the Agency, the FDR of aeroplanes having an MCTOM exceeding 27 000 kg does not need to record parameter 15b of Table 1 below, and parameters 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30 and 31 of Table 2 of AMC4-CAT.IDE.A.190 below, if any of the following conditions are met:
   a. the sensor is not readily available;
   b. sufficient capacity is not available in the FDR system;
   c. a change is required in the equipment that generates the data; or
   d. for navigational data (NAV frequency selection, DME distance, latitude, longitude, ground speed and drift) the signals are not available in digital form; and
4. When determined by the Agency, the FDR does not need to record individual parameters that can be derived by calculation from the other recorded parameters.
5. The parameters to be recorded should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits, and resolution in read-out) defined in Table 1 of AMC5-CAT.IDE.A.190.

Table 1: Flight data recorder – Aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg

No	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed
4	Heading

No	Parameter
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying unless an alternate means to synchronise FDR and CVR recordings is provided
9	Power on each engine
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse position (for turbojet aeroplanes only)
13	Ground spoiler position and/or speed brake selection
14	Outside air temperature or total air temperature
15a	Autopilot engagement status
15b	Autopilot operating modes, autothrottle and AFCS systems engagement status and operating modes.

Table 2: - Flight data recorder - Additional parameters for aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 27 000 kg

No	Parameter
16	Longitudinal acceleration
17	Lateral acceleration
18	Primary flight controls - control surface position and/or pilot input (pitch, roll and yaw)
19	Pitch trim position
20	Radio altitude
21	Glide path deviation
22	Localiser deviation
23	Marker beacon passage
24	Master warning
25	NAV 1 and NAV 2 frequency selection

No	Parameter
26	DME 1 and DME 2 distance
27	Landing gear squat switch status
28	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)
29	Angle of attack
30	Hydraulics, each system (low pressure)
31	Navigation data
32	Landing gear or gear selector position

AMC5-CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 JUNE 1990 UP TO AND INCLUDING 31 MARCH 1998

Table 1: - Flight data recorder

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
1	Time or relative time count	24 hours	4	±0.125 % per hour	1 second	Co-ordinated universal time (UTC) preferred where available, otherwise elapsed time
2	Pressure altitude	-1 000 ft to maximum certificated altitude of aircraft +5 000 ft	1	±100 ft to ±700 ft	5 ft	For altitude record error see EASA ETSO-C124a
3	Indicated airspeed	50 kt to max V_{SO} Max V_{SO} to 1.2 V_d	1	±5 % ±3 %	1 kt	VSO stalling speed or minimum steady flight speed in the landing configuration $V_D$design diving speed
4	Heading	360º	1	±2º	0.5º	
5	Normal acceleration	-3 g to +6 g	0.125 ±	0.125 ±1 % of maximum range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	
6	Pitch attitude	±75º	1	±2º	0.5º	
7	Roll attitude	±180º	1	±2º	0.5º	

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
8	Manual radio transmission keying	Discrete	1	-	-	On-off (one discrete). An FDR/CVR time synchronisation signal complying with 4.2.1 of EUROCAE ED-55 is considered to be an acceptable alternative means of compliance
9	Power on each engine	Full range	Each engine each second	±2 %	0.2 % of full range	Sufficient parameters e.g. EPR/N, or Torque/N_P as appropriate to the particular engine should be recorded to determine power
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection	Full range or each discrete position	2	±5 % or as pilot's indicator	0.5 % of full range	
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection	Full range or each discrete position	2	-	0.5 % of full range	
12	Thrust reverser position	Stowed, in transit and reverse	Each reverser each second	±2 % unless higher accuracy uniquely required	-	
13	Ground spoiler and/or speed brake selection	Full range or each discrete position	1	±2º	0.2 % of full range	
14	Outside air temperatures or total	Sensor range	2	-	0.3º	

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
	air temperature					
15a 15b	Autopilot engagement status Autopilot operating modes, auto-throttle and AFCS systems engagement status and operating modes	A suitable combination of discretes	1		-	
16	Longitudinal acceleration	± 1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of maximum range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	
17	Lateral acceleration	±1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of maximum range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	
18	Primary flight controls, control surface positions and/or pilot input (pitch, roll, yaw)	Full range	1	±2º unless higher accuracy uniquely required	0.2 % of full range	For aeroplanes with conventional control systems 'or' applies For aeroplanes with non-mechanical control systems 'and' applies For aeroplanes with split surfaces a suitable combination of inputs is acceptable in lieu of recording each surface separately
19	Pitch trim position	Full range	1	±3 % unless higher accuracy uniquely required	0.3 % of full range	

No.	**Parameter**	**Range**	**Sampling interval in seconds**	**Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)**	**Recommended resolution in readout**	**Remarks**
20	Radio altitude	-20 ft to +2 500 ft	1	±2 ft or ±3 % whichever is greater below 500 ft and ±5 % above 500 ft	1 ft below 500 ft, 1 ft +5 % of full range above 500 ft	As installed. Accuracy limits are recommended
21	Glide path deviation	Signal range	1	±3 %	0.3 % of full range	As installed. Accuracy limits are recommended
22	Localiser deviation	Signal range	1	±3 %	0.3 % of full range	As installed. Accuracy limits are recommended
23	Marker beacon passage	Discrete	1	–	–	A single discrete is acceptable for all markers
24	Master warning	Discrete	1	–	–	
25	NAV 1 and 2 frequency selection	Full range	4	As installed	–	
26	DME 1 and 2 distance	0-200 NM	4	As installed	–	Recording of latitude and longitude from INS or other navigation system is a preferred alternative
27	Landing gear squat switch status	Discrete	1	–	–	
28	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)	Discrete	1	–	–	

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
29	Angle of attack	Full range	0•5	As installed	0.3 % of full range	
30	Hydraulics	Discrete(s)	2	–	–	
31	Navigation data	As installed	1	As installed	–	
32	Landing gear or gear selector position	Discrete	4	As installed	–	

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE ED-112.

AMC6-CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

LIST OF PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A BEFORE 1 JUNE 1990

1. The FDR should, with reference to a timescale, record:
   a. the parameters listed in Table 1 below;
   b. the additional parameters 6 to 15b of Table 2 below, for aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 5 700 kg but not exceeding 27 000 kg and first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 January 1989, when the following conditions are met:
      i. sufficient capacity is available on a flight recorder system;
      ii. the sensor is readily available; and
      iii. a change is not required in the equipment that generates the data.
   c. the additional parameters from 6 to 15b of Table 2 below, for aeroplanes with a maximum certificated take-off mass exceeding 27 000 kg that are of a type first type certificated after 30 September 1969;
   d. the additional parameters listed in Table 2 of AMC6-CAT.IDE.A.190 below for aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 27 000 kg and first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 January 1987, when the following conditions are met:
      i. sufficient capacity is available on a flight recorder system;
      ii. the sensor is readily available; and
      iii. a change is not required in the equipment that generates the data.
2. When determined by the Agency, the FDR of aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 27 000 kg that are of a type first type certificated after 30 September 1969 does not need to record the parameters 13, 14 and 15b in Table 2 below, when any of the following conditions are met:
   a. sufficient capacity is not available on a flight recorder system;
   b. the sensor is not readily available; and
   c. a change is required in the equipment that generates the data.
3. The parameters to be recorded should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits, and resolution in read-out) defined in Table 1 ofAMC5-CAT.IDE.A.190).
4. When so determined by the Agency, the FDR does not need to record individual parameters that can be derived by calculation from the other recorded parameters.

Table 1: Flight data recorder - Aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 5 700 kg

No.	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count

No.	Parameter
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated Airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal Acceleration

The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE ED-112.

Table 2: Additional parameters for aeroplanes under conditions of AMC6-CAT.IDE.A.190, 1 &2

No	Parameter
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying unless an alternate means to synchronise the FDR and CVR recordings is provided
9	Power on each engine
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse position (for turbojet aeroplanes only)
13	Ground spoiler position and/or speed brake selection
14	Outside air temperature (OAT) or total air temperature
15a 15b	Autopilot engagement status Autopilot operating modes, autothrottle and AFCS, systems engagement status and operating modes.
16	Longitudinal acceleration
17	Lateral acceleration
18	Primary flight controls – Control surface position and/or pilot input (pitch, roll and yaw)
19	Pitch trim position
20	Radio altitude
21	Glide path deviation

No	Parameter
22	Localiser deviation
23	Marker beacon passage
24	Master warning
25	NAV 1 and NAV 2 frequency selection
26	DME 1 and DME 2 distance
27	Landing gear squat switch status
28	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)
29	Angle of attack
30	Hydraulics, each system (low pressure)
31	Navigation data (latitude, longitude, ground speed and drift angle)
32	Landing gear or gear selector position

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE ED-112.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.195 Data link recording

GENERAL

1. The aeroplane should be capable of recording the messages as specified in this AMC.
2 As a means of compliance with CAT.IDE.A.195(a), the recorder may be:
   a. the CVR;
   b. the FDR;
   c. a combination recorder when CAT.IDE.A.200 is applicable; or
   d. a dedicated flight recorder.
3. As a means of compliance with CAT.IDE.A.195 (a)(2), the operator should enable correlation by providing information that allows an accident investigator to understand what data were provided to the aeroplane and, when the provider identification is contained in the message, by which provider.
4. The timing information associated with the data link communications messages required to be recorded by CAT.IDE.A.195 (a)(3) should be capable of being determined from the airborne-based recordings. This timing information should include at least the following:
   a. the time each message was generated;
   b. the time any message was available to be displayed by the crew;

c. the time each message was actually displayed or recalled from a queue; and

d. the time of each status change.

5. The message priority should be recorded when it is defined by the protocol of the data link communication message being recorded.

6. The expression 'taking into account the system architecture', in CAT.IDE.A.195(a)(3), means that the recording of the specified information may be omitted if the existing source systems involved would require a major upgrade. The following should be considered:

   a. the extent of the modification required;

   b. the down-time period; and

   c. equipment software development.

7. The intention is that new designs of source systems should include this functionality and support the full recording of the required information.

8. Data link communications messages that support the applications in Table 1 below should be recorded.

9. Further details on the recording requirements can be found in the recording requirement matrix in Appendix D.2 of EUROCAE Document ED-93 (Minimum Aviation System Performance Specification for CNS/ATM Recorder Systems, dated November 1998)

Table 1: Data link recording

Item No.	**Application Type**	**Application Description**	**Required Recording Content**
1	Data link initiation	This includes any application used to log on to, or initiate, a data link service. In future air navigation system (FANS)-1/A and air traffic navigation (ATN), these are ATS facilities notification (AFN) and context management (CM), respectively.	C
2	Controller/pilot communication	This includes any application used to exchange requests, clearances, instructions and reports between the flight crew and air traffic controllers. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the Controller pilot data link communications (CPDLC) application. CPDLC includes the exchange of Oceanic Clearances (OCLs) and Departure Clearances (DCLs), .	C
3	Addressed surveillance	This includes any surveillance application in which the ground sets up contracts for delivery of surveillance data. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the automatic dependent surveillance-contract (ADS-C) application,.	C, F2

Item No.	Application Type	Application Description	Required Recording Content
4	Flight information	This includes any application used for delivery of flight information data to specific aeroplanes. This includes for example Data Link-Automatic Terminal Information Service (D-ATIS), Data Link-Operational Terminal Information Service (D-OTIS), digital weather information services (D-METAR or TWIP), data link flight information service (D-FIS), Data Link-Flight Information System (D-FIS) and Notice to Airmen (electronic NOTAM) delivery.	C
5	Aircraft Broadcast surveillance	This includes elementary and enhanced surveillance systems, as well as Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast (ADS-B) output data.	M*, F2
6	AOC data	This includes any application transmitting or receiving data used for AOC purposes (in accordance with the ICAO definition of AOC). Such systems may also process AAC messages, but there is no requirement to record AAC messages	M*
7	Graphics	This includes any application receiving graphical data to be used for operational purposes (i.e. excluding applications that are receiving such things as updates to manuals).	M* F1

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.195 Data link recording

GENERAL

1. The letters and expressions in Table 1 of AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.195 have the following meaning:

   C: complete contents recorded

   M: information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.

   *: Applications that are to be recorded only as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system.

   F1: graphics applications may be considered as AOC messages when they are part of a data link communications application service run on an individual basis by the operator itself in the framework of the operational control.

   F2: where parametric data sent by the aeroplane, such as Mode S, is reported within the message, it should be recorded unless data from the same source is recorded on the FDR.

2. The definitions of the applications type in Table 1 of AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.195 are described in Table 1 below.

Table 1: Definitions of applications type

Item No.	Application Type	Messages	Comments
1	CM		CM is an ATN service
2	AFN		AFN is a FANS 1/A service
3	CPDLC		All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
4	ADS-C	ADS-C reports	All contract requests and reports recorded
		Position reports	Only used within FANS 1/A. Only used in oceanic and remote areas.
5	ADS-B	Surveillance data	Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.
6	D-FIS		D-FIS is an ATN service. All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
7	TWIP	TWIP messages	Terminal weather information for pilots
8	D-ATIS	ATIS messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-89A dated December 2003. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for the "ATIS" Data Link Service
9	OCL	OCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-106A dated March 2004. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for "Oceanic Clearance" Datalink Service
10	DCL	DCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-85A dated December 2003. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for "Departure Clearance" Data-link Service
11	Graphics	Weather maps & other graphics	Graphics exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part-OR. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.
12	AOC	Aeronautical operational control messages	Messages exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part-OR. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane. Definition in ED-112.
13	Surveillance	Downlinked Aircraft Parameters (DAP)	As defined in ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV (Surveillance systems and ACAS).

AAC	Aeronautical Administrative Communications
ADS-B	Automatic Dependent Surveillance - Broadcast
ADS-C	Automatic Dependent Surveillance – Contract
AFN	Aircraft Flight Notification
AOC	Aeronautical Operational Control
ATIS	Automatic Terminal Information Service
ATSC	Air Traffic Service Communication
CAP	Controller Access Parameters
CPDLC	Controller Pilot Data Link Communications
CM	Configuration/Context Management
D-ATIS	Data link ATIS
D-FIS	Data link Flight Information Service
D-METAR	Data link meteorological airport report
DCL	Departure Clearance
FANS	Future Air Navigation System
FLIPCY	Flight Plan Consistency
OCL	Oceanic Clearance
SAP	System Access Parameters
TWIP	Terminal Weather Information for Pilots

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.200 Combination recorder

GENERAL

1. A flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder is a flight recorder that records:
   a. all voice communications and aural environment required by CAT.IDE.A.185 regarding CVRs; and
   b. all parameters required by CAT.IDE.A.190 regarding FDRs, with the same specifications required by those paragraphs.

   In addition a flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder may record data link communication messages and related information required by CAT.IDE.A.195.
2. When two flight data and cockpit voice combination recorders are installed, one should be located near the flight crew compartment, in order to minimise the risk of data loss due to a failure of the wiring that gathers data to the recorder. The other should be located at the rear section of the aeroplane, in order to minimise the risk of data loss due to recorder damage in the case of a crash.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, harnesses and child restraint devices

CHILD RESTRAINT DEVICES (CRD)

1. A CRD is considered to be acceptable if:
   a. it is a 'supplementary loop belt' manufactured with the same techniques and the same materials of the approved safety belts; or
   b. it complies with paragraph 2 below.
2. Provided the CRD can be installed properly on the respective aircraft seat, the following CRDs are considered acceptable:
   a. CRDs approved for use in aircraft by the competent authority on the basis of a technical standard and marked accordingly;
   b. CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles according to the UN standard ECE R 44, -03 or later series of amendments;
   c. CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to Canadian CMVSS 213/213.1;
   d. CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to US FMVSS No 213 and manufactured to these standards on or after February 26, 1985. US approved CRDs manufactured after this date must bear the following labels in red letters:
      i. "THIS CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS" and
      ii. "THIS RESTRAINT IS CERTIFIED FOR USE IN MOTOR VEHICLES AND AIRCRAFT",
   e. CRDs qualified for use in aircraft according to the German "Qualification Procedure for Child Restraint Systems for Use in Aircraft" (TÜV Doc.: TÜV/958-01/2001); and
   f. devices approved for use in cars, manufactured and tested to standards equivalent to those listed above. The device must be marked with an associated qualification sign, which shows the name of the qualification organisation and a specific identification number, related to the associated qualification project. The qualifying organisation should be a competent and independent organisation that is acceptable to the competent authority.
3. Location
   a. Forward facing CRDs may be installed on both forward and rearward facing passenger seats but only when fitted in the same direction as the passenger seat on which they are positioned. Rearward facing CRDs can only be installed on forward facing passenger seats. A CRD may not be installed within the radius of action of an airbag, unless it is obvious that the airbag is de-activated or it can be demonstrated that there is no negative impact from the airbag.
   b. An infant in a CRD should be located as near to a floor level exit as feasible.
   c. An infant in a CRD should not hinder evacuation for any passenger.

d. An infant in a CRD should neither be located in the row (where rows are existing) leading to an emergency exit nor located in a row immediately forward or aft of an emergency exit. A window passenger seat is the preferred location. An aisle passenger seat or a cross aisle passenger seat that forms part of the evacuation route to exits is not recommended. Other locations may be acceptable provided the access of neighbour passengers to the nearest aisle is not obstructed by the CRD.

e. For complex motor-powered aircraft involved in commercial air transport operations, in general, only one CRD per row segment is recommended. More than one CRD per row segment is allowed if the infants/children are from the same family or travelling group provided the infants/children are accompanied by a responsible adult sitting next to them.

f. A row segment is the fraction of a row separated by two aisles or by one aisle and the aircraft fuselage.

4. Installation

a. CRDs should only be installed on a suitable aeroplane seat with the type of connecting device they are approved or qualified for. E.g., CRDs to be connected by a three point harness only (most rearward facing baby CRDs currently available) should not be attached to an aeroplane seat with a lap belt only; a CRD designed to be attached to a vehicle seat only by means of rigid bar lower anchorages (ISO-FIX or US equivalent), should only be used on aeroplane seats that are equipped with such connecting devices and should not be attached by the aeroplane seat lap belt. The method of connecting should be the one shown in the manufacturer's instructions provided with each CRD.

b. All safety and installation instructions should be followed carefully by the responsible adult accompanying the infant/child. Cabin crew should prohibit the use of any inadequately installed CRD or not qualified seat.

c. If a forward facing CRD with a rigid backrest is to be fastened by a lap belt, the restraint device should be fastened when the backrest of the passenger seat on which it rests is in a reclined position. Thereafter, the backrest is to be positioned upright. This procedure ensures better tightening of the CRD on the aircraft seat if the aircraft seat is reclinable.

d. The buckle of the adult safety belt must be easily accessible for both opening and closing, and must be in line with the seat belt halves (not canted) after tightening.

e. Forward facing restraint devices with an integral harness must not be installed such that the adult safety belt is secured over the infant/child.

5. Operation

a. Each CRD should remain secured to a passenger seat during all phases of flight, unless it is properly stowed when not in use.

b. Where a CRD is adjustable in recline it must be in an upright position for all occasions when passenger restraint devices are required.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, harnesses and child restraint devices

SAFETY HARNESS

1. A safety harness having five anchorage points is deemed to be compliant with the requirement for safety harness with four anchorage points,
2. A safety belt with diagonal shoulder strap (three anchorage points) is deemed to be compliant with safety belt (two anchorage points).

AMC3-CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, harnesses and child restraint devices

CABIN CREW SEATS

Seats for the minimum required cabin crew members should be located near required floor level emergency exits close to the emergency exits and where cabin crew members can best assist passengers in the event of an emergency evacuation. Such seats should be forward or rearward facing within 15° of the longitudinal axis of the aeroplane.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.215 Internal doors and curtains

PLACARDS' INDICATION

Placards on each internal door, or next to a curtain that is the means of access to a passenger emergency exit, should indicate that it should be secured open during take off and landing.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.220 First-aid kit

CONTENT OF FIRST_AID KIT

1. First-aid kits (FAKs) should be equipped with appropriate and sufficient medications and instrumentation. However, these kits may be amended by the operator according to the characteristics of the operation (scope of operation, flight duration, number and demographics of passengers etc.).
2. The following should be included in the first-aid kit:
    a. Equipment
        i. bandages (assorted sizes);
        ii. burns dressings (unspecified);
        iii. wound dressings (large and small);
        iv. adhesive dressings (assorted sizes);
        v. adhesive tape;
        vi. adhesive wound closures;
        vii. safety pins;
        viii. scissors;
        ix. antiseptic wound cleaner;

x. disposable resuscitation aid;

xi. disposable gloves;

xii. tweezers: splinter; and

xiii thermometers (non mercury).

b. Medications

i. simple analgesic (may include liquid form);

ii. antiemetic;

iii. nasal decongestant;

iv. gastrointestinal antacid, in the case of aeroplanes carrying more than nine passengers;

v. anti-diarrhoeal medication, in the case of aeroplanes carrying more than nine passengers; and

vi. antihistamine.

c. Other

i. a list of contents in at least two languages (English and one other). This should include information on the effects and side effects of medications carried;

ii. first-aid handbook, current edition;

iii. medical incident report form;

iv. biohazard disposal bags; and

v. ground/air visual signal code for use by survivors.

d. An eye irrigator, whilst not required to be carried in the first-aid kit, should, where possible, be available for use on the ground.

e. For security reasons, items such as scissors and scalpels should be stored securely.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.220 First-aid kit

MAINTENANCE OF FIRST AID KITS

To be maintained, first aid kits should be:

1. inspected periodically to confirm, to the extent possible, that contents are maintained in the condition necessary for their intended use; and

2. replenished at regular intervals, in accordance with instructions contained on their labels, or as circumstances warrant.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit

CONTENT OF EMERGENCY MEDICAL KIT

1. Emergency medical kits should be equipped with appropriate and sufficient medications and instrumentation. However, these kits should be adapted by the

operator according to the characteristics of the operation (scope of operation, flight duration, number and demographics of passengers etc.).

2. The following should be included in the emergency medical kit:

   a. Equipment

      i. sphygmomanometer – non mercury;

      ii. stethoscope;

      iii. syringes and needles;

      iv. IV cannulae (if IV fluids are carried in the FAK a sufficient supply of IV cannulae should be stored there as well);

      v. Oropharyngeal airways (three sizes);

      vi. tourniquet;

      vii. disposable gloves;

      viii. needle disposal box;

      ix. one or more urinary catheter(s), appropriate for either sex, and anaesthetic gel.;

      x. basic delivery kit;

      xi. bag-valve masks (masks two sizes: one for adults, one for children);

      xii. thermometer - non-mercury;

      xiii. forceps;

      xiv. intubation set;

      xv. aspirator;

      xvi. blood glucose testing equipment; and

      xvii. scalpel.

   b. Instructions: the instructions should contain a list of contents (medications in trade names and generic names) in at least two languages. This should include information on the effects and side effects of medications carried. There should also be basic instructions for use of the medications in the kit and ACLS Cards (summarising and depicting the current algorithm for advanced cardiac life support).

   c. Medications

      i. coronary vasodilator e.g. Glyceriltrinitrate-oral;

      ii. antispasmodic iii. Epinephrine/Adrenaline 1:1 000 (if a cardiac monitor is available);

      iv. adrenocorticoid - "injectable";

      v. major analgesic;

      vi. diuretic injectable;

      vii. antihistamine, oral and injectable form;

      viii. sedative/anticonvulsant, injectable rectal and oral forms of sedative;

ix. medication for hypoglycaemia e.g. hypertonic glucose;

x. antiemetic;

xi. atropine injectable;

xii. bronchial dilator – injectable or inhaled form;

xiii. IV fluids, in appropriate quantity e.g. Sodiumchloride 0.9 % (minimum 250 ml);

xiv. acetylsalicyl Acid (Aspirine) 300 mg in oral and / or injectable form;

xv. antiarrythmic - if a monitoring device is carried;

xvi. antihypertensive medication;

xvii. beta-blocker – oral.

* Epinephrine/Adrenaline 1:10 000 can be a dilution of epinephrine 1:1 000

d. The carriage of automatedexternaldefibrillatorsshould be determined by operators on the basis of a riskassessmenttakinginto account the particularneeds of the operation.

e. The automated external defibrillator should be carried on the aircraft however, not necessarily in the emergency medical kit.

f. For security reasons, items such as scissors should be stored securely.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit

CARRYING UNDER SECURITY CONDITIONS

Where possible the emergency medical kit should be carried on the flight crew compartment.

AMC3-CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit

ACCESS TO EMERGENCY MEDICAL KIT

1. The commander should limit access to the emergency medical kit, taking into account the actual situation on board.
2. Drugs should be administered by medical doctors, qualified nurses, paramedics or emergency medical technicians.
3. Medical Students, student paramedics, student emergency medical technicians or nurses aids should only administer drugs if no person mentioned in 2. is on board the flight and appropriate advice has been received.
4. Oral drugs should not be denied in medical emergency situations where no medically qualified persons are on board the flight.

AMC4-CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit

MAINTENANCE OF EMERGENCY MEDICAL KIT

In order to maintain the emergency medical kit the operator should ensure that the emergency medical kits are:

1. inspected periodically to confirm, to the extent possible, that the contents are maintained in the condition necessary for their intended use; and
2. replenished at regular intervals, in accordance with instructions contained on their labels, or as circumstances warrant.

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.230 First aid oxygen

GENERAL

1. First aid oxygen is intended for those passengers who, having been provided with the oxygen required under CAT.IDE.A.235 or CAT.IDE.A.240, still need to breath undiluted oxygen when the amount of oxygen has been exhausted.
2. When calculating the amount of first-aid oxygen, the operator should take into account the fact that, following a cabin depressurisation, supplemental oxygen as calculated in accordance with Table 1 of CAT.IDE.A.235 and Table 2 of CAT.IDE.A.240 should be sufficient to cope with potential effects of hypoxia for:
   a. all passengers when the cabin altitude is above 15 000 ft; and
   b. a proportion of the passengers carried when the cabin altitude is between 10 000 ft and 15 000 ft.
3. For the above reasons, the amount of first-aid oxygen should be calculated for the part of the flight after cabin depressurisation during which the cabin altitude is between 8 000 ft and 15 000 ft, when supplemental oxygen may no longer be available.
4. Moreover, following cabin depressurisation an emergency descent should be carried out to the lowest altitude compatible with the safety of the flight. In addition, in these circumstances, the aeroplane should land at the first available aerodrome at the earliest opportunity.
5. The conditions above may reduce the period of time during which the first-aid oxygen may be required and consequently may limit the amount of first-aid oxygen to be carried on board.
6. Means may be provided to decrease the flow to not less than two litres per minute, STPD, at any altitude.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.235 Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes

GENERAL

1. In the determination of the amount of oxygen required for the routes to be flown, it is assumed that the aeroplane will descend in accordance with the emergency procedures specified in the operations manual, without exceeding its operating limitations, to a flight altitude that will allow the flight to be completed safely (i.e. flight altitudes ensuring adequate terrain clearance, navigational accuracy, hazardous weather avoidance etc.).
2. The amount of oxygen should be determined on the basis of cabin pressure altitude, flight duration and, for pressurised aeroplanes, on the assumption that a cabin pressurisation failure will occur at the pressure altitude or point of flight that is most critical from the standpoint of oxygen need.

3. Following a cabin pressurisation failure, the cabin pressure altitude should be considered to be the same as the aeroplane pressure altitude, unless it can be demonstrated to the competent authority that no probable failure of the cabin or pressurisation system will result in a cabin pressure altitude equal to the aeroplane pressure altitude. Under these circumstances, the demonstrated maximum cabin pressure altitude may be used as a basis for determination of oxygen supply.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.235 Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes

OXYGEN REQUIREMENTS FOR FLIGHT CREW COMPARTMENT SEAT OCCUPANTS AND CABIN CREW CARRIED IN ADDITION TO THE REQUIRED MINIMUM NUMBER OF CABIN CREW

1. For the purpose of oxygen supply, flight crew compartment seat occupants who are:
   a. supplied with oxygen from the flight crew source of oxygen, should be considered as flight crew members; and
   b. not supplied with oxygen by the flight crew source of oxygen, should be considered as passengers.
2. Cabin crew members carried in addition to the minimum number of cabin crew and additional crew members should be considered as passengers for the purpose of oxygen supply.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.235(e) Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes

AEROPLANES NOT CERTIFICATED TO FLY ABOVE 25 000 FT

(1) With respect to CAT.IDE.A.235 (e) the maximum altitude up to which an aeroplane can operate without a passenger oxygen system being installed and capable of providing oxygen to each cabin occupant, should be established using an emergency descent profile which takes into account the following conditions:

  (a) 17 seconds' time delay for pilot's recognition and reaction, including mask donning, for trouble shooting and configuring the aeroplane for the emergency descent (emergency descent data/charts established by the aeroplane manufacturer and published in the aircraft flight manual (AFM), and/or the AFM should be used to ensure uniform application of the option); and

  (b) maximum operational speed (V_{MO}) or the airspeed approved in the AFM for emergency descent, (emergency descent data/charts established by the aeroplane manufacturer and published in the AFM, and/or AFM should be used to ensure uniform application of the option), whichever is the less;

(2) On routes where the oxygen is necessary to be carried for 10 % of the passengers for the flight time between 10 000 ft and 13 000 ft, the oxygen may be provided by:

  (a) a plug-in or drop-out oxygen system with sufficient outlets and dispensing units uniformly distributed throughout the cabin so as to provide oxygen to each passenger at his/her own discretion when seated on his/her assigned seat; or

(b) portable bottles, when a cabin crew member is carried on board such flight.

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.235 Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes

QUICK DONNING MASKS

A quick donning mask is a type of mask that:

1. can be placed on the face from its ready position, properly secured, sealed and supplying oxygen upon demand, with one hand and within five seconds and will thereafter remain in position, both hands being free;
2. can be donned without disturbing eye glasses and without delaying the flight crew member from proceeding with assigned emergency duties;
3. once donned, does not prevent immediate communication between the flight crew members and other crew members over the aircraft intercommunication system; and
4. does not inhibit radio communications.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.240 Supplemental oxygen non-pressurised aeroplanes

AMOUNT OF SUPPLEMENTAL OXYGEN

The amount of supplemental oxygen for sustenance for a particular operation should be determined on the basis of flight altitudes and flight duration, consistent with the operating procedures, including emergency procedures, established for each operation and the routes to be flown, as specified in the Operations Manual.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.245 Crew protective breathing equipment

PROTECTIVE BREATHING EQUIPMENT (PBE)

The supply for PBE for the flight crew members may be provided by the supplemental oxygen required in CAT.IDE.A.235 or CAT.IDE.A.240.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.250 Hand fire extinguishers

NUMBER, LOCATION AND TYPE

1. The number and location of hand fire extinguishers should be such as to provide adequate availability for use, account being taken of the number and size of the passenger compartments, the need to minimise the hazard of toxic gas concentrations and the location of toilets, galleys etc.. These considerations may result in the number of fire extinguishers being greater than the minimum prescribed.
2. There should be at least one hand fire extinguisher installed in the flight crew compartment and this should be suitable for fighting both flammable fluid and electrical equipment fires. Additional hand fire extinguishers may be required for the protection of other compartments accessible to the crew in flight. Dry chemical fire extinguishers should not be used in the flight crew compartment, or in any compartment not separated by a partition from the flight crew compartment,

because of the adverse effect on vision during discharge and, if conductive, interference with electrical contacts by the chemical residues.

3. Where only one hand fire extinguisher is required in the passenger compartments it should be located near the cabin crew member’s station, where provided.
4. Where two or more hand fire extinguishers are required in the passenger compartments and their location is not otherwise dictated by consideration of CAT.IDE.A.250 (b), an extinguisher should be located near each end of the cabin with the remainder distributed throughout the cabin as evenly as is practicable.
5. Unless an extinguisher is clearly visible, its location should be indicated by a placard or sign. Appropriate symbols may also be used to supplement such a placard or sign.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.255 Crash axes and crowbars

STORAGE OF CRASH AXES AND CROWBARS

Crash axes and crowbars located in the passenger compartment should be stored in a position not visible to passengers.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.260 Marking of break-in points

COLOUR AND CORNERS’ MARKING

1. The colour of the markings should be red or yellow and, if necessary, should be outlined in white to contrast with the background.
2. If the corner markings are more than 2 m apart, intermediate lines 9 cm x 3 cm should be inserted so that there is no more than 2 m between adjacent markings.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.270 Megaphones

LOCATION OF MEGAPHONES

1. Where one megaphone is required, it should be readily accessible at the assigned seat of a cabin crew member or crew members other than flight crew.
2. Where two or more megaphones are required, they should be suitably distributed in the passenger compartment(s) and readily accessible to crew members assigned to direct emergency evacuations.
3. This does not necessarily require megaphones to be positioned such that they can be physically reached by a crew member when strapped in a cabin crew member’s seat.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

ELT BATTERIES

Batteries used in the ELTs should be replaced (or recharged, if the battery is rechargeable) when the equipment has been in use for more than 1 cumulative hour, and also when 50 % of their useful life (or for rechargeable, 50 % of their useful life of charge), as established by the equipment manufacturer has expired. The new expiry date for the replacement (or recharged) battery should be legibly marked on the outside of the equipment. The battery useful life (or useful life of charge) requirements of this paragraph do not apply to batteries (such as water-activated batteries) that are essentially unaffected during probable storage intervals.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

TYPES OF ELT AND GENERAL TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

1. The ELT required by this provision should be one of the following:
   a. Automatic fixed (ELT(AF)). An automatically activated ELT that is permanently attached to an aeroplane and is designed to aid search and rescue (SAR) teams in locating the crash site;
   b. Automatic portable (ELT(AP)). An automatically activated ELT, that is rigidly attached to an aeroplane before a crash, but is readily removable from the aeroplane after a crash. It functions as an ELT during the crash sequence. If the ELT(AP) does not employ an integral antenna, the aeroplane-mounted antenna may be disconnected and an auxiliary antenna (stored on the ELT case) attached to the ELT. The ELT can be tethered to a survivor or a life raft. This type of ELT is intended to aid SAR teams in locating the crash site or survivor(s);
   c. Automatic deployable (ELT(AD))an ELT that is rigidly attached to the aeroplane before the crash and that is automatically ejected, deployed and activated by an impact, and, in some cases, also by hydrostatic sensors. Manual deployment is also provided. This type of ELT should float in water and is intended to aid SAR teams in locating the crash site; or
   d. Survival ELT (ELT(S)). An ELT that is removable from an aeroplane, stowed so as to facilitate its ready use in an emergency, and manually activated by a survivor. An ELT(S) may be activated manually or automatically (e.g. by water activation). It should be designed to be tethered to a life raft or a survivor.
2. To minimize the possibility of damage in the event of crash impact, the automatic ELT should be rigidly fixed to the aeroplane structure, as far aft as is practicable, with its antenna and connections arranged so as to maximize the probability of the signal being transmitted after a crash.
3. Any ELT carried should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of ICAO Annex 10, Volume III communications systems and should be registered with the national agency responsible for initiating search and rescue or other nominated agency.

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

TERMINOLOGY

An ELT is a generic term describing equipment which broadcasts distinctive signals on designated frequencies and, depending on application, may be activated by impact or may be manually activated.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.285 Flight over water

LIFE –RAFTS AND EQUIPMENT FOR MAKING DISTRESS SIGNALS

1. The following should be readily available with each life-raft:
    a. means for maintaining buoyancy;
    b. a sea anchor:
    c. life-lines and means of attaching one life-raft to another;
    d. paddles for life-rafts with a capacity of sixor less;
    e. means of protecting the occupants from the elements;
    f. a water-resistant torch;
    g. signalling equipment to make the pyrotechnic distress signals described in ICAO Annex 2;
    h. 100 g of glucose tablets for each four, or fraction of four, persons which the life-raft is designed to carry:
    i. at least two litres of drinkable water provided in durable containers or means of making sea water drinkable or a combination of both; and
    j. first-aid equipment.
2. As far as practicable, items listed in 1. should be contained in a pack.

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.285 Flight over water

SEAT CUSHIONS

Seat cushions are not considered to be flotation devices.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment

ADDITIONAL SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT

1. The following additional survival equipment should be carried when required:
    a. two litres of drinkable water for each 50, or fraction of 50, persons on board provided in durable containers;
    b. one knife;
    c. first-aid equipment; and
    d. one set of air/ground codes;
2. In addition, when polar conditions are expected, the following should be carried:
    a. a means for melting snow;
    b. one snow shovel and one ice saw;
    c. sleeping bags for use by 1/3 of all persons on board and space blankets for the remainder or space blankets for all passengers on board; and
    d. one Arctic/Polar suit for each crew member carried.

3. If any item of equipment contained in the above list is already carried on board the aeroplane in accordance with another requirement, there is no need for this to be duplicated.

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment

SIGNALLING EQUIPMENT

The signalling equipment for making distress signals is described in ICAO Annex 2, Rules of the Air

GM2-CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment

AREAS IN WHICH SEARCH AND RESCUE WOULD BE ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT

The expression 'areas in which search and rescue would be especially difficult' should be interpreted, in this context, as meaning:

1. areas so designated by the authority responsible for managing search and rescue; or
2. areas that are largely uninhabited and where:
    a. the authority referred to in 1. has not published any information to confirm whether search and rescue would be or would not be especially difficult; and
    b. the authority referred to in 1. does not, as a matter of policy, designate areas as being especially difficult for search and rescue.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.325 Headset

GENERAL

1. A headset consists of a communication device that includes two earphones to receive and a microphone to transmit audio signals to the aeroplane's communication system. To comply with the minimum performance requirements, the earphones and microphone should match the communication system's characteristics and the flight crew compartment environment. The headset should be sufficiently adjustable to fit the pilot's head. Headset boom microphones should be of the noise cancelling type.
2. If the intention is to utilise noise cancelling earphones, the operator should ensure that the earphones do not attenuate any aural warnings or sounds necessary for alerting the flight crew on matters related to the safe operation of the aeroplane.

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.325 Headset

GENERAL

The term 'headset' includes any aviation helmet incorporating headphones and microphone worn by a flight crew member.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR, or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

TWO INDEPENDENT MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

Whenever two independent means of communication are required, each system should have an independent antenna installation, except where rigidly supported non-wire antennae or other antenna installations of equivalent reliability are used.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR, or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

ACCEPTABLE NUMBER AND TYPE OF COMMUNICATION AND NAVIGATION EQUIPMENT

1. An acceptable number and type of communication and navigation equipment is:
   a. one VHF omnidirectional radio range (VOR) receiving system, one automatic direction finder (ADF) system, one distance measuring equipment (DME), except that an ADF system need not be installed provided that the use of ADF is not required in any phase of the planned flight;
   b. one instrument landing system (ILS) or microwave landing system (MLS) where ILS or MLS is required for approach navigation purposes;
   c. one marker beacon receiving system where a Marker Beacon is required for approach navigation purposes;
   d. area navigation equipment when area navigation is required for the route being flown (e.g. equipment required by Part SPA);
   e. an additional DME system on any route, or part thereof, where navigation is based only on DME signals;
   f. an additional VOR receiving system on any route, or part thereof, where navigation is based only on VOR signals; and
   g. an additional ADF system on any route, or part thereof, where navigation is based only on non directional beacon (NDB) signals.
2. Aeroplanes may be operated without the navigation equipment specified in 1.e. and 1 f. provided they are equipped with alternative equipment. The reliability and the accuracy of alternative equipment should allow safe navigation for the intended route.
3. The operator should ensure that aeroplanes conducting extended range twin-engine operations (ETOPS) have a communication means capable of communicating with an appropriate ground station at normal and planned contingency altitudes. For ETOPS routes where voice communication facilities are available, voice communications shall be provided. For all ETOPS operations beyond 180 minutes, reliable communication technology, either voice-based or data link, should be installed. Where voice communication facilities are not available and where voice communication is not possible or is of poor quality, communications using alternative systems should be ensured.

4. To perform IFR operations without an ADF system installed, the operator should consider the following guidelines on equipment carriage, operational procedures and training criteria.

   a. ADF equipment may only be removed from or not installed in an aeroplane intended to be used for IFR operations when it is not essential for navigation, and provided that alternative equipment giving equivalent or enhanced navigation capability is carried. This may be accomplished by the carriage of an additional VOR receiver or a GNSS receiver approved for IFR operations.

   b. For IFR operations without ADF, the operator should ensure that:

      i. route segments that rely solely on ADF for navigation are not flown;

      ii. ADF/NDB procedures are not flown;

      iii. the minimum equipment list (MEL) has been amended to take account of the non-carriage of ADF;

      iv. the operations Manual does not refer to any procedures based on NDB signals for the aeroplanes concerned; and

      v. flight planning and dispatch procedures are consistent with the above mentioned criteria.

   c. The removal of ADF should be taken into account by the operator in the initial and recurrent training of flight crew.

5. VHF communication equipment, ILS localiser and VOR receivers installed on aeroplanes to be operated in IFR should comply with the following FM immunity performance standards:

   a. ICAO Annex 10, Volume I - Radio Navigation Aids, and Volume III, Part II - Voice Communications Systems; and

   b. acceptable equipment standards contained in EUROCAE Minimum Operational Performance Specifications, documents ED-22B for VOR receivers, ED-23B for VHF communication receivers and ED-46B for LOC receivers and the corresponding Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics (RTCA) documents DO-186, DO-195 and DO-196.

AMC3-CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR, or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

FAILURE OF A SINGLE UNIT

Required communication and navigation equipment should be installed such that the failure of any single unit required for either communication or navigation purposes, or both, will not result in the failure of another unit required for communications or navigation purposes.

AMC4-CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR, or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

HF - EQUIPMENT ON CERTAIN MNPS ROUTES

1. An HF - system is considered to be long range communication equipment.
2. Other two-way communication systems may be used if allowed by the relevant airspace procedures.
3. In the sense of this paragraph, the term 'short haul operations' is considered operations not crossing the North Atlantic.
4. When using one communication system only, the competent authority may restrict the minimum navigation performance specifications (MNPS) approval to the use of the specific routes.

GM1-CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR, or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

APPLICABLE AIRSPACE REQUIREMENTS

For aeroplanes being operated under European air traffic control, the applicable airspace requirements include the Single European Sky legislation.

AMC1–CAT.IDE.A.350 Transponder

SSR TRANSPONDER

1. The secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponder of aeroplane being operated under European air traffic control should comply with any applicable Single European Sky legislation.
2. If the Single European Sky legislation is not applicable, the SSR transponder should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of Volume IV of ICAO Annex 10.
3. Additional SSR transponder capabilities may be required by the applicable airspace requirements.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.355 Electronic navigation data management

NAVIGATION DATA PRODUCTS NEEDED FOR OPERATIONS IN ACCORDANCE WITH PART-SPA

1. When the operator of a complex motor-powered aeroplane uses a navigation database which supports an airborne navigation application as a primary means of navigation, the navigation database supplier should hold a Type 2 letter of acceptance (LoA), or equivalent.
2. If this airborne navigation application is needed for an operation requiring a specific approval in accordance with OPS.SPA, the operator's procedures should be based upon the Type 2 LoA acceptance process.

3. A Type 2 LoA is issued by the Agency in accordance with the Agency's Opinion Nr. 01/2005 on The Acceptance of Navigation Database Suppliers (hereinafter referred to as the Agency's Opinion Nr. 01/2005). The definitions of navigation database, navigation database supplier, data application integrator, Type 1 LoA and Type 2 LoA can be found in the Agency's Opinion Nr. 01/2005.

4. Equivalent to a Type 2 LoA is the FAA Type 2 LoA, issued in accordance with the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) Advisory Circular AC 20-153, and the Transport Canada Civil Aviation (TCCA) 'Acknowledgement Letter of an Aeronautical Data Process' which uses the same basis.

5. EUROCAE ED-76/Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics (RTCA) DO-200A Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data contains guidance relating to the processes which the supplier may follow.

Section 2 - Helicopters

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.100(a) Instruments and equipment – General

APPROVED EQUIPMENT

The equipment approval in CAT.IDE.H.100 means that the equipment should have an authorisation (e.g. European technical standards order (ETSO) authorisation) or an approval in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003.

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.100(c) Instruments and equipment – General

INSTRUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT THAT DO NOT NEED TO BE APPROVED IN ACCORDANCE WITH REGULATION (EC) NO 1702/2003, BUT ARE CARRIED ON A FLIGHT

1. The provision of this paragraph does not exempt the item of equipment from complying with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 if the instrument or equipment is installed in the helicopter. In this case, the installation should be approved as required in Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 and should comply with the applicable airworthiness codes as required under that Regulation.
2. The functionality of non-installed instruments and equipment required by this Part that do not need an equipment approval should be checked against recognised industry standards appropriated for the intended purpose. The operator is responsible for ensuring the maintenance of these instruments and equipment.
3. The failure of additional non-installed instruments or equipment not required by this Part or the airworthiness codes as required under Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 or any applicable airspace requirements should not adversely affect the airworthiness and/or the safe operation of the aircraft. Examples are the following:
   a. instruments supplying additional flight information (e.g. stand-alone Global Positioning System (GPS));
   b. mission dedicated equipment (e.g. radios); and
   c. non-installed passenger entertainment equipment.

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.100(e) Instruments and equipment - General

POSITIONING OF INSTRUMENTS

This requirement implies that whenever a single instrument is required in a helicopter operated in a multi-crew environment, the instrument needs to be visible from each flight crew station.

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.110 Spare electrical fuses

FUSES

A spare electrical fuse means a replaceable fuse in the flight crew compartment, not an automatic circuit breaker, or circuit breakers in the electric compartments.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.115 Operating lights

LANDING LIGHT

The landing light should be trainable, at least in the vertical plane.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.125&CAT.IDE.H.130 Day VFR operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment and

INTEGRATED INSTRUMENTS

1. Individual equipment requirements may be met by combinations of instruments or by integrated flight systems or by a combination of parameters on electronic displays, provided that the information so available to each required pilot is not less than the required in the applicable operational requirements, and the equivalent safety of the installation has been shown during type certification approval of the aircraft for the intended type of operation.
2. The means of measuring and indicating slip, helicopter attitude and stabilised helicopter heading may be met by combinations of instruments or by integrated flight director systems, provided that the safeguards against total failure, inherent in the three separate instruments, are retained.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(1) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING MAGNETIC DIRECTION

The means of measuring and displaying magnetic direction should be a magnetic compass or equivalent.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(2)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(2) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS FOR MEASURING AND DISPLAYING THE TIME

An acceptable means of compliance is a clock displaying hours, minutes and seconds, with a sweep-second pointer or digital presentation.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(3)&CAT.IDE.H.130(b) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE MEANS FOR MEASURING AND DISPLAYING PRESSURE ALTITUDE

The instrument measuring and displaying pressure altitude should be of a sensitive type calibrated in feet (ft), with a sub-scale setting, calibrated in hectopascals/millibars, adjustable for any barometric pressure likely to be set during flight.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(4)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(3) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE INSTRUMENT INDICATING AIRSPEED

The instrument indicating airspeed should be calibrated in knots (kt).

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.125(b)(1)&CAT.IDE.H.130(c)(1) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE

1. The means of displaying outside air temperature should be calibrated in degrees Celsius.
2. The means of displaying outside air temperature may be an air temperature indicator that provides indications that are convertible to outside air temperature.
3. Multi-pilot operations – duplicate instruments.

Duplicate instruments should include separate displays for each pilot and separate selectors or other associated equipment where appropriate.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.125(d)(2)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(7) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING DIRECTION

Direction should be measured and displayed for visual flight rules VFR flights by a stabilised gyroscopic direction indicator, for instrument flight rules IFR flights, this should be achieved through a magnetic stabilised gyroscopic direction indicator.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.125(e)&CAT.IDE.H.130(d) Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF PREVENTING MALFUNCTION DUE TO CONDENSATION OR ICING

The means of preventing malfunction due to either condensation or icing of the airspeed indicating system should be a heated pitot tube or equivalent.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.130(e) IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF INDICATING FAILURE OF THE MEANS OF PREVENTING MALFUNCTION DUE TO EITHER CONDENSATION OR ICING OF THE AIRSPEED INDICATING SYSTEM

A combined means of indicating failure of the means of preventing malfunction due to either condensation or icing of the airspeed indicating system is acceptable provided that is visible from each flight crew station and that there it is a means to identify the failed heater in systems with two or more sensors.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.130(f) IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

STANDBY ATTITUDE INDICATOR

The means of measuring and displaying standby attitude should:

1. be powered continuously during normal operation and, in the event of a total failure of the normal electrical generating system, be powered from a source independent of the normal electrical generating system;
2. be capable of being used from either pilot’s station;
3. operate independently of other means of measuring and displaying attitude;
4. be operative automatically after total failure of the normal electrical generating system;
5. provide reliable operation for a minimum of 30 minutes or the time required to fly to a suitable alternate landing site, when operating over hostile terrain, or offshore, whichever is greater, after total failure of the normal electrical generating system, taking into account other loads on the emergency power supply and operational procedures;
6. be appropriately illuminated during all phases of operation; and
7. be associated with a means to indicate to the flight crew when operating under its dedicated power supply.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.130(i) IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CHART HOLDER

An acceptable means of compliance with the chart holder requirement is to display a pre-composed chart on an electronic flight bag (EFB).

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.125&CAT.IDE.H.130 Day VFR operations and IFR or night operations – Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

GENERAL

Table 1: –Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

SERIAL		**FLIGHTS UNDER VFR**		**FLIGHTS UNDER IFR OR AT NIGHT**	
INSTRUMENT		SINGLE PILOT	TWO PILOTS REQUIRED	SINGLE PILOT	TWO PILOTS REQUIRED
(a)		(b)	(c)	(e)	(f)
1	Magnetic direction	1	1	1	1
2	time	1	1	1	1
3	Pressure altitude	1	2	2 Note (1)	2
4	Indicated Airspeed	1	2	1	2
5	Vertical speed	1	2	1	2
6	Slip	1	2	1	2
7	Attitude	1 Note (2)	2 Note(2)	1	2
8	Stabilised direction	1 Note (2)	2 Note(2)	1	2
9	Outside air temperature	1	1	1	1
10	Airspeed icing protection	1 Note (3)	2 Note (3)	1	2
11	Airspeed icing protection failure indicating			1 Note (4)	2 Note (4)
12	Static pressure source			2	2
13	Standby attitude			1 Note (5)	1 Note (5)

SERIAL		FLIGHTS UNDER VFR		FLIGHTS UNDER IFR OR AT NIGHT	
14	Chart Holder			1 Note (6)	1 Note (6)

Note(1) For single pilot night operation under VFR, one means of measuring and displaying pressure altitude may be substituted by a means of measuring and displaying radio altitude.

Note (2) Applicable only to helicopters with a maximum certified take-off mass of more than 3 175 kg; or helicopters operated over water when out of sight of land or when the visibility is less than 1 500 m.

Note(3) Applicable only to helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg, or with an MPSC of more than 9.

Note(4) The pitot heater failure annunciation applies to any helicopter issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 August 1999. It also applies before that date when: the helicopter has a MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg and an MPSC of more than nine.

Note (5) For helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg, CS-29 1303(g) may require either a gyroscopic rate-of-turn indicator combined with a slip-skid indicator (turn and bank indicator) or a standby attitude indicator satisfying the requirements. In any case, the original type certification standard should be referred to determine the exact requirement.

Note (6) Applicable only to helicopters operating under IFR.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.145 Radio altimeters

AUDIO VOICE ALERTING DEVICE

The audio warning required in CAT.IDE.H.145 should be a voice warning.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment

GENERAL

The airborne weather detecting equipment should be an airborne weather radar.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.170 Flight crew interphone system

TYPE OF FLIGHT CREW INTERPHONE

The flight crew interphone system should not be of a handheld type.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.175 Crew member interphone system

CHARACTERISTICS SPECIFICATIONS

The crew member interphone system should:

1. operate independently of the public address system except for handsets, headsets, microphones, selector switches and signalling devices;
2. be readily accessible for use at required cabin crew stations close to each separate or pair of floor level emergency exits;

3. have an alerting system incorporating aural or visual signals for use by flight and cabin crew;
4. have a means for the recipient of a call to determine whether it is a normal call or an emergency call which uses:
   a. lights of different colours;
   b. codes defined by the operator (e.g. different number of rings for normal and emergency calls);
   c. any other indicating signal in the operations manual;
5. provide a means of two-way communication between the flight crew compartment and each crew member station; and
6. be readily accessible for use from each required flight crew stations in the flight crew compartment.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.A.180 Public address system

SPECIFICATIONS

The public address system should:

1. operate independently of the interphone systems except for handsets, headsets, microphones, selector switches and signalling devices;
2. be readily accessible for immediate use from each required from each required flight crew station;
3. have, for each floor level passenger emergency exit which has an adjacent cabin crew seat, a microphone operable by the seated cabin crew member, except that one microphone may serve more than one exit, provided the proximity of exits allows unassisted verbal communication between seated cabin crew members;
4. be operable within 10 seconds by a cabin crew member at each of those stations;
5. be audible at all passenger seats, toilets, cabin crew seats and work stations; and
6. following a total failure of the normal electrical generating system, provide reliable operation for a minimum of 10 minutes.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.185 Cockpit voice recorder

GENERAL

The operational performance requirements for cockpit voice recorders CVRs should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder

LIST OF PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 3 175 KG AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 2016

1. The flight data recorder (FDR) should, with reference to a timescale, record:

a. the parameters listed in Table 1 below;

b. the additional parameters listed in Table 2 below, when the information data source for the parameter is used by helicopter systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the helicopter; and

c. any dedicated parameters related to novel or unique design or operational characteristics of the helicopter as determined by the Agency.

2. The FDR parameters should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and minimum in read-out) defined in the operational performance requirements and specifications of EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003.

3. FDR systems for which some recorded parameters do not meet the performance specifications of EUROCAE Document ED-112 could be acceptable to the Agency.

Table 1: FDR – All helicopters

No.*	**Parameter**
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying CVR/FDR synchronisation reference
9 9a 9b 9c 9d 9e	Power on each engine Free power turbine speed (N_F) Engine torque Engine gas generator speed (N_G) Cockpit power control position Other parameters to enable engine power to be determined
10a 10b	Main rotor speed Rotor brake (if installed)
11 11a	Primary flight controls – Pilot input and/or control output position (if applicable) Collective pitch

No.*	Parameter
11b	Longitudinal cyclic pitch
11c	Lateral cyclic pitch
11d	Tail rotor pedal
11e	Controllable stabilator (if applicable)
11f	Hydraulic selection
12	Hydraulics low pressure (each system should be recorded.)
13	Outside air temperature
18	Yaw rate or yaw acceleration
20	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
21	Lateral acceleration
25	Marker beacon passage
26	Warnings - a discrete should be recorded for the master warning, gearbox low oil pressure and sas failure. other 'red' warnings should be recorded where the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the cockpit voice recorder.
27	Each navigation receiver frequency selection
37	Engine control modes

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial numbers depicted in EUROCAE ED-112

Table 2: Helicopters for which the information data source for the parameter is either used by helicopter systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the helicopter

No.*	Parameter
14	AFCS mode and engagement status
15	Stability augmentation system engagement (each system should be recorded)
16	Main gear box oil pressure
17	Gear box oil temperature
17a	Main gear box oil temperature
17b	Intermediate gear box oil temperature
17c	Tail rotor gear box oil temperature
19	Indicated sling load force (if signals readily available)

No.[*]	**Parameter**
22	Radio altitude
23	Vertical deviation - the approach aid in use should be recorded.
23a	ILS glide path
23b	MLS elevation
23c	GNSS approach path
24	Horizontal deviation - the approach aid in use should be recorded.
24a	ILS localiser
24b	MLS azimuth
24c	GNSS approach path
28	DME 1 & 2 distances
29	Navigation data
29a	Drift angle
29b	Wind speed
29c	Wind direction
29d	Latitude
29e	Longitude
29f	Ground speed
30	Landing gear or gear selector position
31	Engine exhaust gas temperature (T_4)
32	Turbine Inlet Temperature (TIT/ITT)
33	Fuel contents
34	Altitude rate (vertical speed) - only necessary when available from cockpit instruments
35	Ice detection
36	Helicopter Health and Usage Monitor System (HUMS) - only when information from the HUMS is used by the crew or aircraft system
36a	Engine data
36b	Chip detector
36c	Track timing
36d	Exceedance discretes
36e	Broadband average engine vibration

No.*	Parameter
38	Selected barometric setting - to be recorded for helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
38a	Pilot
38b	Co-pilot
39	Selected altitude (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
40	Selected speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
41	Selected Mach (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
42	Selected vertical speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
43	Selected heading (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
44	Selected flight path (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
45	Selected decision height (all pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
46	EFIS display format
47	Multi-function/engine/alerts display format
48	event marker

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial numbers depicted in EUROCAE ED-112

AMC2-CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder

LIST OF PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 3 175 KG AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 AUGUST 1999 AND BEFORE 1 JANUARY 2016 AND HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 7 000 KG OR AN MPSC OF MORE THAN NINE AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 1989 AND BEFORE 1 AUGUST 1999

1. The FDR should, with reference to a timescale, record:
   a. for helicopters with an MCTOM between 3 175 kg and 7 000 kg the parameters listed in Table 1 below;
   b. for helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg the parameters listed in Table 2 below;

c. for helicopters equipped with electronic display systems, the additional parameters listed in Table 3 below, and

d. any dedicated parameters relating to novel or unique design or operational characteristics of the helicopter.

2. When determined by the Agency, the FDR of helicopters with a maximum certified take-off mass of more than 7 000 kg does not need to record parameter 19 of Table 2 below, if any of the following conditions are met:

   a. the sensor is not available; or

   b. a change is required in the equipment that generates the data.

3. Individual parameters that can be derived by calculation from the other recorded parameters, need not to be recorded, if agreed by the competent authority.

4. The parameters should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and resolution in read-out) defined in AMC3-CAT.IDE.H.190.

5. If recording capacity is available, as many of the additional parameters as possible specified in table II-A.2 of EUROCAE Document ED 112 dated March 2003 should be recorded.

6. For the purpose of this AMC a sensor is considered "readily available" when it is already available or can be easily incorporated.

Table 1: Helicopters with an MCTOM of 7 000 kg or less

No.	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying
9	Power on each engine (free power turbine speed and engine torque)/cockpit power control position (if applicable)
10a 10b	Main rotor speed Rotor brake (if installed)

11 11a 11b 11c 11d 11e 11f	Primary flight controls - Pilot input and control output position (if applicable) Collective pitch Longitudinal cyclic pitch Lateral cyclic pitch Tail rotor pedal Controllable stabilator Hydraulic selection
13	Outside air temperature
14	Autopilot engagement status
15	Stability augmentation system engagement
26	Warnings

Table 2: Helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg

No.	**Parameter**
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying
9	Power on each engine (free power turbine speed and engine torque)/cockpit power control position (if applicable)
10a 10b	Main rotor speed Rotor brake (if installed)
11 11a 11b	Primary flight controls - Pilot input and control output position (if applicable) Collective pitch Longitudinal cyclic pitch

No.	Parameter
11c	Lateral cyclic pitch
11d	Tail rotor pedal
11e	Controllable stabilator
11f	Hydraulic selection
12	Hydraulics low pressure
13	Outside air temperature
14	AFCS mode and engagement status
15	Stability augmentation system engagement
16	Main gear box oil pressure
17	Main gear box oil temperature
18	Yaw rate or yaw acceleration
19	Indicated sling load force (if installed)
20	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
21	Lateral acceleration
22	Radio altitude
23	Vertical beam deviation (ILS glide path or MLS elevation)
24	Horizontal beam deviation (ILS localiser or MLS azimuth)
25	Marker beacon passage
26	Warnings
27	Reserved (Nav receiver frequency selection is recommended)
28	Reserved (DME distance is recommended)
29	Reserved (navigation data is recommended)
30	Landing gear or gear selector position

Table 3: Helicopters equipped with electronic display systems

No.	Parameter
38	Selected barometric setting (Each pilot station)
39	Selected altitude
40	Selected speed
41	Selected mach
42	Selected vertical speed
43	Selected heading
44	Selected flight path
45	Selected decision height
46	EFIS display format
47	Multi function /Engine / Alerts display format

AMC3-CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder

PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 3 175 KG AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 AUGUST 1999 AND BEFORE 1 JANUARY 2016 AND HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 7 000 KG OR AN MPSC OF MORE THAN NINE AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 1989 AND BEFORE 1 AUGUST 1999

Table 1: - Helicopters with an MCTOM of 7 000 kg or less

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
1	Time or relative time count					
1a or	Time	24 hours	4	± 0.125 % per hour	1 second	(a) UTC time preferred where available.
1b	Relative Time Count	0 to 4 095	4	± 0.125 % per hour		(b) Counter increments every 4 seconds of system operation.
2	Pressure altitude	-1 000 ft to 20 000 ft	1	±100 ft to ±700 ft Refer to table II.A-2 of EUROCAE Document ED-112	25 ft	
3	Indicated airspeed	As the installed measuring system	1	± 5 % or ± 10 kt, whichever is greater	1 kt	
4	Heading	360 °	1	± 5°	1 °	
5	Normal acceleration	- 3 g to + 6 g	0.125	± 0.2 g in addition to a maximum offset of ± 0.3 g	0.01 g	The resolution may be rounded from 0.01 g to 0.05 g, provided that one sample is recorded at full resolution at least every 4 seconds.
6	Pitch attitude	100 % of usable range	0.5	± 2 degrees	0.8 degree	
7	Roll attitude	± 60 ° or 100 % of usable	0.5	± 2 degrees	0.8 degree	.

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
		range from installed system if greater				
8	Manual radio transmission keying	Discrete(s)	1	-	-	Preferably each crew member but one discrete acceptable for all transmissions.
9	Power on each engine	Full range	Each engine each second	± 5 %	1 % of full range	Sufficient parameters e.g. Power Turbine Speed and Engine Torque should be recorded to enable engine power to be determined. A margin for possible overspeed should be provided. Data may be obtained from cockpit indicators used for aircraft certification. Parameter 9c is required for helicopters with non mechanically linked cockpit-engine controls
9a	Power Turbine Speed	Maximum range				
9b	Engine Torque	Maximum range				
9c	Cockpit Power Control position	Full range or each discrete position	Each control each second	±2 % or sufficient to determine any gated position	2 % of full range	
10	Rotor					
10a	Main rotor speed	Maximum range	1	± 5 %	1 % of full range	
10b	Rotor brake	Discrete	1	-		Where available
11	Primary flight controls - Pilot input and/or* control output position	Full Range				* For helicopters that can demonstrate the capability of deriving either the control input or control movement (one from the other) for all modes of
11a	Collective pitch		0.5	± 3 %	1 % of full range	

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
11b	Longitudinal cyclic pitch		0.5			operation and flight regimes, the 'or' applies. For helicopters with non-mechanical control systems the 'and' applies. Where the input controls for each pilot can be operated independently, both inputs will need to be recorded.
11c	Lateral cyclic pitch		0.5			
11d	Tail rotor pedal		0.5			
11e	Controllable stabilator		0.5			
11f	Hydraulic selection	Discretes	1	-	-	
12	Outside air temperature	Available range from installed system	2	± 2°C	0.3°C	
13	Autopilot engagement status	Discrete(s)	1			Where practicable, discretes should show which primary modes are controlling the flight path of the helicopter
14	Stability augmentation system engagement	Discrete(s)	1			

No.	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
15	Warnings	Discrete(s)	1	-	-	A discrete shall be recorded for the master warning, low hydraulic pressure (each system) gearbox low oil pressure and SAS fault status. Other 'red' warnings should be recorded where the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the cockpit voice recorder.

Table 2 - Helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
1	Time or relative time count					
1a or	Time	24 hours	4	± 0.125 % per hour	1 second	(a) UTC time preferred where available.
1b	Relative Time Count	0 to 4095	4	± 0.125 % per hour		(b) Counter increments every 4 seconds of system operation.

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
2	Pressure Altitude	-1 000 ft to maximum certificated altitude of aircraft +5 000 ft	1	± 100 ft to ± 700 ft Refer to table II-A.3 EUROCAE Document ED-112	5 ft	Should be obtained from the air data computer when installed.
3	Indicated Airspeed	As the installed measuring system	1	± 3 %	1 kt	Should be obtained from the air data computer when installed.
4	Heading	360 degrees	1	± 2 degrees	0.5 degree	
5	Normal Acceleration	-3 g to +6 g	0.125	1 % of range excluding a datum error of 5 %	0.004 g	The recording resolution may be rounded from 0.004 g to 0.01 g provided that one sample is recorded at full resolution at least every 4 seconds.
6	Pitch Attitude	± 75 degrees	0.5	± 2 degrees	0.5 degree	
7	Roll Attitude	± 180 degrees	0.5	± 2 degrees	0.5 degree	.
8	Manual Radio Transmission Keying and CVR/FDR synchronization reference	Discrete(s)	1	-	-	Preferably each crew member but one discrete acceptable for all transmissions provided that the replay of a recording made by any required recorder can be synchronised in time with any other required recording to within 1 second.

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
9	Power on each engine	Full range	Each engine each second	± 2 %	0.2 % of full range	Sufficient parameters e.g. Power Turbine Speed and engine torque should be recorded to enable engine power to be determined. A margin for possible overspeed should be provided.
9a	Free Power Turbine Speed (NF)	0-130 %				
9b	Engine Torque	Full range				
9c	Cockpit Power Control position	Full range or each discrete position	Each control each second	± 2 % or sufficient to determine any gated position	2 % of full range	Parameter 9c is required for helicopters with non mechanically linked cockpit-engine controls
10	Rotor				0.3 % of full range	
10a	Main rotor speed	50 to 130 %	0.5	2 %		.
10b	Rotor brake	Discrete	1			Where available
11	Primary Flight Controls - Pilot input and/or* control output position					* For helicopters that can demonstrate the capability of deriving either the control input or control movement (one from the other) for all modes of operation and flight regimes, the 'or' applies. For helicopters with non-mechanical control systems the 'and' applies. Where the input controls for each pilot can be operated independently, both inputs will need to be recorded.
11a	Collective pitch	Full range	0.5	± 3 % unless higher accuracy is uniquely required	0.5 % of operating range	
11b	Longitudinal cyclic pitch		0.5			
11c	Lateral cyclic pitch		0.5			
11d	Tail rotor pedal		0.5			
11e	Controllable stabilator		0.5			
11f	Hydraulic selection	Discrete(s)	1	-	-	

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
12	Hydraulics low pressure	Discrete(s)	1	-	-	Each essential system should be recorded.
13	Outside Air Temperature	-50° to +90°C or available sensor range	2	± 2°C	0.3°C	
14	AFCS mode and engagement status	A suitable combination of discretes	1	-	-	Discretes should show which systems are engaged and which primary modes are controlling the flight path of the helicopter
15	Stability augmentation system engagement	Discrete	1	-	-	
16	Main gearbox oil pressure	As installed	1	As installed	6.895 kN/m² (1 psi)	
17	Main gearbox oil temperature	As installed	2	As installed	1°C	
18	Yaw rate	± 400 degrees/second	0.25	± 1 %	2 degrees per second	An equivalent yaw acceleration is an acceptable alternative.
19	Indicated sling load force	0 to 200 % of maximum certified load	0.5	± 3 % of maximum certified load	0.5 % for maximum certified load	With reasonable practicability if sling load indicator is installed.
20	Longitudinal Acceleration (body axis)	± 1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	See comment to parameter 5.
21	Lateral Acceleration	± 1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	See comment to parameter 5.

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
22	Radio Altitude	-20 ft to +2 500 ft	1	As installed. ± 2 ft or ± 3 % whichever is greater below 500 ft and ± 5 % above 500 ft recommended	1 ft below 500 ft, 1 ft + 0.5 % of full range above 500 ft	
23	Vertical beam deviation		1	As installed ± 3 % recommended	0.3 % of full range	Data from both the ILS and MLS systems need not to be recorded at the same time. The approach aid in use should be recorded.
23a	ILS Glide Path	± 0.22 DDM or available sensor range as installed				
23b	MLS Elevation	+0.9 to +30 degrees				
24	Horizontal beam deviation		1	As installed. ± 3 % recommended	0.3 % of full range	See comment to parameter 23
24a	ILS Localizer	± 0.22 DDM or available sensor range as installed				
24b	MLS Azimuth	± 62 degrees				
25	Marker beacon passage	Discrete	1	-	-	One discrete is acceptable for all markers.

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
26	Warnings	Discretes	1	-	-	A discrete shall be recorded for the master warning, gearbox low oil pressure and SAS failure. Other 'red' warnings should be recorded where the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the cockpit voice recorder.
27	Reserved					
28	Reserved					
29	Reserved					
30	Landing gear or gear selector position	Discrete(s)	4	-	-	Where installed.

Table 3: - Helicopters equipped with electronic display systems

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
38	Selected barometric setting (Each pilot station)	As installed	64	As installed	1mb	Where practicable, a sampling interval of 4 seconds is recommended
38a	Pilot					
38b	Co-pilot					

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
39	Selected altitude	As installed	1	As installed	100 ft	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
39a	Manual					
39b	Automatic					
40	Selected Speed	As installed	1	As installed	1 kt	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
40a	Manual					
40b	Automatic					
41	Selected Mach	As installed	1	As installed	0.01	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
41a	Manual					
41b	Automatic					
42	Selected Vertical Speed	As installed	1	As installed	100 ft /min	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
42a	Manual					
42b	Automatic					
43	Selected heading	360 degrees	1	As installed	100 ft /min	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
44	Selected flight path		1	As installed		
44a	Course/DSTRK				1 degree	
44b	Path Angle				0.1 degree	
45	Selected decision height	0-500 ft	64	As installed	1ft	
46	EFIS display format	Discrete(s)	4	-	-	Discretes should show the display system status e.g. normal, fail, composite, sector, plan,, rose, nav aids, wxr, range, copy
46a	Pilot					
46b	Co-pilot					
47	Multi function /Engine / Alerts display format	Discrete(s)	4	-	-	Discretes should show the display system status e.g. normal, fail, and the identity of the display pages for the emergency procedures and checklists. Information in checklists and procedures need not be recorded.

The term 'where practicable' used in the remarks column of Table 3 means that account should be taken of the following:

a. If the sensor is already available or can be easily incorporated;

b. Sufficient capacity is available in the flight recorder system;

c. For navigational data (nav frequency selection, DME distance, latitude, longitude, groundspeed and drift) the signals are available in digital form;

d. The extent of modification required;

e. The down-time period; and

f. Equipment software development.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.195 Data link recording

GENERAL

1. The helicopter shall be capable of recording the messages as specified in this AMC.

2. As a means of compliance with CAT.IDE.H.195, the recorder on which the data link messages are recorded may be:

   a. the CVR;

   b. the FDR;

   c. a combination recorder when CAT.IDE.H.200 is applicable; or

   d. a dedicated flight recorder.

3. As a means of compliance with CAT.IDE.H.195 (a)(2), the operator should enable correlation by providing information that allows an accident investigator to understand what data were provided to the helicopter and, when the provider identification is contained in the message, by which provider.

4. The timing information associated with the data link communications messages required to be recorded by CAT.IDE.H.195 (a)(3) should be capable of being determined from the airborne-based recordings. This timing information should include at least the following:

   a. the time each message was generated;

   b. the time any message was available to be displayed by the crew;

   c. the time each message was actually displayed or recalled from a queue; and

   d. the time of each status change.

5. The message priority should be recorded when it is defined by the protocol of the data link communication message being recorded.

6. The expression 'taking into account the system architecture', in CAT.IDE.H.195 (a)(3), means that the recording of the specified information may be omitted if the existing source systems involved would require a major upgrade. The following should be considered:

   a. the extent of the modification required;

b. the down-time period; and

c. equipment software development.

7. The intention is that new designs of source systems should include this functionality and support the full recording of the required information.

8. ,Data link communications messages that support the applications in Table 1 should be recorded.

9. Further details on the recording requirements can be found in the recording requirement matrix in Appendix D.2 of EUROCAE Document ED-93 (Minimum Aviation System Performance Specification for CNS/ATM Recorder Systems, dated November 1998)

Table 1: Applications

Item No.	**Application Type**	**Application Description**	**Required Recording Content**
1	Data link initiation	This includes any application used to log on to, or initiate, a data link service. In Future Air Navigation System (FANS)-1/A and Air Traffic Navigation (ATN), these are ATS Facilities Notification (AFN) and Context Management (CM), respectively.	C
2	Controller/pilot communication	This includes any application used to exchange requests, clearances, instructions and reports between the flight crew and air traffic controllers. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the Controller pilot data link communications (CPDLC) application. CPDLC includes the exchange of Oceanic Clearances (OCLs) and Departure Clearances (DCLs), .	C
3	Addressed Surveillance	This includes any surveillance application in which the ground sets up contracts for delivery of surveillance data. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the automatic dependent surveillance-contract (ADS-C) application,.	C, F2
4	Flight information	This includes any application used for delivery of flight information data to specific aeroplanes. This includes for example Data Link-Automatic Terminal Information Service (D-ATIS), Data Link-Operational Terminal Information Service (D-OTIS), digital weather information services (D-METAR or TWIP), data link flight information service (D-FIS) and Notice to Airmen (D-NOTAM) delivery.	C
5	Aircraft Broadcast surveillance	This includes elementary and enhanced surveillance systems, as well as Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast (ADS-B) output data.	M*, F2

Item No.	Application Type	Application Description	Required Recording Content
6	AOC data	This includes any application transmitting or receiving data used for AOC purposes (in accordance with the ICAO definition of AOC). Such systems may also process AAC messages, but there is no requirement to record AAC messages	M*
7	Graphics	This includes any application receiving graphical data to be used for operational purposes (i.e. excluding applications that are receiving such things as updates to manuals).	M*

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.195 Data link recording

GENERAL

1. The letters and expressions in Table 1 of AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.195 have the following meaning:

   C: Complete contents recorded

   M: Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the helicopter.

   *: Applications that are to be recorded only as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system.

   F1: Graphics applications may be considered as AOC data when they are part of a data link communications application service run on an individual basis by the operator itself in the framework of the operational control.

   F2: Where parametric data sent by the helicopter, such as Mode S, is reported within the message, it should be recorded unless data from the same source is recorded on the FDR.

2. The definitions of the applications type in Table 1 of AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.195 are described in Table 1 below.

Table 1: Descriptions of the applications type

Item No.	Application Type	Messages	Comments
1	CM		CM is an ATN service
2	AFN		AFN is a FANS 1/A service
3	CPDLC		All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
4	ADS-C	ADS-C reports	All contract requests and reports recorded

Item No.	Application Type	Messages	Comments
		Position reports	Only used within FANS 1/A. Only used in oceanic and remote areas.
5	ADS-B	Surveillance data	Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the helicopter.
6	D-FIS		D-FIS is an ATN service. All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
7	TWIP	TWIP messages	Terminal weather information for pilots
8	D-ATIS	ATIS messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-89A dated December 2003. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for the "ATIS" Data Link Service
9	OCL	OCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-106A dated March 2004. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for "Oceanic Clearance" Datalink Service
10	DCL	DCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-85A dated December 2003. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for "Departure Clearance" Data-link Service
11	Graphics	Weather maps & other graphics	Graphics exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part-OR. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.
12	AOC	Aeronautical operational control messages	Messages exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part-OR. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the helicopter. Definition in ED-112.
13	Surveillance	Downlinked Aircraft Parameters (DAP)	As defined in ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV (Surveillance systems and ACAS).

AAC	Aeronautical Administrative Communications
ADS-B	Automatic Dependent Surveillance - Broadcast
ADS-C	Automatic Dependent Surveillance – Contract
AFN	Aircraft Flight Notification

AOC	Aeronautical Operational Control
ATIS	Automatic Terminal Information Service
ATSC	Air Traffic Service Communication
CAP	Controller Access Parameters
CPDLC	Controller Pilot Data Link Communications
CM	Configuration/Context Management
D-ATIS	Data link ATIS
D-FIS	Data link Flight Information Service
DCL	Departure Clearance
FANS	Future Air Navigation System
FLIPCY	Flight Plan Consistency
OCL	Oceanic Clearance
SAP	System Access Parameters
TWIP	Terminal Weather Information for Pilots

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.200 Flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder

GENERAL

1. A flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder is a flight recorder that records:
   a. all voice communications and the aural environment required by CAT.IDE.IH.185 regarding CVRs; and
   b. all parameters and specifications required by CAT.IDE.H.190 regarding FDRs.

   with the same specifications required by those paragraphs.
2. In addition a flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder may record data link communication messages and related information required by CAT.IDE.H.195.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, harnesses and child restraint devices

RESTRAIN DEVICES FOR PERSON YOUNGER THAN 24 MONTHS - CHILD RESTRAINT DEVICES (CRD)

1. A child restraint device (CRD) is considered to be acceptable if:
   a. tt is a ‘supplementary loop belt’ manufactured with the same techniques and the same materials of the approved safety belts; or
   b. tt complies with paragraph 2 below.
2. Provided the CRD can be installed properly on the respective helicopter seat, the following CRDs are considered acceptable:

a. CRDs approved for use in aircraft by a competent authority on the basis of a technical standard and marked accordingly;

b. CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles according to the UN standard ECE R 44, -03 or later series of amendments;

c. CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to Canadian CMVSS 213/213.1;

d. CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to US FMVSS No 213 and are manufactured to these standards on or after February 26, 1985. US approved CRDs manufactured after this date must bear the following labels in red letters:

   i. "THIS CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS"; and

   ii. "THIS RESTRAINT IS CERTIFIED FOR USE IN MOTOR VEHICLES AND AIRCRAFT";

e. CRDs qualified for use in aircraft according to the German "Qualification Procedure for Child Restraint Systems for Use in Aircraft" (TÜV Doc.: TÜV/958-01/2001); and

f. devices approved for use in cars, manufactured and tested to standards equivalent to those listed above. The device must be marked with an associated qualification sign, which shows the name of the qualification organisation and a specific identification number, related to the associated qualification project. The qualifying organisation should be a competent and independent organisation that is acceptable to the competent authority.

3. Location

a. Forward facing CRDs may be installed on both forward and rearward facing passenger seats but only when fitted in the same direction as the passenger seat on which they are positioned. Rearward facing CRDs can only be installed on forward facing passenger seats. A CRD may not be installed within the radius of action of an airbag, unless it is obvious that the airbag is de-activated or it can be demonstrated that there is no negative impact from the airbag.

b. An infant or child in a CRD should be located as near to a floor level exit as feasible.

c. An infant or child in a CRD should not hinder evacuation for any passenger.

d. An infant or child in a CRD should neither be located in the row (where rows are existing) leading to an emergency exit nor located in a row immediately forward or aft of an emergency exit. A window passenger seat is the preferred location. An aisle passenger seat or a cross aisle passenger seat that forms part of the evacuation route to exits is not recommended. Other locations may be acceptable provided the access of neighbour passengers to the nearest aisle is not obstructed by the CRD.

e. In general, only one CRD per row segment is recommended. More than one CRD per row segment is allowed if the infants/children are from the same family or travelling group provided the infants/children are accompanied by a responsible adult sitting next to them. A row segment is the fraction of a row separated by two aisles or by one aisle and the helicopter fuselage.

4. Installation

   a. CRDs should only be installed on a suitable aircraft seat with the type of connecting device they are approved or qualified for. E.g., CRDs to be connected by a three point harness only (most rearward facing baby CRDs currently available) should not be attached to an aircraft seat with a lap belt only, a CRD designed to be attached to a vehicle seat by means of rigid bar lower anchorages (ISO-FIX or US equivalent) only, should only be used on aircraft seats that are equipped with such connecting devices and should not be attached by the aircraft seat lap belt. The method of connecting should be the one shown in the manufacturer's instructions provided with each CRD.

   b. All safety and installation instructions must be followed carefully by the responsible person accompanying the infant. For aircraft involved in commercial air transport, cabin crew should prohibit the use of any inadequately installed CRD or not qualified seat.

   c. If a forward facing CRD with a rigid backrest is to be fastened by a lap belt, the restraint device should be fastened when the backrest of the passenger seat on which it rests is in a reclined position. Thereafter, the backrest is to be positioned upright. This procedure ensures better tightening of the CRD on the aircraft seat if the aircraft seat is reclinable.

   d. The buckle of the adult safety belt must be easily accessible for both opening and closing, and must be in line with the seat belt halves (not canted) after tightening.

   e. Forward facing restraint devices with an integral harness must not be installed such that the adult safety belt is secured over the child.

5. Operation

   a. Each CRD should remain secured to a passenger seat during all phases of flight, unless it is properly stowed when not in use.

   b. Where a CRD is adjustable in recline it must be in an upright position for all occasions when passenger restraint devices are required.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, harnesses and child restraint devices

SAFETY HARNESS

2. A safety harness having five anchorage points is deemed to be compliant to the requirement for safety harness with four anchorage points.

3. A safety belt with diagonal should strap (three anchorage points) is deemed to be compliant with safety belt (two anchorage points).

AMC3-CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, harnesses and child restraint devices

SEATS FOR MINIMUM REQUIRED CABIN CREW SEATS

1. Seats for cabin crew members should be located, where possible, near required floor level emergency exits. If the number of required cabin crew members exceeds the number of floor level emergency exits the additional cabin crew seats should be located such that the cabin crew member(s) may best be able to assist passengers in the event of an emergency evacuation.
2. Seats for cabin crew member(s) should be forward or rearward facing within 15° of the longitudinal axis of the helicopter.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.220 First-aid kits

CONTENT OF FIRST AID KIT

1. First-aid kits should be equipped with appropriate and sufficient medications and instrumentation. However, these kits may be amended by the operator according to the characteristics of the operation (scope of operation, flight duration, number and demographics of passengers etc.).
2. The following should be included in the first-aid kits:
   a. Equipment
      i. Bandages (assorted sizes);
      ii. burns dressings (unspecified);
      iii. wound dressings (large and small);
      iv. adhesive dressings (assorted sizes);
      v. adhesive tape;
      vi. adhesive wound closures;
      vii. safety pins;
      viii. scissors;
      ix. antiseptic wound cleaner;
      x. disposable resuscitation aid;
      xi. disposable gloves;
      xii. tweezers: splinter; and
      xiii thermometers (non mercury).
   b. Medications
      i. Simple analgesic (may include liquid form);
      ii. antiemetic;
      iii. nasal decongestant;

iv. gastrointestinal antacid, in the case of helicopters carrying more than 9 passengers;

v. anti-diarrhoeal medication in the case of helicopters carrying more than nine passengers; and

vi. antihistamine.

c. Other

i. A list of contents in at least 2 languages (English and one other). This should include information on the effects and side effects of medications carried;

ii. first-aid handbook;

iii. medical incident report form;

iv. biohazard disposal bags; and

v. ground/air visual signal code for use by survivors.

d. An eye irrigator, whilst not required to be carried in the first-aid kit, should, where possible, be available for use on the ground.

e. For security reasons, items such as scissors and scalpels should be stored securely.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.H.220 First-aid kits

MAINTENANCE OF FIRST AID KITS

To be maintained first aid kits should be:

1. inspected periodically to confirm, to the extent possible, that contents are maintained in the condition necessary for their intended use; and
2. replenished at regular intervals, in accordance with instructions contained on their labels, or as circumstances warrant.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.240 Supplemental oxygen- Non-pressurised helicopters

AMOUNT OF SUPPLEMENTAL OXYGEN

The amount of supplemental oxygen for sustenance for a particular operation should be determined on the basis of flight altitudes and flight duration, consistent with the operating procedures, including emergency, procedures, established for each operation and the routes to be flown as specified in the operations manual.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.250 Hand fire extinguishers

NUMBER, LOCATION AND TYPE

1. The number and location of hand fire extinguishers should be such as to provide adequate availability for use, account being taken of the number and size of the passenger compartments, the need to minimise the hazard of toxic gas concentrations and the location of toilets, galleys etc. These considerations may

result in the number of fire extinguishers being greater than the minimum prescribed.

2. There should be at least one hand fire extinguisher installed in the flight crew compartment and this should be suitable for fighting both flammable fluid and electrical equipment fires. Additional hand fire extinguishers may be required for the protection of other compartments accessible to the crew in flight. Dry chemical fire extinguishers should not be used in the flight crew compartment, or in any compartment not separated by a partition from the flight crew compartment, because of the adverse effect on vision during discharge and, if conductive, interference with electrical contacts by the chemical residues.
3. Where only one hand fire extinguisher is required in the passenger compartments it should be located near the cabin crew member's station, where provided.
4. Where two or more hand fire extinguishers are required in the passenger compartments and their location is not otherwise dictated by consideration of paragraph CAT.IDE.H.250 (b), an extinguisher should be located near each end of the cabin with the remainder distributed throughout the cabin as evenly as is practicable.
5. Unless an extinguisher is clearly visible, its location should be indicated by a placard or sign. Appropriate symbols may also be used to supplement such a placard or sign.
6. The fire extinguishers located in the cockpit should contain Halon 1211 (bromochlorodifluoro-methane, $CBrCIF_2$) or an equivalent extinguishing agent.
7. For aeroplanes with a maximum approved passenger seating configuration between 31 and 60, one of the required fire extinguishers located in the passenger compartment should contain Halon 1211 (bromochlorodi-fluoromethane, $CBrCIF_2$) or an equivalent extinguishing agent.
8. For aeroplanes with a maximum approved passenger seating configuration of more than 61, at least two of the fire extinguishers located in the passenger compartment should contain Halon 1211 (bromochlorodi-fluoromethane, $CBrCIF_2$) or an equivalent extinguishing agent.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.260 Marking of break-in points

COLOUR AND CORNERS' MARKING

1. The colour of the markings should be red or yellow and, if necessary, should be outlined in white to contrast with the background.
2. If the corner markings are more than 2 m apart, intermediate lines 9 cm x 3 cm should be inserted so that there is no more than 2 m between adjacent markings.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.270 Megaphones

LOCATION OF MEGAPHONES

1. The megaphone should be readily accessible at the assigned seat of a cabin crew member or crew members other than flight crew.

2. This does not necessarily require megaphones to be positioned such that they can be physically reached by a crew member when strapped in a cabin crew member's seat.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

ELT BATTERIES

Batteries used in the ELTs should be replaced (or recharged, if the battery is rechargeable) when the equipment has been in use for more than one cumulative hour, and also when 50 % of their useful life (or for rechargeable, 50 % of their useful life of charge), as established by the equipment manufacturer has expired. The new expiry date for the replacement (or recharged) battery should be legibly marked on the outside of the equipment. The battery useful life (or useful life of charge) requirements of this paragraph do not apply to batteries (such as water-activated batteries) that are essentially unaffected during probable storage intervals.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

TYPES OF ELT AND GENERAL TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

1. The ELT required by this provision should be one of the following:
   a. Automatic Fixed (ELT(AF)). An automatically activated ELT that is permanently attached to an helicopter and is designed to aid search and rescue (SAR) teams in locating the crash site;
   b. Automatic Portable (ELT(AP)). An automatically activated ELT, which is rigidly attached to a helicopter before a crash, but is readily removable from the helicopter after a crash. It functions as an ELT during the crash sequence. If the ELT does not employ an integral antenna, the helicopter-mounted antenna may be disconnected and an auxiliary antenna (stored on the ELT case) attached to the ELT. The ELT can be tethered to a survivor or a life raft. This type of ELT is intended to aid SAR teams in locating the crash site or survivor(s);
   c. Automatic Deployable (ELT(AD)). An ELT that is rigidly attached to the helicopter before the crash and that is automatically ejected, deployed and activated by an impact, and, in some cases, also by hydrostatic sensors. Manual deployment is also provided. This type of ELT should float in water and is intended to aid SAR teams in locating the crash site; or
   d. Survival ELT (ELT(S)). An ELT that is removable from a helicopter, stowed so as to facilitate its ready use in an emergency, and manually activated by a survivor. An ELT(S) may be activated manually or automatically (e.g. by water activation). It should be designed to be tethered to a life raft or a survivor.
2. To minimize the possibility of damage in the event of crash impact, the automatic ELT should be rigidly fixed to the helicopter structure, as far aft as is practicable, with its antenna and connections arranged so as to maximize the probability of the signal being transmitted after a crash.

3. Any ELT carried should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of ICAO Annex 10, Volume III Communications Systems and should be registered with the national agency responsible for initiating search and rescue or other nominated agency.
4. ELTs should be able to transmit on 121.5 Megahertz (MHz) and 406 MHz.

AMC3-CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

ELT(S) - HELICOPTERS

An ELT(AP) may be used to replace one required ELT(S) provided that it meets the ELT(S) requirements. A water-activated ELT(S) is not an ELT(AP).

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

TERMINOLOGY

An emergency locator transmitter (ELT) is a generic term describing equipment which broadcasts distinctive signals on designated frequencies and, depending on application, may be activated by impact or may be manually activated.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.290 (a) Life-jackets

ACCESSIBILITY

The life jacket should be accessible from the seat or berth of the person for whose use it is provided, with a safety belt or harness fastened.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.H.290 (c) Life-jackets

ELECTRIC ILLUMINATION THE MEANS OF ELECTRIC ILLUMINATION SHOULD BE A SURVIVOR LOCATOR LIGHT.

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.290 Life-jackets

LIFE JACKETS - ALL AIRCRAFT SEAT CUSHIONS SEAT CUSHIONS ARE NOT CONSIDERED TO BE FLOTATION DEVICES.

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.295 Crew survival suits

ESTIMATING SURVIVAL TIME

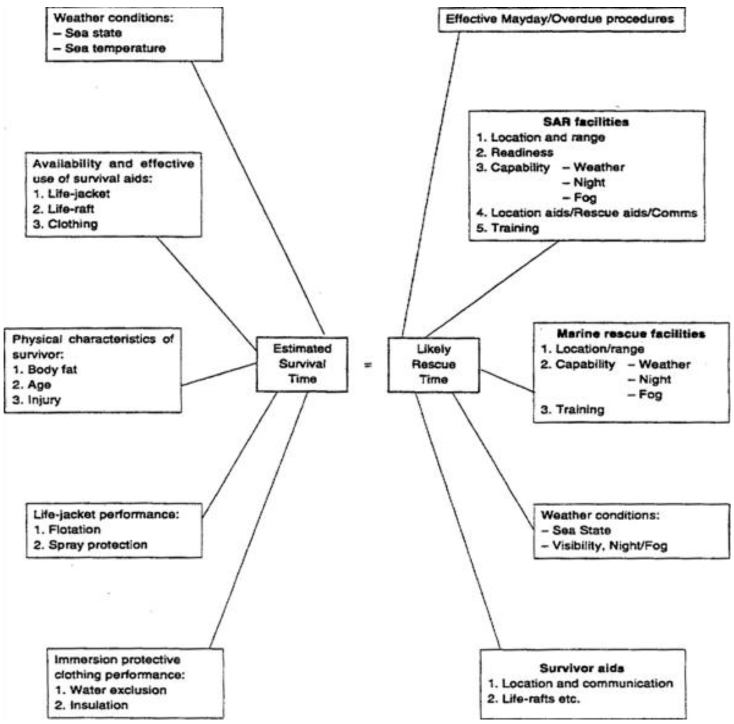
1. Introduction
    a. A person accidentally immersed in cold seas (typically offshore Northern Europe) will have a better chance of survival if he/she is wearing an effective survival suit in addition to a life-jacket. By wearing the survival suit, he/she can slow down the rate which his/her body temperature falls and, consequently, protect himself/herself from the greater risk of drowning brought about by incapacitation due to hypothermia.

b. The complete survival suit system – suit, life-jacket and clothes worn under the suit – should be able to keep the wearer alive long enough for the rescue services to find and recover him/her. In practice the limit is about three hours. If a group of persons in the water cannot be rescued within this time they are likely to have become so scattered and separated that location will be extremely difficult, especially in the rough water typical of Northern European sea areas. If it is expected that in water protection could be required for periods greater than three hours, improvements should, rather, be sought in the search and rescue procedures than in the immersion suit protection.

2. Survival times

a. The aim should be to ensure that a person in the water can survive long enough to be rescued, i.e. the survival time must be greater than the likely rescue time. The factors affecting both times are shown in Figure 1 of GM CAT.IDE.H.295. The figure emphasises that survival time is influenced by many factors, physical and human. Some of the factors are relevant to survival in cold water and some are relevant in water at any temperature.

Figure 1: The survival equation



b. Broad estimates of likely survival times for the thin individual offshore are given in Table 1 below. As survival time is significantly affected by the prevailing weather conditions at the time of immersion, the Beaufort wind scale has been used as an indicator of these surface conditions.

Table 1: Timescale within which the most vulnerable individuals are likely to succumb to the prevailing conditions.

Clothing assembly	Beaufort wind force	Times within which the most vulnerable individuals are likely to drown	
		(water temp 5°c)	(water temp 13°c)
Working clothes (no immersion suit)	0 – 2	Within ¾ hour	Within 1 ¼ hours
	3 – 4	Within ½ hour	Within ½ hour
	5 and above	Significantly less than ½ hour	Significantly less than ½ hour
Immersion suit worn over working clothes (with leakage inside suit)	0 -2	May well exceed 3 hours	May well exceed 3 hours
	3 – 4	Within 2 ¾ hours	May well exceed 3 hours
	5 and above	Significantly less than 2 ¾ hours. May well exceed 1 hour	May well exceed 3 hours

c. Consideration should also be given to escaping from the helicopter itself should it submerge or invert in the water. In this case escape time is limited to the length of time the occupants can hold their breath. The breath holding time can be greatly reduced by the effect of cold shock. Cold shock is caused by the sudden drop in skin temperature on immersion, and is characterised by a gasp reflex and uncontrolled breathing. The urge to breathe rapidly becomes overwhelming and, if still submerged, the individual will inhale water resulting in drowning. Delaying the onset of cold shock by wearing an immersion suit will extend the available escape time from a submerged helicopter.

d. The effects of water leakage and hydrostatic compression on the insulation quality of clothing are well recognised. In a nominally dry system the insulation is provided by still air trapped within the clothing fibres and between the layers of suit and clothes. It has been observed that many systems lose some of their insulative capacity either because the clothes under the 'waterproof' survival suit get wet to some extent or because of hydrostatic compression of the whole assembly. As a result of water leakage and compression, survival times will be shortened. The wearing of warm clothing under the suit is recommended.

e. Whatever type of survival suit and other clothing is provided, it should not be forgotten that significant heat loss can occur from the head.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.300 Life-rafts, ELT(S) and survival equipment on extended overwater flights

LIFE–RAFTS AND EQUIPMENT FOR MAKING DISTRESS SIGNALS - HELICOPTERS

1. Each required life-raft should conform to the following specifications:
   a. be of an approved design and stowed so as to facilitate their ready use in an emergency;
   b. be radar conspicuous to standard airborne radar equipment;
   c. when carrying more than one life-raft on board, at least 50 % should be able to be deployed by the crew while seated at their normal station, where necessary by remote control; and
   d. life-rafts that are not deployable by remote control or by the crew should be of such weight as to permit handling by one person. 40 kg should be considered a maximum weight.
2. Each required life-raft should contain at least the following:
   a. one approved survivor locator light;
   b. one approved visual signalling device;
   c. one canopy (for use as a sail, sunshade or rain catcher) or other mean to protect occupants from the elements;
   d. one radar reflector;
   e. one 20 m retaining line designed to hold the life-raft near the helicopter but to release it if the helicopter becomes totally submerged;
   f. one sea anchor;
   g. one survival kit, appropriately equipped for the route to be flown, which should contain at least the following:
      i. one life-raft repair kit;
      ii. one bailing bucket;
      iii. one signalling mirror;
      iv. one police whistle;
      v. one buoyant raft knife;
      vi. one supplementary means of inflation;
      vii. sea sickness tablets;
      viii. one first-aid kit;
      ix. one portable means of illumination;
      x. 500 ml of pure water and one sea water desalting kit; and
      xi. one comprehensive illustrated survival booklet in an appropriate language.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment

ADDITIONAL SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT

1. The following additional survival equipment should be carried when required:
   a. 500 ml of water for each 4, or fraction of 4, persons on board;
   b. one knife;
   c. first-aid equipment; and
   d. one set of air/ground codes.
2. In addition, when polar conditions are expected, the following should be carried:
   a. a means for melting snow;
   b. one snow shovel and 1 ice saw;
   c. sleeping bags for use by 1/3 of all persons on board and space blankets for the remainder or space blankets for all passengers on board; and
   d. one Arctic/Polar suit for each crew member carried.
3. If any item of equipment contained in the above list is already carried on board the helicopter in accordance with another requirement, there is no need for this to be duplicated.

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment

SIGNALLING EQUIPMENT

The signalling equipment for making distress signals is described in ICAO Annex 2, Rules of the Air.

GM2-CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment

AREAS IN WHICH SEARCH AND RESCUE WOULD BE ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT'

The expression 'areas in which search and rescue would be especially difficult' should be interpreted, in this context, as meaning:

1. areas so designated by the authority responsible for managing search and rescue; or
2. areas that are largely uninhabited and where:
   a. the authority responsible for managing search and rescue has not published any information to confirm whether search and rescue would be or would not be especially difficult; and
   b. the authority referred to in 1. does not, as a matter of policy, designate areas as being especially difficult for search and rescue.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.310 Additional requirements for helicopters operating to or from helidecks located in a hostile sea area

INSTALLATION OF THE LIFE RAFT

1. Projections on the exterior surface of the helicopter, that are located in a zone delineated by boundaries that are 1.22 m (4 ft) above and 0.61 m (2 ft) below the established static water line could cause damage to a deployed life-raft. Examples of projections which need to be considered are aerials, overboard vents, unprotected split-pin tails, guttering and any projection sharper than a three dimensional right angled corner.
2. While the boundaries specified in 1. are intended as a guide, the total area that should be considered should also take into account the likely behaviour of the life-raft after deployment in all sea states up to the maximum in which the helicopter is capable of remaining upright.
3. Wherever a modification or alteration is made to a helicopter within the boundaries specified, the need to prevent the modification or alteration from causing damage to a deployed life-raft should be taken into account in the design.
4. Particular care should also be taken during routine maintenance to ensure that additional hazards are not introduced by, for example, leaving inspection panels with sharp corners proud of the surrounding fuselage surface, or allowing door sills to deteriorate to a point where sharp edges become a hazard.
5. The same considerations apply in respect of emergency flotation equipment.

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.315 Helicopters certificated for operating on water - Miscellaneous equipment

INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS FOR PREVENTING COLLISIONS AT SEA

International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea are those that were published by the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) in 1972.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.325 Headset

GENERAL

1. A headset consists of a communication device that includes two earphones to receive and a microphone to transmit audio signals to the helicopter's communication system. To comply with the minimum performance requirements, the earphones and microphone should match the communication system's characteristics and the cockpit environment. The headset should be adequately adjustable in order to fit the pilot's head. Headset boom microphones should be of the noise cancelling type.
2. If the intention is to utilise noise cancelling earphones, the operator should ensure that the earphones do not attenuate any aural warnings or sounds necessary for alerting the flight crew on matters related to the safe operation of the helicopter.

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.325 Headset

GENERAL

The term 'headset' includes any aviation helmet incorporating headphones and microphone worn by a flight crew member.

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR, or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

TWO INDEPENDENT MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

Whenever two independent means of communication are required, each system should have an independent antenna installation, except where rigidly supported non-wire antennae or other antenna installations of equivalent reliability are used.

AMC2-CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR, or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

ACCEPTABLE NUMBER AND TYPE OF COMMUNICATION AND NAVIGATION EQUIPMENT

1. An acceptable number and type of communication and navigation equipment is:
   a. two VHF omnidirectional radio range (VOR) receiving systems on any route, or part thereof, where navigation is based only on VOR signals;
   b. two automatic direction finder (ADF) systems on any route, or part thereof, where navigation is based only on non directional beacon (NDB) signals; and
   c. area navigation equipment when area navigation is required for the route being flown (e.g. equipment required by SPA.PBN and SPA.MNPS).
2. The helicopter may be operated without the navigation equipment specified in 1.a. and 1.b. above provided it is equipped with alternative equipment. The reliability and the accuracy of alternative equipment should allow safe navigation for the intended route.
3. VHF communication equipment, instrument landing system (ILS) localiser and VOR receivers installed on helicopters to be operated under IFR should comply with the following FM immunity performance standards:
   a. ICAO Annex 10 , Volume I - Radio Navigation Aids, and Volume III, Part II - Voice Communications Systems; and
   b. acceptable equipment standards contained in EUROCAE Minimum Operational Performance Specifications, documents ED-22B for VOR receivers, ED-23B for VHF communication receivers and ED-46B for LOC receivers and the corresponding Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics (RTCA) documents DO-186, DO-195 and DO-196.

AMC3-CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR, or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

FAILURE OF A SINGLE UNIT

Required communication and navigation equipment should be installed such that the failure of any single unit required for either communication or navigation purposes, or both, will not result in the failure of another unit required for communications or navigation purposes.

GM1-CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR, or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

APPLICABLE AIRSPACE REQUIREMENTS

For helicopters being operated under European air traffic control, the applicable airspace requirements include the Single European Sky legislation. .

AMC1-CAT.IDE.H.350 Transponder

SSR TRANSPONDER

1. The secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponder of aircraft being operated under European air traffic control should comply with any applicable Single European Sky legislation.
2. If the Single European Sky legislation is not applicable, the SSR transponder should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of Volume IV of ICAO Annex 10.
3. Additional SSR transponder capabilities may be required by the applicable airspace requirements.